

CHAMBAUD IMPROVED;

*Library Royal, 1787*  
~~Chambaud~~ FOR ~~Chambaud~~

*1803*  
FRENCH AND ENGLISH  
EXERCISES;

WITH THEIR RESPECTIVE

*Gramm'r-Rules at the Head of each Chapter and Exercise.  
The Rules compendiously extracted, exemplified,  
and the whole improved.*

BY

JAMES NICHOLSON,

MASTER OF LANGUAGES.

---

---

THE THIRD EDITION.

---

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR A. MURRAY, N° 32, FLEET-STREET.

MDCXCIV.

1794

Entered at Stationer's Hall, according to Act of  
Parliament.



---

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE importance of *Exercises*, towards attaining any language, is so well known, that it is needless to enlarge upon the utility, not to say necessity, of such means; and Mr. Chambaud's *Exercises* are so universally approved, that they seem to require just as little comment. Yet I could not help regretting, that *Exercises* so well calculated for attaining an accurate knowledge of the French language, should be separated from their respective grammar-rules: this circumstance I have found to be of so great disadvantage to the scholar, and consequently to the master, that I have been much surpris'd no other French teacher had thought it worth while to stoop to so easy and necessary a task, for the good of schools and the improvement of youth. Some very ingenious young gentlemen,

# PREFACE.

gentlemen, after perusing in vain upon their grammar, in search of the rules, have entreated me to point out those relative to their exercises. Several eminent masters, sensible of this deficiency, have expressed their desire of the rules being prefixed to Cham-  
baud's Exercises: this I judge sufficient to recom-  
mend the present improved edition. But it may not  
be amiss to inform those, who are unacquainted with  
my little abilities, that I was educated at the Univer-  
sity of Paris from my infancy, and that I have taught  
the French and Latin languages these several years  
past in some of the capital schools in this kingdom.  
It may also be observed, that I have strictly adhered,  
though in miniature, to Mr. Chambaud's own rules  
and examples to the same, which is all the merit I  
pretend to claim from this trifling, though useful per-  
formance.



---

To Mr. James Nicholson, No. 7. Cecil Street, Strand,  
LONDON.

---

SIR,

I HAVE, according to your desire, perused  
several parts of your new and improved edition of Mr.  
Cham baud's French Exercises, and must say that it is what  
I long wished to see; and that I think the work cannot but  
be adopted in all schools that mean to teach the language  
scientifically.

I am your humble Servant,

ROBERT MACFARLAN.

Schoolmaster.

Walthamstow, Nov. 28. }  
1781.

---

THIS new and improved edition of Mr.  
Cham band's Exercises, in my opinion, deserves encourage-  
ment, being a very proper book for all those who are de-  
sirous of knowing the French language grammatically.

WILL. ROSE.

Schoolmaster.

Chiswick, Dec. 7. }  
1781.

---

# DIRECTIONS

FOR WRITING

## FRENCH.

---

I. **F**IRST read the *English* sentence carefully over, and consider whether it be interrogative, admirative, or a common sentence: for when a question is asked, the noun comes after the verb, or between the sign and the verb.

II. Nouns are ordinarily denoted by the particles *a* or *the*: and the verbs by *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, ye, they*: or *do, did, shall, will, can, may, might, would, could, should, let*.

III. The second state of the noun is not always denoted by the preposition *of* or *from*: but sometimes by *s*, at the end of the noun: and to know whether or not the former of the two nouns coming together and ending in *s*, be the second state, you need only put away *s*, from the end of it, and set *of* before it, and read first the noun that follows it. Thus instead of *the King's right*, or *the Mistress's order*, you read *the right of the King*, *the order of the Mistress*, it is visible that *King* and *Mistress* are in the second state governed by *right* and *order*.

IV. To know whether a noun be *adjective* or *substantive*, add only the word *thing* or *person* to it; if it make sense with it, 'tis an adjective: if it makes nonsense, 'tis a substantive. Thus *house, woman, book*, are substantives, because *a house thing, a woman thing, a book thing*, or *person*, make nonsense: but *convenient, handsome, good*, are adjectives, because you can say, *a convenient thing, a handsome thing, a good thing, a handsome person*.

V. As adjectives come before the substantives in *English*, put first the substantive into *French*, that you may see in what gender and number the adjective must agree with it; and consider besides what must come first in *French*, according to your rules concerning adjectives. Thus in *fine things*, you cannot know in what gender and number *fine* must be put, before that you know that the French for *things* is *choses*: a noun sub. fem. plur. (*de belles choses*.) On the placing the adjective either before or after the substantive, depends also the construction of the article.

VI. When



VI. When you meet with an adjective, governed by a verb, and separated from its substantive, to find out the substantive, ask yourself the question, *who*, or *what* is, or *does* that thing which is signified by this adjective? and the word which, in reading the sentence, answers to that question, is the substantive with which it must agree.

VII. That word is the subject of the verb, which with good sense answers to the question *who* or *what* made by the verb; as in this sentence, *A man who loves virtue wrongs nobody*. To know what is the subject of *wrong*s, put *who* before it, and say, *who wrongs?* and by reading the sentence over again, it will appear, that it is *a man who loves virtue*; and so *a man* is the subject of that verb, as is *who*, of *loves*.

VIII. Every verb must have a subject which cannot be understood. Therefore when a verb comes immediately after a noun governed by *to be*, or another verb, it is a sign that the relative *that* or *which* is understood in *English* before the next verb, which must be carefully expressed in *French*. It is the same when the verb is active, and requires an object, or a noun which it governs, the relative *whom*, or *that*, or *which*, is always understood: as *He is the man has done it*; *the man* being the noun governed by *is*, cannot govern *has done* as his subject: therefore *who*, or *that*, is understood before *has done*. — *The man you saw yesterday, died this morning*. Who died? *the man*. Then it cannot be the noun governed by *saw*: yet you saw a man yesterday; therefore *whom*, or *that*, is understood before you *saw*.

IX. The relative *that* is distinguished from *that* a conjunction, in that the relative may be varied by *who*, *which*, or *whom*; but the conjunction cannot. Besides, the conjunction always has a noun betwixt it and the verb; but the relative has none, unless when itself is not the subject of the verb.

X. Of indeclinable parts of speech, prepositions come before nouns and the infinitive of a verb; conjunctions before verbs, and adverbs before nouns, verbs, and even adverbs.

Lastly, observe, that the French which is under the English in the Exercises, is the root of the word, as the first state, if it be a noun, or the infinitive, if a verb; and that, for the greater conveniency of the scholar, there is added, in this new edition, an *m* or an *f* to the nouns that admit of an article, to shew what gender they are of, *m* standing for masculine, and *f* for feminine.

---

# INTRODUCTION

TO THE

## WRITING OF FRENCH.

---

EXERCISES *upon the* ACCIDENCE of NOUNS.

---

|                    |                   |           |                        |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| THE world;         | <i>monde,</i>     | <i>m.</i> |                        |
| The rag,           | <i>haillon,</i>   | <i>m.</i> | [ <i>h</i> aspirated.] |
| The being,         | <i>être,</i>      | <i>m.</i> |                        |
| The coat,          | <i>habit,</i>     | <i>m.</i> | [ <i>h</i> mute.]      |
| The earth,         | <i>terre,</i>     | <i>f.</i> |                        |
| The hatred,        | <i>haine,</i>     | <i>f.</i> | [ <i>h</i> aspirated.] |
| The island,        | <i>île,</i>       | <i>f.</i> |                        |
| The breath,        | <i>haleine,</i>   | <i>f.</i> | [ <i>h</i> mute.]      |
| The continent,     | <i>continent,</i> | <i>m.</i> |                        |
| The dripping wind, | <i>hale,</i>      | <i>m.</i> | [ <i>h</i> aspirated.] |
| The animal,        | <i>animal,</i>    | <i>m.</i> |                        |
| The fishing-hook,  | <i>hameçon,</i>   | <i>m.</i> | [ <i>h</i> mute.]      |
| The mountain       | <i>montagne,</i>  | <i>f.</i> |                        |
| The hedge,         | <i>haie,</i>      | <i>f.</i> | [ <i>h</i> aspirated.] |
| The water,         | <i>eau,</i>       | <i>f.</i> |                        |
| The harmony,       | <i>harmonie,</i>  | <i>f.</i> | [ <i>h</i> mute.]      |
| The hill,          | <i>coteau,</i>    | <i>m.</i> |                        |



# FRENCH EXERCISES.

|               |              |    |                    |
|---------------|--------------|----|--------------------|
| The thicket,  | hâlier,      | m. | [h aspirated.]     |
| The air,      | air,         | m. |                    |
| The heir,     | héritier,    | m. | [h mute.]          |
| The river,    | rivière,     | f. |                    |
| The height,   | hauteur,     | f. | [h aspirated.]     |
| The star,     | étoile,      | f. |                    |
| The herb,     | herbe,       | f. | [h mute.]          |
| The dale,     | valon,       | m. |                    |
| The hamlet,   | hameau,      | m. | [h aspirated.]     |
| The storm,    | orage,       | m. |                    |
| The winter,   | hiver,       | m. | [h mute.]          |
| The smoak,    | fumée,       | f. |                    |
| The hip,      | hanche,      | f. | [h aspirated.]     |
| The spark,    | étincelle,   | f. |                    |
| The hour,     | heure,       | f. | [h mute.]          |
| The sire,     | seigneur,    | m. |                    |
| The Gray,     | haquet,      | m. | [h aspirated.]     |
| The summer,   | été,         | m. |                    |
| The hermit,   | hermite,     | m. | [h mute.]          |
| The heat,     | chaleur,     | f. |                    |
| The boldness, | hardiesse,   | f. | [h aspirated.]     |
| The scratch,  | égratignure, | f. |                    |
| The history,  | histoire,    | f. | [h mute.]          |
| Coal,         | charbon,     | m. | [limited sense.]   |
| Crust,        | crouste,     | f. | [limited sense.]   |
| Lamb,         | agneau,      | m. |                    |
| Wing,         | aile,        | f. |                    |
| Hashed meat,  | hachi,       | m. | [h aspirated.]     |
| Herb,         | herbe,       | f. | [h mute.]          |
| Jupiter,      | Jupiter,     |    | [a proper name.]   |
| God,          | Dieu,        | m. |                    |
| A Prince,     | Prince,      | m. |                    |
| Paris,        | Paris.       |    | [a proper name.]   |
| Cinders,      | fraise,      | m. |                    |
| A Princess,   | Princesse,   | f. | last.]             |
| White bread,  | pain blanc,  | m. | [the adnoun coming |
| Good bread,   | bon pain,    |    | [the adnoun coming |
| Sauce,        | saUCE,       | f. | first.]            |
| Juno,         | Junon,       |    | [a proper name.]   |

Cloaths,

Upon the ACCIDENCE of NOUNS.

|  |                 |        |                            |
|--|-----------------|--------|----------------------------|
| Cloaths,   | hardes,         | f. pl. |                            |
| A boy,   | garçon,         | m.     |                            |
| The son,   | fil,            | m.     |                            |
| A girl,  | fille,          | f.     |                            |
| Rome,  | Rome,           |        | [a proper name.]           |
| Excellent water, eau excellente, or excellente eau, f. the adnoun coming last in the first example, and first in the second. |                 |        |                            |
| A General,   | Général,        | m.     |                            |
| The body,  | corps,          | m.     |                            |
| The soul,  | âme,            | f.     |                            |
| A spirit   | esprit,         | m.     |                            |
| The shame,   | honte,          | f.     | [aspirated.]               |
| Vast offers,   | grandes offres, | f.     | [the adnoun coming first.] |
| The acc,   | as,             | m.     |                            |
| A picture,   | tableau,        | m.     |                            |
| The stake,   | pieu            | m.     |                            |
| A hole,  | trou,           | m.     |                            |
| The horse,   | cheval,         | m.     |                            |
| A cask,  | tonneau,        | m.     |                            |
| The walnut,  | noix,           | f.     |                            |
| A ship,  | vaisseau,       | m.     |                            |
| The confession,  | aveu,           | m.     |                            |
| A cabbage,   | chou,           | m.     |                            |
| Elder,   | sureau          | m.     |                            |
| The stake,   | enjeu           | m.     |                            |
| An ox,   | beuf,           | m.     |                            |
| The knee,  | genou,          | m.     |                            |
| A mouse,   | souris,         | f.     |                            |
| The cake,  | gâteau,         | m.     |                            |
| A weight,  | poids,          | m.     |                            |
| The boat,  | bateau,         | m.     |                            |
| A nail,  | clou,           | m.     |                            |
| Skin,  | peau,           | f.     |                            |
| A skrew,   | vis,            | f.     |                            |
| The badger,  | blaireau,       | m.     |                            |
| A cross,   | croix,          | f.     |                            |
| The stove,   | fourneau,       | m.     |                            |
| The fire,  | feu,            | m.     |                            |

Fine amber, ambre beau, bel, m. the noun coming first in the first example, and last in the second.



# FRENCH EXERCISES.

|                 |                       |                  |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| Vienna,         | <i>Vienne,</i>        | [a proper name.] |
| Gravy,          | <i>jus,</i>           | <i>m.</i>        |
| The city,       | <i>ville,</i>         | <i>f.</i>        |
| The swallow,    | <i>hirondelle,</i>    | <i>f.</i>        |
| George,         | <i>George,</i>        | [a proper name.] |
| The Admiral,    | <i>Amiral,</i>        | <i>m.</i>        |
| Bad sugar,      | <i>mauvais sucre,</i> | <i>m.</i>        |
| The beech-tree, | <i>hêtre,</i>         | <i>m.</i>        |
| Bitter vinegar, | <i>vinaigre amer,</i> | <i>m.</i>        |
| A book,         | <i>livre,</i>         | <i>m.</i>        |
| Dover,          | <i>Douvres,</i>       | [a proper name.] |

## Upon the Accidence of Verbs.

### Upon the First Conjugation, or the Verbs in *er*.

I Give, thou proposest, he sings, we seek, ye limit, they  
*donner. proposer chanter chercher limiter*  
 improve.  
*profiter.*

I did love, thou didst think, he did comfort, we did protect,  
*aimer penser consoler protéger*  
 ye did accuse, they did swear.  
*accuser jurer.*

I shewed, thou certified'st, he forgave, we began, ye struck,  
*montrer certifier pardonner commencer frapper*  
 they insisted.  
*insister.*

I shall assist, thou wilt yield, he will order, we shall pub-  
*assister céder ordonner publier*  
 lish, ye will draw back, they will ask.  
*reculer demander.*

I should forget, thou wouldst kill, he could lend, we should  
*oublier tuer prêter*  
 change, ye could prepare, they would call.  
*changer préparer appeler.*

I have abandoned, thou hast blamed, he has walked, we have  
*abandonner blâmer marcher*  
 equalled, ye have buried, they have explained.  
*égaler enterrer expliquer.*

I had

I had sent, thou hadst consulted, he had shut, we had forged,  
*envoyer      consulter      fermer      forger*  
 ye have spelt, they have avoided.

*épeller      éviter*  
 I had exhausted, thou hadst burnt, he had finished, we had  
*épuiser      brûler      achever*  
 daubed, ye had drove, they had condemned.

*barbouiller      chasser      condamner*  
 I shall have armed, thou shalt have kissed, he shall have danced,  
*armer      baiser      danser*

we shall have listened, ye shall have scalded, they shall have  
*écouter      échauder*  
 carried away.

*emporter*  
 I should have breakfasted, thou wouldst have nailed up, he  
*déjeuner      enclouer*

would have paid, we would have praised, ye would have forced,  
*payer      louer      forcer*  
 they would have strengthened.

*fortifier*  
 I may think, thou mayst congratulate, he may curl, we may  
*peser      congratuler      friser*

lift up, ye may prattle, they may inform.  
*hausser      jaser      informer*

I might throw, thou might'st imitate, he might leave, we  
*jetter      imiter      laisser*  
 might swim, he might dare, they might fish.

*nager      user      pêcher*  
 I may have pushed, thou mayst have purged, he may have  
*pousser      purger*

redeemed, we may have rewarded, ye may have looked, they  
*racheter      récompenser      regarder*  
 may have jumped.

*sauter*  
 I might have thanked, thou might'st have rested, he might  
*remercier      reposer*

have shook, we might have supped, ye might have sinned, they  
*séduire      souper      pécher*  
 might have emptied.

*vider*  
 Fly thou, let him aim, let us speak, dance ye, let them change,  
*voler      viser      parler      danser      changer*



*Upon the Second Conjugation, or Verbs in ir ending their  
Participle in issant.*

I chuse, thou obey'st, he fills, we applaud, ye banish, they  
*choisir obéir remplir applaudir bannir*  
enslave. [*assujettir.*]

I did demolish, thou didst define, he did commiserate, we did  
*démolir définir compatir*

disunite, ye did divert, they did harden.

*désunir divertir durcir.*

I softened, thou invadedst, he endrd, we thickened, ye  
*amollir envahir finir épaissir*

groaned, they swallowed up.

*gémir engloutir.*

I shal' cure, thou wilt betray, he will roast, he will grow old  
*guérir trahir rôtir vieillir*

ye will stun, they will tarnish.

*étourdir ternir.*

I should stuff, thou wouldst succeed, he would foul, we would  
*farcir réussir salir*

fulfil, ye would perish, they would free.

*accomplir périr affranchir.*

I have made short, thou hadst disobey'd, he had demolished,  
*accourir désobéir démolir*

we shall have lessened, ye would have converted, they may have  
*amoindrir convertir*

weakened. [*affoiblir.*]

I may enlarge, thou mayst dazzle, he may embellish, we may  
*aggrandir éblouir embellir*

make narrow, ye may flourish, they may furnish.

*étrécir fleurir fournir.*

I might feed, thou might'st grow rotten, he might grow pale,  
*nourir pourir pâlir*

we might refresh, ye might reflect, they might fill.

*rafraîchir réfléchir remplir.*

I might have punished, blush thou, let him bear hardships,  
*punir rougir pâtir*

let us reunite, cure ye, let them neigh.

*réunir guérir hennir.*

*Upon the Third Conjugation, or Verbs in tir.*

I lie, thou settest out; he goes out, we consent, ye have a  
*mentir partir sortir consentir*

fore-sight, they resent.

*pressentir ressentir.*

I did

On the 4<sup>th</sup> & 5<sup>th</sup> Conjugations, or Verbs in *enir* & *evoir*

I did give the lie, thou had'st a foresight, he did serve, we did  
*démentir* *pressentir* *servir*  
 resent, ye did set out again, they did go out.

*ressentir* *repartir* *sortir*  
 I resented, thou settest out, he lied, we went out, ye  
*ressentir* *partir* *mentir* *sortir*

consented, they had a foresight.  
*consentir* *pressentir*.

I shall serve, thou wilt lie, he will consent, we will resent,  
*servir* *mentir* *consentir* *ressentir*  
 ye will go out, they will have a foresight  
*sortir* *pressentir*.

I should do an ill office, thou wouldst reply, he would lie,  
*deffervir* *repartir* *mentir*  
 we would set out, ye would consent, they would serve  
*partir* *consentir* *servir*

I have resented, thou hadst lied, he had consented, we shall  
*ressentir* *mentir* *consentir*  
 have served, ye would have had a foresight, they may have  
*servir* *pressentir*  
 cleared the table. [*deffervir*.]

I may go out, thou may'st resent, he may give the lie, we may  
*sortir* *ressentir* *démentir*  
 consent, ye may set out, they may have a foresight.  
*consentir* *partir* *pressentir*.

I might consent, thou might'st set out again, he might serve,  
*consentir* *repartir* *servir*  
 we might lie, ye might resent, they might go out.  
*mentir* *ressentir* *sortir*.

I might have consented, resent, let him serve, let us give the  
*consentir* *ressentir* *servir* *démén-*  
 lie, set out, let them have a foresight.  
*tir* *partir* *pressentir*.

Upon the Fourth and Fifth Conjugations, or Verbs in *enir*  
 and *evoir*.

I come, thou owest, he attains to, we conceive, ye  
*venir* *devoir* *parvenir* *concevoir*  
 maintain, they owe again.  
*soutenir* *redevoir*.

I did agree, thou didst conceive, it did contain, we did owe  
*convenir* *concevoir* *contenir* *devoir*  
 ye did disagree, they did owe again,  
*disconvenir* *redevoir*.



FRENCH EXERCISES.

I obtained, thou perceived'st, he retain'd, we owed again,  
*obtenir appercevoir retenir redevoir*  
 ye became, they conceived.

*devenir concevoir*  
 I shall prevent, thou wilt owe, he will come again, we shall  
*prévenir devoir revenir*  
 conceive, ye will befall, they will owe again.  
*concevoir survenir redevoir.*

I should attain, thou would'st conceive, he would belong,  
*parvenir concevoir appartenir*  
 we would owe, ye would agree, they would perceive.  
*devoir convenir appercevoir.*

I have maintained, thou hadst conceived, he had kept, we  
*soutenir concevoir entretenir*  
 shall have perceived, ye would have detained, they may have  
*appercevoir détenir*  
 owed. [*devoir.*]

I may obtain, thou may'st owe again, he may agree, we may  
*obtenir redevoir convenir*  
 conceive, ye may retain, they may perceive.  
*concevoir retenir appercevoir.*

I might come, thou might'st owe, he might belong, we  
*venir devoir appartenir*  
 might perceive, ye might disagree, they might conceive.  
*appercevoir disconvenir concevoir.*

I might have owed again, become thou, let him conceive,  
*redevoir devenir concevoir*  
 let us prevent, owe ye, let them maintain.  
*prévenir devoir soutenir.*

Upon the Sixth Conjugation, or Verbs in *aire*.

I undo, thou counterfeitest, he does again, we satisfy, ye  
*défaire contrefaire refaire satisfaire*  
 exact, they undo again.  
*surfaire redéfaire.*

I did satisfy, thou didst undo again, he did counterfeit, we  
*satisfaire redéfaire contrefaire*  
 did do again, ye did undo, they did exact.  
*refaire défaire surfaire.*

I exacted, thou undidst, he satisfied, we undid again, ye  
*surfaire défaire satisfaire redéfaire*  
 counterfeited, they did again.  
*contrefaire refaire.*

I shall undo again, thou wilt satisfy, he will exact, we will.  
*redéfaire satisfaire surfaire*  
 counter-

On the 7, 8, 9, and 10th Conjugations, or Verbs in re.

counterfeit, ye will undo; they will make up again.

*contrefaire, défaire, refaire.*

I should do again, thou would'st counterfeit, he would undo.

*refaire, contrefaire, redéfaire*

again, we would satisfy, ye would undo, they would exact.

*satisfaire, défaire, surfaire*

I have exacted, thou hadst undone, he had satisfied, we shall

*surfaire, défaire, satisfaire*

have undone again, ye would have counterfeited, they may

*redéfaire, contrefaire*

have done again.

*refaire*

I may satisfy, thou may'st do again, he may counterfeit, we

*satisfaire, refaire, contrefaire*

may undo, ye may exact, they may undo again.

*défaire, surfaire, redéfaire*

I might counterfeit, thou might'st undo again, he might exact,

*contrefaire, redéfaire, surfaire*

we might satisfy, ye might do again, they might undo

*satisfaire, refaire, défaire*

I might have exacted, undo thou, let him do again, let us

*surfaire, défaire, refaire*

counterfeit, undo ye again, let them satisfy.

*contrefaire, redéfaire, satisfaire.*

Upon the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth Conjugations, or Verbs in *aindre, oindre, ôtre, uire, endre, and ondre, besides the six former, which are brought in again promiscuously.*

I think, thou buildest, he consents, we come, ye owe,

*penfer, bâtir, consentir, venir, devoir*

they undo.

*défaire.*

I did constrain, thou didst appear, he did conduct, we

*contraindre, paroître, conduire*

did wait, ye did love, they did punish.

*attendre, aimer, punir.*

I warned, thou retainedst, he conceived, we did again, ye

*avertir, retenir, concevoir, redéfaire*

enjoined, they acknowledged.

*enjoindre, reconnoître.*

I shall produce, thou wilt correspond, he will shew, we shall

*produire, correspondre, montrer*

widen, ye will lie, they will obtain.

*élargir, mentir, obtenir.*

I should



FRENCH EXERCISES.

I should receive, thou wouldst satisfy, he would dissemble,  
recevoir satisfaire feindre

we should grow, ye would translate, they would pretend.  
croître traduire prétendre.

I may correspond, thou may'st lose, he may eat, we may  
correspondre perdre manger

grow old, ye may serve, they may come.  
vieillir servir venir.

I might conceive, thou might'st counterfeit, he might reach,  
concevoir contrefaire atteindre

we might appear, ye might destroy, they might pretend.  
paraître détruire prétendre.

Shear thou, let him bite, let us judge, punish, let him set  
tondre mordre juger punir partir

out, I have obtained. [obtenir.]

Thou hadst breakfasted, he had warned, we shall have satis-  
déjeuner avertir satisfaire

fied, ye would have owed, they may have constrained, I might  
devoir contraindre

have produced. [produire.]

I fill, thou didst forget, he consented, we shall obtain, ye  
emplir oublier consentir obtenir

would owe, they may exact.  
devoir surfaire.

I might put out, thou beginnest, he did groan, we appeared  
eteindre commencer gémir paraître

ye will do over, they would understand.  
enduire entendre.

I may shear, thou might'st lose, let him swallow, we lend,  
tondre perdre avaler prêter

you did give the lie, they attained.  
démentir parvenir.

I shall owe, thou wouldst undo, he may pity, we might dis-  
devoir défaire plaindre disparaître

appear, introduce ye, let them stay.  
introduire attendre.

I lose, thou didst contaminate, he betrayed, we shall go out,  
perdre fouiller trahir sortir

ye would maintain, they might conceive.  
soutenir concevoir.

I might counterfeit, reach thou, he corrects, we did soften,  
contrefaire atteindre corriger adoucir

you went out, they will come again.  
sortir revenir.

I should conceive, thou may'st satisfy, he might dissemble,  
concevoir satisfaire feindre

let us acknowledge, deduct, let them render.  
reconnoître déduire rendre.

I walk,

On the 7, 8, 9 and 10th Conjugations, or Verbs in re. 11

I walk, thou didst grow rich, he repented, we shall abstain,  
*se promener s'enrichir se repentir s'abstenir*  
 you would perceive, they may satisfy themselves.

*s'apercevoir se satisfaire.*

I might complain, introduce myself, let him catch cold, let  
*se plaindre s'introduire se morfondre*  
 us lose ourselves, fill your bellies, let them free themselves.  
*se perdre se rassasier s'affranchir.*

I do change, thou art disobeying, he fancies, we are repent-  
*changer désobéir s'imaginer se repentir*  
 ing, you do remember, they are owing again.

*se ressouvenir redevoir.*

I have washed my face, thou hast fainted away, he has con-  
*se débarbouiller s'évanouir se de-*  
 tradicted himself, we have remembered, you have perceived,  
*mentir se souvenir s'apercevoir*  
 they have made away with themselves. [*se défaire.*]

I was undoing, thou wilt be painting, he would be growing,  
*défaire peindre croître.*  
 we may be hurting, ye might be spilling, let them correspond,  
*nuire répandre correspondre.*

I had complained, thou hadst forgot thyself, he had reduced  
*se plaindre se méconnoître se réduire*  
 himself, we had understood one another, you had caught cold,  
*s'entendre se morfondre*  
 they had prostituted themselves. [*se prostituer.*]

I did satisfy myself, thou wast dying, it was growing again,  
*se satisfaire teindre recroître*  
 we did seduce, you were hanging, they did bite.  
*séduire pendre mordre.*

I shall have used myself, thou shalt have taken heart, he shall  
*s'accoutumer se renhardir*  
 have fallen asleep again, we shall have discoursed, you shall  
*se redormir s'entretenir*  
 have perceived, they shall have satisfied themselves.  
*s'apercevoir se satisfaire*

I remembered, thou enjoined'st, it seemed, we disappeared,  
*se souvenir enjoindre sembler disparaître*  
 you reconducted, they walked.  
*reconduire se promener*

I should have imagined, thou wouldst have built thyself, he  
*s'imaginer se bâtir*  
 would have obtained, we would have perceived, you would  
*s'abstenir s'apercevoir.*  
 have made away with yourselves, they would have joined to-  
*se défaire*  
 gether. [*se joindre.*]



I shall be undoing, thou wilt be warming thyself, he will  
*défaire. se chauffer*  
 destroy, we will inclose, you will call to mind, they will be  
*détruire enceindre se ressouvenir*  
 sleeping. [*dormir.*]

I may have remembered, thou may'st have foreswore thyself,  
*se souvenir se parjurer*  
 he may have repented, we may have praised ourselves, you may  
*se repentir se louer*  
 have complained, they may have diverted themselves  
*se plaindre se divertir.*  
 I should be wanting, thou wouldst be fulfilling, he would be  
*manquer accomplir*  
 consenting, we would be remembering, you would perceive,  
*consentir se souvenir s'apercevoir*  
 they would be exacting.  
*surfaire*

I might have leaned upon, thou might'st have subjected thy-  
*s'accorder assujettir*  
 self, he might have repented, we might have maintained our-  
*se repentir se maintenir*  
 selves, you might have perceived, they might have imagined.  
*s'apercevoir s'imaginer.*

Fill thy belly, let him think, let us repent, be appeased, let  
*se rassasier s'imaginer se repentir se ralloucir*  
 them perceive.  
*s'apercevoir.*

### Upon the Irregular Verbs.

I acquire, thou goest away, it stinks, we send, you run to,  
*acquérir s'en aller puer envoyer accourir*  
 they boil again.  
*rebouillir.*

I did collect, thou didst fall asleep, he did go away, we did  
*recueillir s'endormir s'en aller*  
 run away, ye did hate, they were dying.  
*s'enfuir haïr se mourir.*

I suffered, thou leaped'st for joy, he loathed, we heard, you  
*souffrir tressaillir vêtir oui*  
 sat again, they were able.  
*se rasseoir pouvoir.*

I shall know, thou wilt have a glimpse of, he will be willing,  
*savoir entrevoir vouloir.*  
 we shall prevail, you will move, they will hold their tongues.  
*prévaloir remuer se taire.*

I would send, thou wouldst go away, it would boil again,  
*envoyer s'en aller rebouillir.*

Upon the Irregular Verbs

we should concur, ye would gather together, they would sleep,  
concourir recueillir dormir

we may avoid, you may cover, they may prevail.  
fuir couvrir prevaloir.

I might resolve, thou might'st grind again, he might sew again,  
résoudre remoudre recoudre

we might vanquish, you might exclude, they might submit them-  
vaincre exclure se soumettre.

selves.

I have run to, thou had'st gone, he had arrived, we shall have  
accourir aller arriver décider

died, ye will have come down, they should have become.  
descendre devenir.

I abstract, thou drinkest, he is self-conceited, we are born  
abstraire boire s'enfaire acroire renaitre

again, you say again, they elect.  
redire élire

I did smile, thou didst describe, he did outlive, we did pur-  
sourire décrire survivre poursuivre

sue, you did learn, they did corrupt.  
apprendre corrompre.

I pulled down, thou committed'st, he excluded, we overcame,  
abattre commettre exclure vaincre

you sewed again, they whetted.  
recoudre émoudre.

I shall solder, thou wilt absolve, he will go away, we shall  
solder absoudre s'en aller

conquer, you will send for, you will boil again.  
conquérir envoyer querir rebouillir.

I should run away, thou would'st hate, he would be dying,  
s'enfuir haïr se mourir

we would offer, you would leap for joy, they would invest.  
offrir tressaillir investir.

I may conceal, thou may'st drink, he may believe, we may  
cacher boire croire

graze, you may contradict, they may circumsise.  
paître contredire circonscire.

I might sport, thou might'st interrupt, he might retake, we  
s'ébattre interrompre reprendre

might pursue, you might outlive, they might out-law.  
poursuivre survivre proscrire.

I may have come in, thou might'st have gone up, he would  
entrer monter

have died, we have been born, you had departed, they had  
mourir naître partir

returned.  
retourner.



I am going to fetch, thou stink'st, he runs over, we gather  
*aller. querir puer parcourir. recueillir*  
 together, you lull asleep, they run away.  
*endormir s'enfuir.*

I did hate, thou did'st bear, it did gush out, we did put on,  
*hair souffrir saillir se revêtir*  
 you did sit down again, they were able.  
*se rasseoir pouvoir.*

I knew, thou had'st a glimpse of, he would, we prevailed,  
*savoir entrevoir vouloir prévaloir*  
 you displeased, they drank.  
*déplaître boire.*

I will believe, thou wilt be born again, he will unsay, we  
*croire renaitre se dédire*  
 will read again, you will smile, they will transcribe.  
*relire sourire transcrire.*

I would revive, thou would'st undertake, it would follow,  
*revivre entreprendre s'ensuivre*  
 we would interrupt, you would fight, they would admit.  
*interrompre combattre admettre.*

I may smile, thou may'st write again, he may out-live, we  
*sourire recire survivre*  
 may pursue, you may mistake, they may whet.  
*poursuivre se méprendre émoudre.*

I might smile, thou might'st suffice, he might slander, we  
*sourire suffire médire*  
 might feed upon, you might be born, they might believe.  
*se repaître naître croire.*

I shall have come back again, thou would'st have gone out,  
*revenir sortir*  
 he may have fallen down, we might have come, ye have dis-  
*tomber venir disconvenir*  
 agreed, they had come again. [*revenir.*]

I exclude, thou overcomest, he sews again, we set an edge,  
*exclure triompher recoudre émoudre*  
 you absolve, they come out.  
*absoudre éclore.*

I did go away, thou did'st acquire, it did boil, we did run to,  
*s'en aller acquérir bouillir accourir*  
 you did fall asleep, they did run away.  
*s'endormir s'enfuir.*

I died, thou covered'st again, he leapt for joy, we put on,  
*mourir recouvrir tressaillir se revêtir*  
 you sat down, they could.  
*s'asseoir pouvoir.*

I shall know, thou shalt provide, he will prevail, we will  
*savoir pourvoir prévaloir*

hold our tongues, they will milk, they will drink.

*se taire traire boire.*

I would believe, thou wouldst be born again, he would curse,

*croire renaître maudire*

we would elect, you would smile, they would subscribe.

*élire sourire souscrire.*

I may struggle, thou may'st permit, he may exclude, we

*se débattre permettre exclure*

may overcome, you may sew again, they may grind again.

*vaincre recoudre remoudre.*

I might drink again, thou might'st displease, he might pre-

*reddire déplaire préva-*

vail, we might foresee, ye might know, they might sit down.

*loir prévoir savoir s'asseoir.*

I had agreed, thou shalt have happened, it would have come

*convenir survenir provenir*

from, we may have attended to, ye might have become, they

*parvenir devenir*

have happened. [*survenir*]

I revive, thou pursuest, he unlearns, we interrupt, you

*revivre poursuivre desapprendre interrompre*

abate, they omit.

*rebattre omettre.*

I did exclude, thou did'st vanquish, he did sew again, we

*exclure triompher recoudre*

did grind again, you did absolve, they did exclude.

*remoudre absoudre exclure.*

I whetted, thou resolved'st, he unsewed, we excluded, you

*remoudre résoudre decoudre exclure*

overcame, they transmitted.

*vaincre transmettre.*

I will beat again, thou wilt corrupt, he will surprise, we shall

*rebattre corrompre surprendre*

pursue, ye will outlive, they will prescribe.

*poursuivre suivre prescrire.*

I would smile, thou would'st read again, they would preserve,

*sourire relire conserver*

we would be born again, you could believe, he would drink.

*renaitre croire boire.*

I may sew again, thou may'st vanquish, they may go away,

*recoudre vaincre s'en aller*

we may conquer, you may discourse, they may collect.

*conquerir discourir recueillir.*

I might disguise myself, thou might'st discover, he might die,

*se travestir découvrir mourir*

we might run away, you might fall asleep, they might gather

*s'enfuir s'endormir*

together. [*recueillir*].



I have happened, thou hadst returned, he had run to, we shall  
*survenir retourner advenir*  
 have gone, you would have arrived, she may have died.  
*aller aborder deceder.*

I extract, thou holdest thy tongue, he moves, we are worth,  
*extraire se taire se mouvoir valoir*  
 you will, they see again.  
*vouloir revoir.*

I did foresee, thou didst provide, he had a glimpse of, we did  
*prévoir pourvoir entrevoir*  
 know, you could, they did sit down.  
*savoir pouvoir s'asseoir.*

I invested, thou disguised it, it gushed out, we leaped for joy,  
*investir travestir saillir tressaillir*  
 you underbid, they discovered.  
*mesoffer decouvrir.*

I will offer, thou shalt die, he will hate, we will run away,  
*offrir mourir haïr s'enfuir*  
 you will lull asleep, they will collect.  
*endormir recueillir.*

I would succour, thou would'st acquire, he would go away,  
*secourir acquérir s'en aller*  
 we would send for, you would enquire after, they would boil  
*envoyer querir s'informer rebouillir*  
 again.

I may lull asleep, thou may'st fly, he may die, we may offer,  
*endormir fuir mourir offrir*  
 you may sit down again, they may know.  
*se rasseoir savoir.*

I might relieve, thou might'st conquer, it might boil, we  
*secourir conquérir bouillir*  
 might go away, ye might have recourse, they might conquer.  
*s'en aller recourir conquérir.*

I might have come down, thou hast become, he had got entered,  
*descendre devenir entrer*  
 we had got up, ye shall have died, they would have been born.  
*monter mourir naître*

I incur, thou gatherest, he falls asleep, we run away, you  
*encourir recueillir s'endormir s'enfuir*  
 hate, they are dying.  
*haïr se mourir.*

I did cover, thou didst leap for joy, he did clothe, we did sit  
*couvrir tressaillir vêtir s'asseoir*  
 down, you did know, they could.  
*savoir pouvoir*

I provided, thou would'st; it was worth, we concealed, you  
*pourvoir* *vouloir* *valoir* *taire*  
 drank again, they thought.  
*reboire* *croire*.

I will feed, thou wilt forget, it will suffice, we shall smile,  
*se repaître* *prédire* *suffire* *sourire*  
 you will inscribe, they will revive.  
*inscrira* *revivra*.

I would pursue, thou would'st understand, he would corrupt,  
*poursuivre* *comprendre* *corrompre*  
 we would struggle, you would promise, they would guind again.,  
*se débattre* *promettre* *remoudre*.

I may drink, thou may'st go away; he may prevail, we may  
*boire* *s'en aller* *prevaloir*  
 sleep again, you may avoid, they may cover.  
*redormir* *fuir* *couvrir*.

I might believe, thou might'st conquer, he might resolve, we  
*croire* *conquérir* *résoudre*  
 might be born again, you might sew again, they might go away.  
*renaitre* *recoudre* *s'en aller*.

I may have gone, thou might'st have run to, he has arrived,  
*aller* *accourir* *arriver*  
 we had happened, you had died, they shall have entered.  
*survenir* *décéder* *entrer*.

I dissolve, thou whettest, he unfews, we convince, you  
*dissoudre* *émoudre* *découdre* *convaincre*  
 exclude, they put again.  
*exclure* *remettre*.

I did beat again, thou didst interrupt, he did understand, we  
*rebattre* *interrompre* *comprendre*  
 did fry, you did pursue, they did revive.  
*frire* *poursuivre* *revivre*.

I transcribed, thou smiled'st, he circumcised, we interdicted,  
*transcrire* *sourire* *circoncire* *interdire*  
 you were born again, they thought.  
*renaitre* *croire*.

I shall drink again, thou wilt take from, he will displease, we  
*reboire* *soustraire* *deplaire*  
 shall prevail, you will be willing, they will foresee.  
*prevoloir* *vouloir* *prevoir*.

I would see again, thou would'st provide, he would know, we  
*revoir* *pourvoir* *savoir*  
 could be able, you would sit down again, they would put on.  
*pouvoir* *se rasseoir* *se revêtir*.

I may die, thou may'st conquer, he may go away, we may  
*mourir* *conquérir* *s'en aller*



fit down, you may drink, they may sew again.

*s'affeoir boire recoudre.*

I might go away, thou mightest incur, he might fall asleep.

*s'en aller encourir s'endormir*

we might conceal, you might drink again, they might curse.

*taire reboire maudire.*

I have agreed, thou hadst become, he had got down, we

*convenir devenir descendre*

shall have returned, you would have happened, they may have

*retourner survenir*

disagreed, [*disconvenir.*]

I do leap for joy, thou dost suffer, he is dying, we do hate,

*tresfaillir de joie souffrir se mourir haïr*

you run away, they are sleeping again.

*s'enfuir redormir.*

I was gathering together, thou didst survey, he did acquire,

*recueillir parcourir acquérir*

we did send, you did go away, they were boiling again.

*envoyer s'en aller rebouillir.*

I conquered, thou ran'st to, he gathered together, we lulled

*conquérir accourir recueillir endormir*

asleep, you shunned, they died.

*fuir mourir.*

I will cover again, thou shalt leap for joy, he will disguise,

*recouvrir tresfaillir de joie travestir*

we shall sit down, you will be able, they shall know.

*s'affeoir pouvoir savoir.*

I would foresee, thou wouldst be willing, he would prevail,

*prévoir vouloir prévaloir*

we would see again, you would displease, they would divert

*revoir déplaire distraire.*

from.

I might have run to, thou hast gone, he had attained, we had

*accourir aller parvenir*

become, you shall have arrived, they would have died.

*devenir arriver mourir.*

I am drinking again, thou believest, he is self-conceited, we

*reboire croire s'en faire accroire*

feed upon, you contradict, they are grazing.

*se repaître contredire paître.*

I was reading again, thou didst smile, he was describing, we

*relire sourire décrire*

were reviving, you were frying, they did pursue.

*revivre frire poursuivre.*

I learnt, thou interrupted'st, he abated, we resigned, you

*apprendre interrompre rebattre se démettre*

convicted, they excluded.

*convaincre exclure.*

I shall

I shall unsew, thou wilt set an edge, he will dissolve, we will

découdre émaître dissoudre

exclude, you will overcome, they will be hatched.

exclure vaincre éclore.

I would absolve, thou would'st grind again, he would sew again,

absoudre remoudre recoudre.

we would overcome, you would exclude, they would remove.

vaincre exclure démettre.

I may have agreed, thou might'st have gone, he has got down,

convenir aller descendre

we had been born, you had fallen, they shall have come.

naitre tomber venir.

I pull down, thou corruptest, he learns, we pursue, you

abattre corrompre apprendre poursuivre

outlive, they smile.

survivre sourire.

I was describing, thou wast reading again, he was unlaying,

décrire relire se dédire

we were born again, you did graze, they did believe.

renaitre paître croire.

I drank again, thou holdest thy tongue, he prevailed, we

reboire se taire prévaloir

would, you foresaw, they knew.

vouloir prévoir savoir.

I shall be able, thou wilt sit down again, he will invest, we

pouvoir se rasseoir investir

will leap for joy, you will suffer, they will be dying.

treffaillir de joie souffrir se mourir.

I may hate, thou may'st run away, he may fall asleep, we may

hair s'enfuir s'endormir

gather together, you may discourse, they may conquer.

recueillir discourir conquérir.

I may have disagreed, thou may'st have arrived, he might have

disconvenir arriver

returned, we have gone, you have agreed, they have happened.

revenir aller convenir survenir.

I boil again, thou sendest for, he runs to, we make welcome,

rebouillir envoyer quérir accourir faire accuei.

you sleep again, they shun.

redormir fuir.

I was dying, thou didst hate, he did underbid, we did leap

se mourir hair méseffrir treffaillir

for joy, you did put on, they did sit down again.

de joie se revêtir se rasseoir.

I could, thou knewest, he saw again, we would, you pre-

pouvoir savoir revoir vouloir prévaloir

vailed, they held their tongues.

se taire.



I shall abstract, thou wilt drink again, he will think, we  
*abstraire* *reboire* *croire*  
 shall feed upon, you shall contradict, they will elect.  
*se repaître* *contredire* *élire*.

I should laugh, thou would'st describe, he would outlive, we  
*rire* *décrire* *survivre*  
 would pursue, you would surprise, they would interrupt.  
*poursuivre* *surprendre* *interrompre*.

I shall have come, thou would'st have come, he may have  
*arriver* *venir*  
 fallen, we might have run to, you have been born, they had gone.  
*tomber* *accourir* *naitre* *aller*.

I am fighting, thou intermeddlest, he excludes, we do  
*combattre* *s'entremettre* *exclure*  
 overcome, you are sewing again, they do what.  
*vaincre* *regoudra* *émoudre*

I was absolving, thou wast grinding again, he was unsewing,  
*absoudre* *remoudre* *déoudre*  
 we were vanquishing, you did exclude, they did promise.  
*vaincre* *exclure* *promettre*.

I fought, thou corrupted'st, he undertook, we pursued, you  
*combattre* *corrompre* *entreprendre* *poursuivre*  
 outlived, they subscribed.  
*survivre* *souscrire*.

I shall smile, thou wilt circumcise, he will curse, we shall  
*sourire* *circoncire* *maudire*  
 be born again, you will believe, they will drink again.  
*renaitre* *croire* *reboire*.

I should extract, thou would'st hold thy tongue, he would  
*extraire* *se taire*  
 prevail, we would be willing, you would foresee, they would  
*prévaloir* *vouloir* *prévoir*  
 laugh. [*rire*.]

I had entered, thou shalt have happened, he would have died,  
*entrer* *survenir* *mourir*  
 we may have been born, you might have attained, they have  
*naitre* *parvenir*  
 come up. [*monter*.]

I am able, thou art sitting down again, he doth clothe, we  
*pouvoir* *se rasseoir* *revêtir*  
 cover, you are dying, they hate.  
*couvrir* *se mourir* *haïr*.

I did shun, thou wast falling asleep, he was collecting,  
*fuir* *s'endormir* *recueillir*  
 we did conspire, you did boil again, they went to fetch.  
*concurrir* *rebouillir* *aller querir*.

I went away, thou sent'st back again, he conquered, we  
*s'en aller* *renvoyer* *conquérir*.

came

came for, you boiled again, they surveyed.

*venir querir    recueillir    parcourir.*

I shall gather together, thou wilt fall asleep, he will run away,  
*recueillir    s'endormir    s'enfuir*

we shall be dying, you will discover, they will leap for joy.

*se mourir    découvrir    tressaillir de joie*

I would put on, thou would'st be sitting again, he would be  
*se revêtir    se rasseoir    pouvoir*

able, we would know, you would revile, they would prevail.  
*savoir    revoir    prévaloir.*

I had happened, thou hadst run to, he will have died, we  
*survenir    accourir    décider*  
would have gone up, you may have got down, they might have  
*monter    descendre*

happened. [*survenir.*]

I move, thou concealest, he abstains, we are drinking, you  
*mouvoir    taire    abstraire    boire*  
are conceited, they revive again.

*s'en faire accroire    renaître.*

I was cursing, thou wast sufficient, he was smiling, we did  
*maudire    suffire    sourire*  
inscribe, you were reviving, they were pursuing.

*inscrire    revivre    poursuivre.*

I shall take again, thou wilt interrupt, he will pull down,  
*reprendre    interrompre    abattre*  
we shall permit, you will exclude, they will overcome.

*permettre    exclure    vaincre.*

I should unfew, thou would'st whet, he would dissolve, we  
*découdre    émoudre    dissoudre*  
should exclude, you would resign, they would sport.

*exclure    se démettre    s'ébattre.*

I have returned, thou hadst agreed, he had got in, we shall  
*revenir    convenir    entrer*  
have become, you would have set out, they may have returned.  
*devenir    partir    revenir.*

I absolve, thou grindest again, he is sewing again, we are  
*absoudre    remoudre    recoudre.*  
going away, you conquer, they boil again.

*s'en aller    conquérir    rebouillir.*

I was relieving, thou didst collect, he was falling asleep, we  
*secourir    recueillir    s'endormir*  
were running away, you were dying, they did hate.

*s'enfuir    se mourir    haïr.*

I covered, thou leap'st for joy, he invested, we sat down,  
*couvrir    tressaillir de joie    investir    s'asseoir*  
you could, they knew.

*pouvoir    savoir.*



I shall see again, thou wilt be willing, it will be worth, we  
*revoir* *vouloir* *valoir*

shall foresee, you will prevail, they will move,  
*prévoir* *prévaloir* *mouvoir*.

I should hold my tongue, thou would'st take from, he would  
*se taire* *soustraire*  
 drink again, we would believe, you would impose upon, they  
*reboire* *croire* *en faire accroire*  
 would be born again. [*renaitre*.]

I had become, thou had'st run to, he shall have gone, we  
*devenir* *accourir* *s'en aller*  
 would have arrived, you may have died, they have got down.  
*arriver* *mourir* *descendre*.

I feed upon, thou slanderest, he reads again, we smile, you  
*se repaître* *médire* *relire* *sourire*  
 are writing again, they are reviving.  
*écrire* *revivre*.

I did follow, thou wast frying, he was learning, we did  
*suivre* *frire* *apprendre*  
 corrupt, you were fighting, they were compromising.  
*corrompre* *combattre* *compromettre*.

I excluded, thou convinced'st, he overcame, we unfewed,  
*exclure* *convaincre* *vaincre* *découdre*  
 you whetted, they resolved.  
*émou dre* *réfoudre*.

I will grind again, thou wilt sew again, he will overcome,  
*remoudre* *recoudre* *vaincre*  
 we shall conclude, you will permit, they will sport.  
*conclure* *permettre* *s'ébattre*.

I should interrupt, thou would'st unlearn, he would pursue,  
*interrompre* *désapprendre* *poursuivre*  
 we would outlive, you would prescribe, they would be suffi-  
*survivre* *prescrire*  
 cient, [*suffire*.]

I have happened, thou hast got in, he had come up, we  
*survenir* *entrer* *monter*  
 shall have died, you should have been born, they may have  
*mourir* *naître*  
 departed. [*partir*.]

I do say again, thou art born again, he is grazing, we do  
*redire* *renaitre* *paître*  
 believe, you are drinking again, they are conceited.  
*croire* *reboire* *s'en faire accroire*.

I was milking, thou wast holding thy tongue, he did prevail,  
*traire* *se taire* *prévaloir*  
 we had a glimpse of, you did know, they were able.  
*entrevoir* *savoir* *pouvoir*.

I sat down again, thou put on, he leapt for joy, we offered;  
*se rasseoir se revêtir trassaillir de joie offrir*  
 you were dying, they run away.  
*se mourir s'enfuir.*

I shall hate, thou wilt lust asleep, he will conduct, we shall  
*hair endormir conduire*  
 relieve, you will boil again, they will send again.  
*secourir rebouillir renvoyer.*

I would conquer, thou would'st go away, it would stink, we  
*conquérir s'en aller puer*  
 would be discoursing, you would be collecting again, they  
*discourir recueillir*  
 would fall asleep. [*s'endormir.*]

I have returned, thou hadst come back again, he had gone out,  
*retourner revenir sortir*  
 we shall have fallen down, you would have come, they may  
*tomber venir*  
 have disagreed. [*disconvenir.*]

I am running away, thou hatest, he is dying, we are  
*s'enfuir hair se mourir*  
 suffering, you leap for joy, they put on.  
*souffrir tressaillir de joie se revêtir.*

I was sitting down again, thou wast able, he did know, we  
*se rasseoir pouvoir savoir*  
 were foreseeing, you were prevailing, they were willing.  
*prévoir prévaloir vouloir.*

I shall move, thou wilt hold thy tongue, it will be out, we  
*mouvoir se taire écheoir*  
 shall extract, you will drink again, they will think.  
*extraire reboire croire*

I would be born again, thou would'st be slandering, he  
*renaître médire*  
 would circumcise, we would be smiling, you would subscribe,  
*circoncire sourire souscrire*  
 they would survive. [*survivre.*]

I might have come again, thou hast arrived, he had gone, we  
*revenir arriver aller*  
 had happened, you shall have died, they would have agreed  
*survenir décéder convenir*

I am pursuing, thou understandest, he is bribing, we pull  
*poursuivre comprendre corrompre abat-*  
 down, you do permit, they exclude.  
*tre permettre exclure.*

I was vanquishing, thou wast unsewing, he did grind again,  
*vaincre découdre remoudre*  
 we were dissolving, you did conclude, they were struggling.  
*dissoudre conclure se débattre.*



I resolved, thou whetted'st, he unsewed, we promised, you  
*résoudre émoudre découdre promettre*  
 undertook, they overcame,  
*entreprendre vaincre.*

I shall exclude, thou wilt unsew, he will omit, we shall  
*exclure découdre omettre*  
 struggle, you will interrupt, they will retake.  
*se débattre interrompre reprendre.*

I would learn, thou would'st pursue, he would be transcrib-  
*apprendre poursuivre transcrire*  
 ing, we would revive, you would elect, they would smile.  
*revivre élire sourire.*

I may have run to, thou might'st have come down, he has  
*accourir descendre*  
 become, we had come in, you had got up, they will have died.  
*devenir entrer monter mourir.*

I do foretel, thou feedest upon, he is extracting, we do hold  
*prédire se repaître extraire se taire*  
 our tongues, you prevail, they foresee,  
*prévaloir prévoir.*

I did know, thou could'st, he was sitting down, we did put  
*savoir pouvoir s'asseoir se revêtir*  
 on, you did leap for joy, they were suffering.  
*treffaillir de joie souffrir.*

I died, thou ran'st away, he slept again, we collected, you  
*mourir s'enfuir redormir recueillir*  
 ran over, they boiled again.  
*parcourir rebouillir.*

I shall conquer, thou wilt go away, he will send for, we  
*conquérir s'en aller envoyer querir*  
 shall run to, you will be collecting, they will fall asleep.  
*accourir recueillir s'endormir.*

I should suffer, thou would'st put on, he would leap for joy,  
*souffrir se revêtir treffaillir de joie*  
 we would sit down, you would be able, they would know.  
*s'asseoir pouvoir savoir.*

I should have happened, thou may'st have been born, he  
*survenir naître*  
 might have let out, we have attained, you had returned, they  
*partir parvenir retourner*

had happened. [*survenir.*]  
 I do foresee, thou art willing, he prevails, we move, you  
*prévoir vouloir prevaloir mouvoir*  
 hold your tongues, they extract.  
*se taire extraire.*

I was drinking again, thou didst believe, he was born again,  
*reboire croire renaître*  
 we did curse, you were reading again, they were smiling.  
*maudire relire sourire.*

I subscribed, thou outlived'st, he pursued, we misook, you  
*souscrire survivre poursuivre se méprendre*  
 interrupted, they straggled.  
*interrompre se débattre.*

I shall permit, thou wilt exclude, he will whet, we shall  
*permettre exclure émoudre*  
 dissolve, you will unsew, they will conclude.  
*dissoudre découtre conclure.*

I would write again, thou would'st smile, he would read  
*récrire sourire relire*  
 again, we should be feeding upon, you would unsay, they  
*se repaître se dédire*  
 would be conceited. [*s'en faire accroire.*]

I shall have become, thou should'st have gone, he may have  
*devenir aller*  
 come back again, we might have gone abroad, you have fallen  
*revenir sortir tomber*  
 down, they had come. [*venir.*]

I do resign, thou art struggling, he is interrupting, we do  
*se démettre se débattre interrompre*  
 undertake, you pursue, they do outlive.  
*entreprendre poursuivre survivre.*

I did believe, thou wast drinking again, he was milking,  
*croire reboire traire*  
 we did displease, you were moving, they were prevailing.  
*déplaire mouvoir prévaloir.*

I would, thou provid'st, he knew, we sat down again, you  
*vouloir pouvoir savoir se rasseoir*  
 put on, they leaped for joy.  
*se revêtir tressaillir de joie.*

I shall cover, thou wilt be dying, he will shun, we shall  
*couvrir se mourir fuir*  
 fall asleep, you will hate, they will run away.  
*s'endormir haïr s'enfuir.*

I would collect, thou would'st fall under, he would send for  
*recueillir encourir envoyer querir*  
 we would boil again, you would conquer, they would run to.  
*rebouillir conquérir accourir.*

I had disagreed, thou shalt have come again, he would have  
*disconvenir revenir*  
 happened, we may have gone, you might have run to, they  
*survenir aller accourir*  
 have attained to. [*parvenir.*]



---

# FRENCH EXERCISES.

## PART II.

---

### CHAP. I.

#### *Upon the ARTICLE.*

I. **N**OT only nouns, that have the article in English; require the article in French, as *the* fate of Spain, *le* sort de l'Espagne, but also things spoken of that have no article in English, as names of arts, sciences, metals, virtues and vices, thole of countries, kingdoms and provinces, mountains, rivers, winds and the like, as gold and silver, *l'* or *de l'* argent, &c.

II. When the words, attending the names of countries and kingdoms, respect them immediately, as to coming from or going out, the names of those countries are used without the article, therefore we say with the preposition *de* only, *venir de* France, *sortir d'* Angleterre, and not *sortir de l'* Angleterre, *venir de la* France.

III. With words denoting the place one lives in, and whether one is going to, we use the preposition *en* before the names of those places, without article, as *demeurer en* France; *aller en* Italie, *venir or passer en* Angleterre.

IV. When the names of kingdoms and provinces serve to specify or distinguish a noun, coming immediately before them, in denoting its country, they take the preposition *de* only, without article; as *Roi ou Royaume d'* Angleterre; *vin de* Bourgogne ou *de* Champagne; *l'Elector de* Baviere.

V. From the nouns of countries, kingdoms and provinces, except the few which take their name from their capital city, and some republics.

VI. The.

VI. The impersonal *il faut*, always requires after it either the subjunctive with *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition, as *il faut qu' on fasse son devoir, il faut faire son devoir.*

THE Creator of Heaven and Earth is the God of Christians.

*Creatur. Ciel. & Terre être Dieu Chrétien.*

The fear of death, and the love of life, are natural to men.

*crainte mort & amour vie être naturel homme.*

The horror of vice, & love of virtue, are the delight of the wise.

*horreur vice amour vertu délices sage.*

Give me the bread. Cut the meat. Bring the mustard.

*donner moi pain couper viande apporter moutarde.*

What is agreeable to the taste, is often contrary to health.

*ce qui agréable goût souvent contraire santé.*

The price of silk is extravagant.

*prix soie exorbitant.*

Men ought to shun vice, and stick to virtue.

*homme devoir fuir vice s'attacher vertu.*

The wear of lace is not very ancient.

*usage dentelle (a) fort ancien.*

Italy is the garden of Europe.

*Italie jardin Europe.*

France is separated from Spain by the Pyrenees, and from

*France séparé de Espagne par Pyrénées de*

Italy by the Alps.

*Italie par Alpes.*

Touraine and Anjou are two very fruitful provinces.

*Touraine Anjou deux très fertile province.*

Bretagne is very distant from Provence.

*Bretagne fort éloigné de Provence.*

Euphrates and Tigris join before they enter into the sea.

*Euphrate Tigre se joindre avant que de (b) entrer dans mer.*

Parnassus and Helicon are the two darling mountains of poets.

*Parnasse Helicon deux favori montagne poète.*

Venice is a state of Italy in the middle of the sea.

*Vénise état Italie au milieu mer.*

Geneva is a small republic between France, Switzerland,

*Genève petit république entre France Suisse*

and Savoy. [*Savoie.*]

Genoa is a maritime country, more powerful than Geneva,

*Genès maritime pays plus puissant que Genève*

(a) *not*, is *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after.

(b) This conjunction *de* governs the infinitive.



but not | so much | as Holland.  
*mais non pas tant que Hollande.*

Leghorn, which is a free sea-port, and Florence, belong to  
*Livourne qui libre mer port et Florence appartenir*  
 Tuscany. [*Toscagne.*]

The Kings of France have given Avignon to the Popes..

*Roi de France donner Avignon Pape.*

The Principality of Orange is in that country.

*Principauté Orange ce pays la.*

England is a fine kingdom, where I intend to pass the winter

*Angleterre beau royaume où avoir dessein de passer hiver*  
 at my return from France, and I will go to Italy in the spring.

*à mon retour de France aller Italie au printemps.*

I shall also go to the West-Indies, but I must first go into the  
*aussi aller Indes Occidentales mais faut auparavant à*  
 country, and then to the Palatinate, to take leave of my friends.  
*campagne ensuite Palatinat(a) prendre congé mon ami.*

I come from Italy; I have passed through France, where I  
*venir passer par où*

have drank Champaign wine & Burgundy. I hope to go | the  
*boire Champagne vin Bourgogne espérer(b) aller*

next year | to the East Indies, to China, the Empire of the  
*l'année qui vient Indes Orientales Chine (French, to the Mogul)*  
 Mogul, and Japan. Then from thence I'll go to Mexico, to  
*Mogol Japan. puis de là Mexique*

Virginia and Jamaica. Afterwards I shall return to England.  
*Virginie Jamaïque ensuite revenir Angleterre.*

VII. The noun of the measure, weight and number of the  
 things that have been bought, requires the article: as un écu  
*le boisseau, six sous la livre, quatre sous la douzaine.*

VIII. The simple comparative *plus* and *moins* meeting with  
 a number, are followed by the preposition *de*: as moins de dix  
 ans, plus de vingt ans, and never plus *que* vingt ans; therefore  
 the preposition *above* or *under* before a noun of number must  
 always be rendered into French by *plus de*, *moins de*.

Wheat is sold for a crown a bushel.

*blé se vendre écu boisseau.*

Lace has been sold for fifteen shillings an ell.

*dentelle se vendre chelin aune.*

These faggots | are worth | five pounds an hundred.

*ce fagot valoir cinq livre cent.*

(a) (b) *to*, is not expressed.

Butter sells for six-pence a pound.

*beurre se vendre six sou livre.*

Eggs have been sold for twenty livres an hundred; 'tis four

*oeuf valoir vingt livre cent c'est*

shillings (*Fr.* eight and forty pence) a dozen.

*huit quarante sou douzaine.*

Wine sold yesterday for forty crowns an hogthead; 'tis more

*vin se vendre hier quarante sou muids c'est plus*

than a groat a bottle.

*quatre sous bouteille.*

IX. When the noun is not taken in an universal sense, including the whole species, nor in particular, denoting one particular individual of the species, but denotes only part of the substance signified by the noun, that limited sense is expressed by the particle *de* before the article, or with it contracted, if the noun is masculine; and nouns taken in that sense imply the word *some*, expressed or understood: as *Donnez moi de la viande, de l'Argent, du pain.*

X. When the verb governs a pronoun personal, it must come between the subject and the verb; as *je le vois, vous me donnez*, and not *je vois lui* or *le; vous donnez à moi.*

XI. The particle *un* or *une* is used in speaking of things that can be told by one, or are denoted by opposition to two or more.

Guinea produces pepper, cotton, honey, wax, ambergris.

*Guinée produire poivre coton miel cire ambregris.*

Thessalia produces fine fruit, as wine, oranges, lemons,

*Thessalie produire beau fruit comme vin orange citron*

olives: Olympus, Pindus, Parnassus, and Helicon, famous

*olive Olimpe Pinde Parnasse Helicon célèbre*

mountains among poets, are in that country.

*montagne parmi poète dans ce pays là.*

Doctors have approved his work. He has good friends.

*Docteur approuver son ouvrage avoir bon ami.*

Good small beer, or mere water, is better than bad wine.

*bon petit bière ou pur eau meilleur que mauvais vin.*

Learned people are of that opinion.

*habile gens opinion.*

These plums are like nuts, and these apples like oranges.

*prune ressembler (a) noix pomme orange.*

(a) *Ressembler* governs the third state of the noun.



Let us have charity for our neighbours.

*avoir charité pour prochain.*

I ask for red wine, and you give me white wine that is like  
*demander rouge vin donner blanc vin qui ressembler*  
 water. They are sweet girls.

*eau ce charmant fille.*

A learned man is often confounded with an ignorant one.

*savant souvent confondu avec ignorant.*

I speak of an officer whom you know.

*parler officier que connoître.*

She applies herself to a man who has no probity.

*s'adresser homme qui (a) probité.*

A man of sense may be | in love | like a madman, but never

*homme sens pouvoir amoureux comme fou mais jamais*  
 like a fool. [*sot.*]

A great mind in the body of a handsome woman is a wonder  
*grand esprit dans corps beau femme merveille*  
 of nature. [*nature.*]

A handsome woman who has no fortune, is in great danger

*qui (b) bien dans grand danger*  
 when she is exposed to the solicitations of a rich man who  
*quand exposé sollicitation riche qui*  
 makes vast offers to her.

*faire grand offre.*

XII. The pronouns *moi, toi, soi, ce, celui, quel* (taken in the sense of *what*) *mon, ton, son, &c.* but not *mien, tien, sien, même* and *quel*, in the sense of *which* take no article; but only the preposition *de, à, &c.* as *De qui parlez vous? De quel homme parle-t-on? à qui parle-t-elle? Du quel? De lui, D'elle?*

XIII. No article is used with most proper names of persons, places, planets, except *la terre, le soleil, la lune, &c.* and before nouns of honour, which use has prefixed to proper names, such as *Monsieur, Madame, Messire, Saint, &c.* When these nouns are used without the compound pronoun, they take the article: as *le sieur, la dame*, but never *la madame, &c.* though we say, *Les Messieurs qui sont ici.*

XIV. Proper names take the article, when they are used in a determinate sense, viz. when they are applied to particular objects, or qualified by an adjective: as *Le bon Dieu, Le Dieu des Chrétiens, le Jupiter de Phidias, l'Archimède d'Angleterre, les Cice-*

(a) The Preposition *de* is used after *point, &c.*

(b) *no*, is *ne* before the verb, and *point* after.

*rons les Démonsthenes, le Tasse. La Camargo est une bonne danseuse.* Mrs. Camargo is a good dancer; *Je ne veux plus voir le Du Pré,* I will see Du Pré's wife no more: the article is used in the two latter sentences out of contempt or familiarity.

XV. The preposition *de* only, without the article, is used, 1<sup>st</sup>. before nouns following one of these, *sorte, espece, genre*; and any other noun of which they express the *kind, character, cause, matter, quality* and *country*: which sort of nouns are usually Englished by an adjective, or even by the noun itself, placed adjectively, and making together, as it were, but a word compound: as *un mal de tête*, an head-ach, *une sorte de fruit*, *une montre d'or*, *une conduite de fou*, &c. 2<sup>dly</sup>. After these words of quantity, *viz. assez, abondance, autant, beaucoup, disette, combien, plus, moins, peu*, &c. but if *Bien* is used for *beaucoup*, it requires the article: as, *Bien de la peine, beaucoup de peine*, much pains.

Jupiter, Neptune, and Pluto, are the sons of Saturn.

*Jupiter Neptune Pluton fils Saturne.*

London is not so populous as Paris.

*Londres(a) si peuple que Paris.*

May and September are the two finest months in the year in

*May Septembre deux plus beau mois de année*

France. [*France.*]

Come Friday or Saturday the twelfth of January.

*venir Vendredi ou Samedi douze Janvier.*

The Jupiter of Phidias and the Venus of Praxiteles were

*Jupiter Phidias Venus Praxitele*

master-pieces of statuary.

*chef d'oeuvre sculpture.*

Mercury carried Juno, Pallas, and Venus, to the shepherd

*Mercury mener Junon Pallas Venus berger*

Paris, who gave the apple to Venus.

*Paris qui donner pomme Venus.*

The Queen of Hungary had the assistance of England,

*Reine Hongrie avoir assistance Angleterre*

Holland, and the King of Sardinia.

*Hollande Roi Sardaigne.*

Man is subject to all sorts of infirmities.

*Homme sujet toute infirmité.*

He has a silver watch with a silk ribbon.

*argent montre avec soie ruban.*

(a) *not*, is *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after.



It is an act of Parliament to which he must submit, though  
*c'est acte parlement au quel (a) se soumettre quoique*  
 a King's son.

*Roi fils.*

The Thames, is a fine river in England, but it is not com-  
*Tamise beau rivière mais ne pas com-*  
 parable to the Seine.  
*parable Seine.*

The English cannot manufacture their superfine cloths  
*Anglois ne sauroient manufacturer leur fin drap*  
 without Spanish wool.  
*sans Espagne laine.*

That country has rich mines of gold and silver, diamonds, ru-  
*pays riche mine or argent diamant*  
 bies, emeralds, sapphires, and other precious stones. | There are  
*rubi émeraude saphir autre précieux pierre il y a*  
 also pearl fisheries on several sea coasts.  
*aussi perle pêche sur différent mer côte.*

I have no money, and very few friends.

(b) *argent très peu ami.*

Give him but little wine and much water.

*donner (c) guère vin beaucoup eau*

He will make no more books. He has | too many | enemies.

*faire (d) plus livre trop ennemi.*

You speak to I don't know | how many | people together.

*parler (e) savoir combien gens à la fois.*

I have seen nothing more fine.

*voir rien (f) plus beau*

So many diamonds have cost | a great deal | of money.

*tant diamant coûter beaucoup argent.*

He has | as much | care as industry.

*autant soin que industrie.*

### More Exercises upon the Article.

XVI. When two or more substantives come together, without a comma between them, they all govern each the next in the genitive, the first governing the second, the second the third in the same case, and so on: (that is, the first is always follow-

(a) Il faut que with the subjunctive.

(b) *no*, is *ne* before the verb, and *point* after.

(c) *but*, is here *ne* before the verb, without *pas* or *point* after.

(d) *no*, is only *ne* before the verb, without *pas* or *point* after.

(e) *not*, is here *ne* before the verb only, without *pas* or *point* after.

(f) *Rien* requires *ne* before the verb, without *pas* or *point* after.

ed by the preposition *de*, either alone, or with the article contracted, before the next noun;) but that case can never come in French before the noun that governs it, as in *English*, but only after it: as *Les gardes du Roi*, the King's guards; *voilà la maison de l'associé du frère de ma femme*, here's my wife's brother's partner's house.

XVII. Sometimes *of* is left out in *English*, and the latter substantive, instead of the preposition, is put first, and ends in *'s*; as in the example, *my wife's brother's partner's house*, instead of *the house of the partner of the brother of my wife*; sometimes also the two substantives come together without *of* before the latter, or *'s* after the former, and like a compound word; as, *the chamber-door*; but the first of them is governed of the second, which must always come first in *French*, with one of these particles, *de, du, des*, before the governed; as in the said instances.

XVIII. The article and adnoun agree with the noun in gender and number: as *un beau prince, une belle princesse*, nevertheless *Lettres royales*, is said (a law term) instead of *Lettres patentes* or *Patentes du Roi*, Letters patent, used on all other occasions.

Socrates's wisdom, Ulysses's cunning, and Achilles's valour:  
*Socrate sagesse Ulysse ruse Achille valeur*  
 are famous in Poet's works, and Historian's writings.

*célèbre dans poète ouvrage historien écrit.*

Diana's anger was Acteon's death, and Helen's beauty was  
*Diane colère Actéon mort Hélène beauté*  
 Troy's destruction.  
*Troye ruine.*

The silver tankard is in the hall-window, or on the  
*argent pot sur vestibule fenêtre ou sur*  
 parlour table.  
*salon table.*

Let us prefer honour to interest.  
*préférer honneur intérêt.*

The King has made presents to all the general officers of  
*Roi faire présent tout général officier*  
 the army. [*armée.*]

He gives, | every week | to the poor, bread, wine, meat,  
*donne toutes les semaines pauvre pain vin viande*  
 good beer, and clothes.  
*bon bière habit.*

He will be a doctor | in a little while. |  
*docteur dans peu.*



I have bought a sword, cane, silk stockings, and handkerchiefs.

*acheter épée cane soie bas mouchoir.*

The eclipse of the sun appears to some good people a bad omen. *[préage de malheurs.]*

Great events and revolutions followed the death of Cæsar. *événement révolution suivre mort Cæsar.*

Very wise people are sometimes duped by fools.

*très habile gens quelquefois dupé par sot.*

Every body admires the uncommon and charming flowers of your garden. *[jardin.]*

Both the old and new regiments have done wonders.

*(b) vieil nouveau régiment faire merveille.*

The wise Solomon lost his reason, and David his probity.

*sage Solomon perdra (c) raison David (c) probité*

| as soon as | they abandoned themselves to love.

*dès que se livrer amour.*

The King of England has sent good troops to Flanders to

*Roi Angleterre envoyer bon troupe Flandre*

the assistance of the Queen of Hungary.

*secours Reine Hongrie.*

I know virtuosos that have cabinets of choice medals.

*connoître curieux qui cabinet choisi médaille.*

He is | too much | addicted to wine and women.

*trop adonné vin femme.*

White and black are opposite colours.

*blanc noir opposé couleur.*

Take whatever is good, and leave what is bad.

*prendre tout ce que il y a bon laisser ce que il y a mauvais.*

Take notice | of what | you shall find obscure, and any thing material that has escaped his observation.

*ce qui a pu lui échapper d'important.*

I have seen | none but | her agreeable.

*voir (d) aimable.*

The fifth King of Rome was Tarquinius Priscus, the son of

*cinquième Roi Rome Tarquin ancien fils*

Demetrius, a Corinthian: He came to Rome from Tarquinia,

*Démétrate Corinthien venir de Tarquinie*

(a) *Cens*, is masculine before its adjective, and feminine coming after.

(b) *both*, is not expressed in this place in French.

(c) *Son*, *sa*, *ses*.

(d) *none but*, is *ne* before the verb, and *que* after.

a town.

a town of Etruria, from whence he was called Tarquinius.  
*ville Etrurie de où appelé Tarquin.*

Shame is a mixture of the grief and fear which infamy causes.  
*honte mélange chagrin crainte que infamie cause.*

Jealousy is a confused mixture of love, hatred, fear, and  
*Jalousie confus mélange amour haine crainte*  
 despair. [*désespoir.*]

Your brothers are arrived from the Indies. They have  
*frère arrivé de Indes.*

brought pearls, diamonds, and a great many other rich goods,  
*apporter perle diamant quantité autre riche marchandise*  
 in oak chests upon horses and camels.

*dans chêne caisse sur cheval chameau.*

Clemency, wisdom, and courage, are finer ornaments in a  
*Clémence, f. sagesse, f. valour, f. beau ornement, m. dans*  
 Prince than the jewels | with which | he is covered.

*Prince, m. que pierreries, f. dont couvert.*

Poverty, continual illness, and the other misfortunes of  
*pauvreté, f. continuel maladie, f. autre malheur, m.*  
 life that | are of a long continuance, | make men miserable.  
*vie, f. qui (a) rendre misérable.*

It would be the antipodes of reason not to acknowledge  
*Il faudroit antipode (b) raison f. (c) pour confesser*  
 that Paris is the general office of wonders, the center of good  
*que Paris grand bureau, m. merveille, f. centre, m. bon*  
 taste, wit, and gallantry.  
*gout, m. bel esprit, m. galanterie, f.*

The Portuguese send | every year | a fleet to Brasil to bring  
*Portuguais envoyer tous les ans flotte, f. Bresil pour, m. apporter*

gold, amber, saffron, cotton, tobacco, jasper, crystal, buck-  
*or ambre saffran, m. coton, m. tabac, m. jaspe, m. crystal, m. daim*  
 skins, apes, and parrots, but particularly a great quantity of  
*peau singe perroquet, mais particulièrement grand quantité, f.*  
 sugar, and Brasil-wood, bezoar, indigo, ginger, cinnamon,  
*sucre Bresil bois bezoart indigo gingembre cannelle*  
 pepper, salt-petre, and many other things.

*poivre salpêtre plusieurs autre chose.*

History, Geography, and Mathematics, are necessary sciences.  
*Histoire, f. Géographie, f. Mathématiques nécessaire science.*

William the third, King of England, and Prince of Orange,  
*Guillaume (d) Roi Angleterre Prince Orange*

(a) Turn, have long series; long, is *longue*, and series *suite*.

(b) This word must be in the singular in French.

(c) not, is *ne pas* after *pour*, before the next verb.

(d) the, is not expressed in the French.



had married the Princess Mary, daughter to James the second,  
*épouser princesse, f. Marie fille Jacques*  
 and | grand-daughter | of Charles the first.

*petite fille Charles.*

Lewis the Great, son to Lewis the Just, had Henry the  
*Louis Grand fils Louis juste Henri*  
 Great for his | grand-father.

*pour (a) ayeul.*

There are civil people, and handsome women in England.  
*il y a civil gens beau femme, f. Angleterres*

He was formerly a Grocer, now he is a Merchant.

*autrefois Epicier à présent (b) Marchand.*

Baron Goerts was seized immediately upon Charles's death,  
*Baron Goerts arrêté immédiatement après Charles mort, f.*  
 and, condemned by the senate of Stockholm | to be beheaded; |

*condamné par sénat, m. Stockholm à avoir la tête tranchée*  
 an instance rather of revenge than justice, and a cruel insult on  
*exemple, m. (c) vengeance que justice cruel affront, m. à*  
 the memory of a King whom Sweden yet admires.

*mémoire, f. Roi, m. que Suède, f. encore admirer.*

Participles in *ing*, substantively used, are rendered in French  
 by the infinitive, likewise used substantively, or by a substantive.

Gaming is the ruin of young people.

*jeu, m. ruine, f. jeune gens.*

Drinking, eating, and sleeping, are necessities essential to man.  
*boire, m. manger, m. dormir, m. nécessité, f. essentiel homme.*

## CHAP. II.

### Upon PRONOUNS.

I. **T**HE pronouns conjunctive, *il, elle*, and *ils, elles*, are used  
 with respect to irrational and inanimate creatures: as  
 speaking of an horse, *il boite*, he is lame; *elles ne pondent plus*,  
 they lay no eggs, speaking of hens; of an apple, *elle n'est pas*  
*mûre*, it is not ripe.

(a) *his*, is left out in French; in this place,

(b) *a*, is not expressed in the French.

(c) *rather*, is *peut-être*, *encore plus*.

II. When

I<sup>st</sup>. When the verb governs one pronoun personal only, the pronoun must be conjunctive, and come between the subject and the verb; as *Je le vois*, I see him; *vous lui parlez*, you speak to him, or to her; and not *Je vois lui*, or *le*; *Je parle à lui*, or *à elle*.

Except, 1<sup>st</sup>. When the verb is at the imperative, without a negation, for then the pronoun comes last; and if it be of the first or second person, and in the dative, the disjunctives *moi* and *toi* are used, instead of the conjunctives *me* and *te*; as *dites-moi*, and not *dites-me*; though we say with the two pronouns, *donnez m' en*.

But if two imperatives come together, with a conjunction copulative, the latter will generally have the pronoun come before it: as *voyez la et la consolez*.

2<sup>dly</sup>. With the verbs *être* (signifying *belonging*) *avoir*, *penser*, *fonger*, *viser*, (respecting a person and not a thing) *aller*, *venir*, *courir*, *accourir*, *boire*, as likewise with reciprocal verbs, the pronoun in the dative governed must be a disjunctive, and come after them: as *Ce livre est à moi*, and not *m' est*, that book is mine, or belongs to me; *vous en avez un à lui*, and not *vous lui en avez un*, you have one of his; *Je pense à vous*, I am thinking of you.

3<sup>dly</sup>. When the verb governs two pronouns in the dative, or third state, so that they are used as by opposition; as likewise, when it rather denotes the order in which a thing must be done, the two pronouns must be disjunctive, and come after the verb: as *Je parle à lui et non à vous*, *c'est à lui que je parle*, et non pas à vous, I speak to him, and not to you.

III. *Ne*, and *pas* or *point*, are particles answering the English negative *not*. The French put *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, if the tense be simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it be compound. *Ne* must always come immediately after the word that expresses the subject, either a noun or pronoun conjunctive; as *Je ne parle pas*, *L'homme n'est pas venu*.

Except, 1<sup>st</sup>. When the verb is at the second person of the imperative; in which case *ne*, that always comes before the verb, comes then besides before the pronoun, if the verb be reciprocal; but *pas* always follows the verb; as *Ne vous fâchez pas*: *Ne faites pas cela*.

2<sup>dly</sup>. In sentences of interrogation: as *Ne fais je pas?* &c.

3<sup>dly</sup>. On such occasions when the pronouns conjunctive governing



verning the verb come after it : as *aussi ne pretend-il pas cela* ?  
Neither does he pretend to that.

Look at the fine pink. It smells charmingly. Gather it.  
*regarder* (a) *beau oeillet*, m. *sentir* bien bon *cueillir*.

Let me smell it. Pick also a rose.  
*sentir* *cueillir aussi rose*, f.

I do not love roses. They have too strong a smell. They  
*aimer rose* *trop fort* - *odeur*, f.  
make my head ach. [*entêter*] (b)

The vine is fine; it will yield a great deal of grapes.  
*vigne*, f. *rappporter* *beaucoup raisin*.

Ambition is a noble passion; but it causes oftentimes a great  
*ambition*, f. *noble passion*, f. *mais causer souvent* *bien*  
many mischiefs. [*mal*]

Look at that tree. It is well blossomed, and yet it produces  
*regarder* (a) *arbre*, m. *bien fleur* *cependant produire*  
no fruit. I will cut it down, if it yields no fruit this year. These  
*fruit*, m. - *couper* *se donner* *année*, f.

two trees are dead, 'tis the moss that has killed them. You see  
*deux arbre* *mort* *mousse*, f. *qui faire mourir* *voir*  
that it stops the pores of the trees.  
*que* *bouche* *porc*, m. *arbre*, m.

Let us go into the | poultry yard: | it is open. We have a dozen  
*entrer dans* *basse cour*, f. *ouvert* *avoir douzaine*, f.  
of hens. They lay eggs | every day, | but they won't | sit upon  
*poule*, f. *pondre oeuf* *tous les jours*, *mais* (c) *couver*  
| them. See them, they are fine, but they | are good for nothing.  
*voir* *beau*, *mais* *ne valoir rien*.

The cow is old: she gives no more milk. We will sell her  
*vache*, f. *vieux* *donner plus lait* *vend ce*  
the next week.  
*prochain semaine*, f.

We tell him the truth, and he won't believe us.  
*dire* *vérité*, f. (c) *croire*.

Few people are wise enough to prefer the blame that is useful  
*peu gens* *sage assez pour préférer* *blame*, m. *qui utile*  
to them, to the praise that betrays them.  
*louange*, f. *trahir*.

(a) *regarder*, is here a verb active, attended by a noun without any preposition.

(b) This verb must be attended by a pronoun pers, of the 1st pers. instead of a noun.

(c) *won't* stands for *will not*, *will* is *vouloir*.

She loves me, and yet I am unhappy with her.

*aimer cependant malheureux avec.*

I have had the honour to see him, and to speak to him.

*honneur le voir de parler.*

If you come | to morrow | to see me, I will give you what I

*si venir demain voir donner. ce que*

have promised you. [*promettre.*]

They come to us, and we did not think of them.

*venir penser à*

What she was saying yesterday was directed to you. I know

*ce que dire hier s'adresser savoir*

it well, but I had my reasons to let her speak. I spoke to her

*bien mais raisons pour laisser dire parler*

afterwards, and shewed her how | she is in the wrong. | She

*ensuite faire voir comment avoir tort*

has wrote to you this morning.

*écrire matin, m.*

Your mother speaks to you, and not to your sister, therefore

*mere parler non pas soeur c'est pourquoi*

answer her. I think that she speaks to my sister, | as well as |

*répondre croire que parler soeur aussi bien que*

to me. Let her answer first, and I will speak after her. Don't

*répondre premier parler après (a)*

you know that my sister is always quicker to find reasons than I.

*savoir que soeur, f. toujours plus prompt à trouver raison que.*

Don't answer her then, and you will anger her. Believe me,

*(a) répondre donc fâcher croire*

go and speak to her, but first shew me that book.

*aller (b) parler mais auparavant montrer livre, m.*

Let him go, and forgive him for this time; if he ever does

*laisser aller pardonner (c) pour fois, f. si jamais faire*

the least fault, I will pray for him no more.

*moindre faute, f. prier pour plus.*

Reason the case with him, and do not scold him. Go

*parler raison à gronder aller*

and see him; or write to him.

*(b) voir ou écrire.*

Take them, or leave them.

*prendre ou laisser.*

Undress the children, and | put them to bed. |

*deshabiller enfant coucher.*

(a) don't, stands for do not.

(b) and, is not expressed here in French.

(c) pardonner, governs the third state.



'Tis he who has done it. 'Tis they have seen it.

*c'est faire voir.*

The two brothers and the cousin have committed the murder :  
*deux frères cousin commettre meurtre, m.*  
 they have tied the man, and he has | knocked him on the head. |  
*lier assommer*

III. When a verb is attended by two conjunctive pronouns, viz. one in the accusative, and the other in the dative, the conjunctive in the dative must come before that in the accusative; as *Je vous le dis*, I tell it you; *On me la donne*, it is given me; except only when the pronoun in the dative is of the third person, as *lui* or *leur*, or when the verb is in the imperative: for then the conjunctive in the accusative must come before that of the dative: as *Vous le lui dites*, you tell it him or her; *Il la leur refuse*. *Donnez-le-moi, il me le donne*.

IV. *Y* and *en* come after the other pronouns, and immediately before the verb; as *Je vous les y enverrai*, *Je ne vous en parle pas*.

V. When *y* and *en* meet together, *y* comes before *en*: as *Je vous y en enverrai*, *Je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir*, I will remit you none there, speaking of money.

VI. When the verb is in the second person, and first person plural of the imperative, without a negative, the conjunctive pronouns, governed of the verb, come after it; but in the same order as when they come before it in the third persons, *Qu'ils le fassent*: as *Donnez-lui en, fions-nous-y, menez-les-y, menez l'y, menez-nous y*. But with a pronoun of the first person singular, instead of saying after the same manner *menez-moi y*, we say *Menez-y-moi, envoyez-y-moi*, and never *menez-moi y*, nor *menez m'y*, &c. with the negative we say *Ne m'y menez pas, Ne nous y menez pas*.

VII. The pronouns conjunctive, whether governing, or governed of the verb, that is, whether its subject or object are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not.

1. These conjunctives, *Je, tu, nous, vous*, are repeated before each verb, when the verbs are in different tenses: as *Je dis, & je dirai toujours, Nous avons parlé, & Nous parlerons encore*. But when the tenses are the same, they need not be repeated: as *Je pense & dis qu'il se bien* or *Je pense & je dis qu'il, &c. Nous l'avons vu & touché*.

The pronouns of the third person, *il, elle, ils, elles*, need not be repeated in common conversation, though the tenses

tenses vary: as *il n'a jamais rien valu, & ne vaudra jamais rien, &c.*

2dly. All conjunctives are repeated, when in the same sentence one passes from the affirmative to the negative, and so reciprocally: as likewise when the second verb is preceded by one of these conjunctions *mais, but, même, even, cependant, yet, néanmoins, nevertheless, ainsi, so, aussi, therefore, ou, or, and que* (standing for a conjunction): as *il aime, & il ne veut pas en convenir, il le dit, mais il ne le pense pas, Elle n'en croit rien, & cependant elle ne veut pas l'épouser, il le fait & même, il s'en vante ou aussi il en convient, Nous le trouverons, ou nous ne le trouverons pas, Lorsque vous ferez votre devoir, & que vous vous comporterez bien.*

3dly. All conjunctives governed, are repeated before their verbs: as *il me prie, & me conjure, je vous dis, & vous déclare.* Except when the second verb is of the same signification, and composed of the first, or denotes only repetition of its action: as *il ne fait que nous dire & redire la même chose, Elle le fait & défait, or refait quand bon lui semble.*

VIII. *Le, en, y,* are chiefly used instead of the pronouns *lui, elle, eux,* which cannot always be said of irrational creatures, and relate to the person, thing, or place spoken of. *Le* is rendered into English by *it, or so,* or a whole sentence expressed or understood: *en* by *some, any; of him, of her, of it, of them; for him, for her, for it, for them; with him, with her, with it, with them; about him, about her, it, them; thence, from thence,* or a whole sentence: and *y,* by the same pronouns personal with other prepositions, as will appear in these following examples: *Vous êtes le maître, & moi je ne le suis pas; le* stands for *le maître,* and is declinable, because it relates to a noun, otherwise it is as indeclinable as *en* and *y.*

*Newton vous plaît, vous en parlez toujours, il prit un bâton & lui en donna un coup, Quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus, Ce sont des folies, ne vous y fiez pas,* so that *le, en, y,* stands for nouns of both genders and numbers.

IX. Whenever something is spoken of, that has been named in the first part of the sentence, or in the question which is answered to, instead of repeating that thing, we use the particle *en,* which supplies and stands for the name of that thing: as after speaking of virtue, *C'en est une grande,* for *C'est une grande vertu,* it is a great virtue; *Si vous voulez voir de beaux tableaux,*



*il en a*; *en* refers also to a place: as *En venez vous?* oui, j'en viens; *En*, is also used through exaggeration; as *Je n'en puis plus*, I am quite spent, and others like.

X. The particle *y* relates to places, persons, and things, considered as a condition, state, disposition, obligation, or necessity under which one is; the subject or matter which one applies one's self to; and an end one aims at: in all which acceptations it is rendered into English by *there*, *thither*, or *within* (when it has a reference to place) or by the pronouns *it* or *they*, with one of these prepositions, *at*, *by*, *for*, *in*, *of*, *to*, *with*: as *C'est une belle charge, il y aspireroit depuis long-tems*, it is a fine place, he aimed at it a great while ago; *il l'a fait, mais il n'y gagnera rien*, he has done it, but he will get nothing by it; *il aime pas sa profession, il n'y est pas propre*, &c.

I dare not tell it you, Birrhia, I pray thee tell it him. I knew  
*oser* (a) *dire* Birrhia (b). *dire* *savoir*  
 it, you had told it me before.

*dire* *auparavant*.

This is | a fine apple: | let us offer it to him.

*voilà* *beau pomme, f.* *offrir*.

It is certain that Chremès don't give his daughter to Pamphile  
*il certain que Chremès* *donner* *fille, f.* *Pamphile*

lus; but because he does not give her to him, | it does not follow  
*mais parce que* *donner* *il ne s'ensuit pas*

| that he will give her to you. [*que.*]

He has not sold it dear to them. Don't you believe it?

*vendre* *cher* *croire*.

Tell him that you are willing to marry Philumena. That

*dire* *que* *vouloir bien(c)* *épouser* *Philumène*

I am willing to marry her? I will never do it. Don't advise

*vouloir bien épouser* *jamaïs faire* *conseiller*

me to it.

They have desired me to buy them lace, and to send it to

*prier* *de acheter* *dentelle, f.* *de envoyer*

them; but I will carry it myself to them.

*mais* *porter*.

He asks me for money. Lend him none, (or do not lend him

*demander* (d) *argent, m.* *prêter*

(a) *not*, is only *ne* before *oser*, without *pas* after.

(b) This is made in French by *I pray thee* of it; *to pray* is *prier*.

(c) *to*, is not expressed here, in French.

(d) *for*, is left out in French.

any) for he will never give it you again.

*car jamais rendre.*

Lend me them, or sell them to me.

*prêter ou vendre*

Let us see the watch. You have promised it me. When

*voir montre, f.*

*promettre*

*quand*

will you give it me? Don't touch it. Will you give it him soon?

*donner*

*toucher (a)*

*bien-tôt*

Don't you know it? When do you expect him?

*savoir*

*quand*

*attendre*

Why don't you do it yourself? Have you fancied it?

*pourquoi*

*faire*

*s'imaginer.*

Has the law forced him to do it?

*loi, f. forcer.*

I say and maintain that he has done it.

*dire soutenir que.*

We beseech and conjure you, by all that is dear to you, to

*supplier*

*conjurér*

*par ce qui*

*cher*

*de*

grant him his pardon.

*accorder*

*grâce, f.*

I desire you to speak to me no more of it.

*prier*

*de parler*

*plus.*

He esteems and honours you.

*estimer*

*honorer.*

I know it and make no doubt of it.

*savoir*

*faire*

*doute*

As long as he will study well, and please his masters, I will

*tant que*

*étudier bien*

*contenter maître*

love him, and will procure him whatever can please him.

*aimer*

*procurer*

*tout ce qui pouvoir faire plaisir.*

He always promises, but never keeps his word.

*toujours (b) promettre mais jamais tenir parole, f.*

We have seen him, and spoken to him.

*voir*

*parler*

They have seen it, and shall see it again.

*voir*

*revoir*

She believes it, and says it without consequence.

*croire*

*dire*

*sans*

*conséquence.*

I do believe, and will always believe that it is so.

*croire*

*toujours*

*que il ainsi.*

You undo it, and do it again without ceasing.

*défaire*

*refaire*

*sans*

*ceffe.*

(a) *toucher*, governs here the pronoun in its third state.

(b) This adverb must come after the verb.



Le, en, y, are used instead of the pronouns personal lui, elle, eux, which, &c. See Pag. 41.

See also the right placing of these pronouns, when they meet with other pronouns. See Pag. 41 and 42.

The supplying pronouns sometimes are not expressed in *English*, as will appear by these following exercises, and especially those upon the irregularities of pronouns personal and possessive. The Teacher must sedulously make the Scholar observe the *Genius* of the two languages, with respect to these pronouns; and how essential it is to express in *French* by them what is understood in *English*. Speech would be too flagging in *English*, were whole sentences repeated in these cases, which are elegantly suppressed, as being sufficiently intelligible by what comes before. But our supplying particles, though they are so puzzling to foreigners, (and most times they think them useless) have quite another beauty in *French*, since they, without weakening the speech with a tedious repetition, express whole sentences in the most significant manner, and conformably to the strictest rules of Grammar; so regular is the *French* language. It is its *Genius* to express the words with such a grammatical connection, that each of them either rules, or is ruled by another. Some instances will make it obvious; *Etes-vous content?* Je ne le suis pas. Are you contented? I am not. *Avez-vous trouvé ce que vous cherchiez?* Je ne l'ai point trouvé. Have you found what you was looking for? I have not, or I haven't. *Ils sont riches, & nous ne le sommes pas*, They are rich, and we are not. *Si vous vous affrèyez dans ce sautoir, prenez garde de vous faire du mal car les bras en sont cassés*, If you sit down in that easy chair, take care not to hurt yourself, for the arms are broke. *Souhaitez-vous des pommes?* Prenez-en une couple; *Vous en pouvez prendre d'avantage*. Will you have some apples? Take a couple; you may take more, &c. The reason why we don't express these sentences as the *English* do, is because, in their language, they are evidently inadequate to the *Ideas* which they are to represent, whatever the *Genius* of the language is. For, *to be* and *to have*, (*I am, I have, or I have not, We are, we are not*) can't make sense of themselves, without another word, which expresses what is affirmed by these two verbs, as *to be rich, wise, &c. to have money, wit, &c.* whereas in *French* *Je le suis, J'en ai*, make a complete sense; and the words are fully adequate to the *Ideas*: *le* and *en*, signifying what you have been speaking of, and will not repeat, are grammatically governed by *être* and *avoir*, as the object of these verbs. It is needless to expatiate here upon more like causes. 'Tis the teacher's business to explain them, when the occasion occurs.

Don't do that: I will do it myself.

*faire* (a) (b)

A truly modest and humble man desires not to seem so, but  
*véritablement modeste humble désirer de paroître mais*

(a) The pronoun demonstrative *cela*.

(b) *moi-même*.

to be so really.

de en effet.

You are quick, and I am not so. [prompt.]

Master Brown is an honest man, speak of him to your friend.

Monsieur Brun honnête parler ami.

I have bought fine apples, will you have any? I will be

acheter beau pomme, t. vouloir (a)

obliged to you, if you give me some. Take | as many as | you

obliger si donner prendre autant que il vous

please, but eat but one | at a time | otherwise they | will make

plaire mais manger (b) un à la fois autrement faire

you sick. [mal.]

I will take but a couple. You may take more. What shall

prendre (b) couple, t. pouvoir d'avantage que

I do with them? You shall give them to your brothers.

faire donner frère

They want to force me to do a thing which is disadvantageous

on veut (c) forcer à chose, t. désavantageux

to me, I will never consent to it.

jamais (d) consentir.

That is | a fine picture, | put a frame to it.

voilà tableau, m. mettre bordure, t.

We toil ourselves less to become happy, than to make

se tourmenter moins pour devenir heureux (e) faire

others believe that we are so.

autre (f) croire que.

Do you know Mr. White? I don't know him, but I have

connoître Monsieur Blanc mais

heard of him, and I should be very glad to get acquainted

avoir parler bien aise de faire connoissance

with him. Pray tell it him. | Be so good as to | tell it him.

avec prier (g) dire avoir la bonté de.

Have you been where I have told you? No, I have not

où dire non

been there yet. Go thither then, and remember to carry

encore aller donc se souvenir de porter

paper there, for I shall have occasion for it. I will also carry

papier, m. car avoir affaire aussi

your books there, your master says that you will want them.

livre m. maître avoir besoin de.

(a) have, is not expressed here, in French.

(b) put, is ne before the verb, and que after.

(c) to, is not expressed here, in French.

(d) n'y, before the verb, without pas.

(e) Que.

(f) others, must come after believe in French, in the 3d state.

(g) Pray, must be made in French by I pray you.



You are Parmenio, and I am not so; if I was, I would accept  
*Parménion* *si* *accepter* (a)

of Darius's offers.

*Darius offre, f.*

Send it me back again | to-morrow. | I will.

*renvoyer* *demain* (b)

When I have wine, I drink some; when I have none,

*quand* *vin, m.* *boire*

I am easy without it. | Go for some, | and bring some.

*se passer aisément de* *aller querir* *apporter.*

They are rich, and we are not. [*riche.*]

Take meat, and eat some.

*prendre viande, f. manger.*

Take it away, and sell it, for I don't know what to do with it.

*emporter* *vendre car* *savoir que* *faire.*

Are you contented, wife? No truly, I am not.

*content femme, f. (c) non vraiment.*

Women have always been deceitful, and will always be so.

*femme, f. toujours trompeur.*

If you promise me not to speak of it, I will tell it you.

*si promettre de parler* *dire,*

I give you my word for it. Tell it me.

*donner parole, f.*

You have bought fine lace, give me some. Buy some, if

*acheter beau dentelle, f.*

you will have any. Send some to them. Don't send them

*vouloir (d) envoyer*

any. Send nothing there.

*nothing, is ne before the verb, and rien after.*

He is used as he deserves,

*traité comme mériter.*

That play is fine. Do you remember it? No, I don't.

*pièce, f. se souvenir (e) (f)*

Have you got good books? Yes, I have several.

*(g) livre, m. oui plusieurs.*

We confess small failings, only to persuade that we have no

*avouer petit défaut, m. (h) pour persuader que*

(a) *accepter*, governs the 1st state

(b) *I will*, must be made in French by repeating the sentence, *I will send it you back again.*

(c) *la.*

(d) *have*, is not expressed in French.

(e) *en.*

(f) This verb governs the 2nd state.

(g) *got*, is not expressed in French.

(h) *only*, is *ne* before the verb, and *que* after.

great ones. [*grand.*]

She tends for me again; shall I return there? Do'st thou  
*rapeller* (governs the 1st state) *retourner*  
 advise me to it?

*conseiller* (1st state.)

Punish them severely for it.

*punir rigoureusement.*

As for wealth he has some; but friends he has none.

*pour bien, f. mais ami, m. manquer 2d state.*

It is not enough to have a fortune. One ought besides  
*il suffire de du bien. on devoir encore*  
 to learn how to spend it, without lavishing it away, or sparing it.  
*apprendre(a) à dépenser sans prodiguer ni épargner.*

If they refuse it me, they will perhaps repent it; but I will  
*refuser peut-être se repentir 2d ft. mais*

ask them no more for it.

*demandeur davantage.*

When our friend desires us to do him | a piece of service |

*quand ami, f. prier de rendre, (b) service, m.*

| we must | do it immediately.

*il faut sur le champ.*

I will take them to Court. Take me there too, for I have

*mener Cour, f. aussi car*

never been there. Have you never been there?

*jamais*

Carry us there. I will carry you thither.

Carry them all there. Has he sent none there?

*tout envoyer.*

Will he carry some thither?

(c)

Will you come to the Park? I come from thence. And I go

*vouloir venir Parc, m. venir.*

*Et moi aller.*

thither. I congratulate you upon it.

*féliciter.*

'Tis a misfortune: Don't think of it any more.

*c'est malheur, m. penser 3d ft. plus.*

That man has cheated me; I will not trust him.

*tromper vouloir se fier 3d ft.*

He looks honest enough: let's trust him until he has cheated us.

*paraître honnête homme assez se fier jusqu'à ce que (d) tromper.*

(A) *how*, is not expressed here, in French.

(b) The pronoun personal comes between the subject and the verb, a piece is left out in French.

(c) *mener*, and not *porter*.

(d) This conjunction governs the subjunctive.

Were





*ma mère, mon père; oui, ma tante, &c.*

IV. Pronouns possessive absolute, coming after a verb with a substantive, are resolved in *French* by a pronoun personal conjunctive in the dative: as, *il lui a coupé la tête*, and not *il a coupé sa tête*; *vous me coupez le doigt*, and never *mon doigt*.

V. These pronouns are left out before nouns, when there comes before a pronoun personal, which sufficiently denotes whose thing it is you speak of; the *French* being then contented with the article: as, *Je lui dois la vie*, and never *ma vie*; *il grince les dents*, and never *ses dents*; the pronouns *je* and *il* specifying enough. But we say *Je vois que ma Jambe s'enfle*, because in saying only *Je vois que la Jambe s'enfle*, the pronoun *je* cannot denote my own leg. Nevertheless, if the pain be habitual, we say *la jambe me fait mal, &c.*

VI. The pronouns possessive absolute must always be repeated in *French*, before every noun, when there are many in the sentence, with which they are grammatically construed: as, *son père et sa mère*, and not *son père et mère*.

VII. The pronouns possessive relative, *le mien, le votre, &c.* are of the same use, and have the same construction as in *English*, being never put before a noun, but relating to a foregoing one: as, *Est ce là votre livre? Oui c'est le mien, non c'est le votre*. But when this pronoun comes after *to be*, signifying *to belong*, it must be resolved in *French* by a pronoun personal disjunctive in the dative: as, *Ce livre est à moi, à lui, or à vous*.

VIII. The substantive in the genitive that comes after *to be*, signifying *to belong*, must be put in the dative: as, *Ce Chapeau est à Monsieur*. Nevertheless the following sentence, viz. *a Friend of mine*, and such like, are thus translated into *French*, *Un de mes amis*, not *un ami des miens*.

My cousin justifies him: therefore his action is not blameable.

*cousin, m. justifier • c'est pourquoi action, f. blâmable*

His friends thought him guilty at first, and his father was angry

*ami, m. croire coupable d'abord père, m. fâché*

with him, tho' his mother was not; but now they acknowledge

*contre quoique mère, f. à présent reconnoître*

his innocence, and have restored him to their esteem.

*innocence, f. • rendre estime, f.*

Your ignorance is great: and your's too.

*ignorance, f. • grand aussi.*

My story is long, his is short; but let's hear your's first.

*histoire, f. long court mais écouter auparavant.*



Mine and thine are the source of all quarrels.  
*source, f. tout quarelle, f.*

His dexterity | will bring it about. |  
*adresse, f. en venir à bout.*

All the baggages are come. Mine, his, and your's, are in a  
*baggage, m. arrivé* (a)

good condition. [*état, m.*]

Our friends have as much interest as your's.

*ami, m. autant crédit, m. que.*

The trees bear their fruits, each in their season.

*arbre, m. porter fruit, m. chacun dans saison.*

Is it your temper or his that always makes a disturbance  
*ce humeur, f. ou sans cesse mettre (b) trouble, m.*

in the family. [*dans ménage, m.*]

That man does not think; his soul is as if depressed under  
*peser ame, f. comme affaissé sous*  
 the weight of his body. His little care and negligence are the  
*poids, m. corps, m. peu soin m. négligente, f.*

only cause of his disgrace. His wife | on the contrary | is a  
*unique cause, f. disgrace, f. femme au contraire*

clever woman: her wit and good-nature make her beloved by  
*charmant femme esprit, m. bon naturel, m. faire aimer de*

| every body. | Her daughters imitate her in that, and follow  
*tout le monde fille imiter en suivre*

her example. His sons are not like him. They also follow  
*exemple, m. fils ressembler aussi suivre*

the example of their mother.

*exemple mère.*

My sword is better than your's, but your hanger is better.

*épée, f. meilleur que mais couteau de chasse, m.*

than mine. 'Tis his advantage and theirs.

*c'est avantage, m.*

Your children and his are more dutiful than ours.

*enfant, m. plus obéissant que.*

He won't meddle with his concerns.

*vouloir se mêler de affaire.*

That is not my business; 'tis his.

*ce affaire, f. c'est.*

Their reasons are bad, therefore he won't admit of their

*raison, f. mauvais c'est pourquoi vouloir recevoir, ist f.*

excuse. I submit my opinion to your's.

*excuse, f. soumettre opinion, f.*

(a) a, is left out in French.

(b) a, is made in French by the article.

I wonder at his audaciousness. | His name is great.

*admirer* *audace, f.* *honte, f. grand.*

We oftener please with our failings than with our good

*plus souvent plaire par* *défaut, m. que par*

qualities. 'Tis her sentiment and mine.

*qualité, f. c'est* *sentiment, m.*

Lovers see the imperfections of their mistresses only when

*amant, m. voir* *défaut, m.* *maîtresse, f. (a) lorsque*

their enchantment is over.

*enchantement, m. fini.*

His house is fine: mine is next to his.

*maison, f.* *à côté de.*

Your notions are comical enough. His thoughts are very

*idée, f. drole* *assez* *pensée, f.* *forte*

common. Their hopes are ill grounded.

*commun* *espérance, f. mal fondé.*

The sea has its flux and reflux.

*mer* *flux, m. reflux, m.*

I have sold my horse. Have you got your's still?

*vendre cheval, m.* *(b)* *encore.*

You impair your health. I take care of mine.

*altérer* *santé, f.* *prendre soin.*

You split my head. He treads upon my foot.

*fendre tête, f.* *marcher sur* *pié, m.*

When your brothers come, I will shew them my library,

*quand* *frère* *venir* *montrer* *bibliothèque, f.*

since they have shewn me theirs. [puisque.]

A cannon ball shot off his arm.

*cannon boulet, m.* *enporter bras, m.*

Jealousy owns love for its father, and fear for its mother.

*Jalousie, f.* *reconnoître amour pour père* *crainte, f.* *pour mère.*

One must strongly resist its assaults.

*Il faut fortement résister,* 3d ft. *attaque.*

Dumb creatures follow their inclination.

*animal, m.* *suivre* *penchant, m.*

The book is mine, not yours.

*ce livre, m.* *non pas.*

He says that that house is his. It will be her's after his death.

*dire que ce maison, f.* *après mort, f.*

Your friends and mine | are against | it.

*ami, m.* *s'opposer* 3d ft.

The coach | ran over | his body.

*carrosse, m.* *passer par dessus corps, m.*

(a) *only*, is *ne* before the verb, and *que* after.

(b) *got*, is left out in French.



That | diamond-ring | is my sister's. Her | sweetheart |  
*bague, f. sœur gallant, m.*

has given it to her. [*donner.*]

Lend me your scissors, sister. I can't, brother.

*prêter ciseaux, m. ne saurois.*

They are not your's, they are my cousin's. [*cousine.*]

'Twas I closed his eyes.

*c'est fermer œil, m.*

I have found | to day | a book of your's among mine.

*trouver aujourd'hui livre, m. parmi.*

A book of mine, you say. It is not mine, (or 'tis none of  
*dire*

mine) it is your friends. I thought that it was your's.

*ami croire que.*

Come, friends, let's fly to glory.

*allais ami voler gloire, f.*

Give me your life. I | beg for | my life

*vie, f. demander*

He does an hundred | extravagant things | above. He has

*faire (a) extravagance, f. là haut*

torn her gloves to kiss her hands. He has broke her fan, be-

*dechirer gant pour baiser main rompre éventail, m.*

cause she hid her face with it. He has bit her fingers ends.

*parce que cacher visage, m. mordre doigt bout, m.*

In short | one would think | her his wife already. (Turn,

*enfin il semble femme, f. déjà.*

it seems that she is; and make the verb *is* by the subj.)

## CHAPTER IV.

### Upon Pronouns RELATIVE.

I. THE Relative *qui* always comes next to the antecedent: as, *Ces gens qui demeuroient chez moi sont partis*, except when the antecedent is a pronoun personal, coming before its verb: as, *Il la trouva qui pleuroit à chaudes larmes*.

II. The Relative *qui* is used only in the nominative and accusative cases, for both genders and numbers, with respect to

all sorts of objects; but in other cases, after a preposition, it is said of personal objects only, or considered as such. When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects, we use the other pronouns *le quel* and *quoi*. Thus we say, *l'homme*, or *la femme* *qui vous a parlé*, *que vous aime*, *de qui il a reçu tant de faveurs à qui il appartient*, *à qui elle appartient*; but in respect of irrational and inanimate creatures, we say *Le Cheval dont*, or *duquel* *je me fers l'opinion à quoi*, or *à la quelle je m'attache*, and not *le Cheval de qui je me fers l'opinion à qui je m'attache*. Yet we say *La Fortune de qui j'attends tout*, *le Ciel de qui j'espère*, because *La fortune* and *Le Ciel* are personified.

III. *Dont* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the second cases of these pronouns, *qui*, *lequel*, *quoi*, except when a question is asked: as, *de qui*, *de quoi parlez-vous?* it always comes before the conjunctives, *Je*, *nous*; *tu*, *vous*; *il*, *ils*; *elle*, *elles*; and it is said both of persons and things: as, *C'est l'homme dont je parle*, *C'est une charge dont il ne se socie pas*, *vous voyez les femmes dont il parloit*. *De qui* is used as well as *dont*, when it denotes from in English: as, *l'homme de qui j'ai reçu une lettre*, the man from whom I have received a letter.

IV. *Dont* must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a subject, either noun or pronoun, and a verb, or by a verb impersonal, followed by another verb: as *le Ciel dont le secours est nécessaire*, *Le Ciel dont il faut implorer le secours*, but not *le Ciel dont sans le secours*, or *sans dont le secours nous ne pouvons réussir*, but thus *Le Ciel sans le secours du quel nous ne pouvons réussir*, because though *dont* has immediately before it (in the first way of expressing the sentence) the noun which it relates to, yet it is not followed immediately by a noun and a verb; and in the other *dont* does not come immediately after the term of it's relation, therefore we use *de qui*, or *du quel*, &c.

V. *Où*, is likewise used instead of the three pronouns relative, *to whom*, *to which*, *to what*; as also when they are governed by any of these prepositions, *at*, *in*, *into*, *with*; it serves for both genders and numbers, and relates to things, denoting time, place, condition, disposition, design, end, and aim; but never to persons: as, *voilà le but où il tend*, *le Siècle où nous vivons*, *une affaire où je ne veux pas entrer*, *les malheurs où il est plongé*, *où* in the first instance stands for *auquel*, in the second for *dans lequel*, in the third for *dans laquelle*, and in the fourth



fourth for *dans les quels*; from *où* are formed the adverbs of place *d'où* from whence, and *par où* through which place.

VI. *Que*, is likewise used instead of *de qui* and *à qui*; so that *que*, besides its being the accusative of *qui*, is also often used for the genitive and dative, for both genders and numbers; whenever there comes immediately before it the genitive or dative of a pronoun personal: as *C'est de vous qu'on parle*, instead of *de qui* ou *dont* on parle: *C'est à vous qu'il s'adresse*, for *à qui* il s'adresse.

VII. *Que*, signifying *that* in English, whether it be a conjunction or relative, is never left out in French, though *that* be in English often: as

*Je crois que vous parlez*, I think you speak, or *that* you speak; *L'homme que vous voyez*, the man you see, or *that*, or *whom* you see; the same *que* is used in a very emphatical manner before a noun terminating a sentence, or a verb, thus: *C'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu*; *C'est une sorte de honte que d'être malheureux*; but the like sentences always begin with the impersonal *c'est*, it is, or *ce* and *que* always must have *de* before the infinitive.

VIII. *Qui* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject: as, *C'est un homme qui est savant, qui dance bien, qui joue bien de plusieurs instrumens, et qui se fait aimer de tout le monde*.

IX. The pronoun *quoi* is also used for both genders and numbers; it is said of things only, and never of persons, and is very conveniently used instead of *lequel*: as, *le plus grand vice à quoi il est sujet*, instead of *auquel il est sujet*; *Ce sont des choses à quoi il faut penser*, instead of *auxquelles il faut*, &c.

I see a man who | cannot stand | upon his legs, and is going  
voir homme ne sauroit se tenir sur jambe, f. aller

to fall. | I love trees that are always green.

(a) tomber aimer arbre, m. toujours verd.

A good housewife, who loves her husband and children,  
bon ménagère, f. aimer mari, m. enfant, m.

keeps herself always clean, and never scolds, is a treasure.

se tenir propre jamais gronder trésor, m.

This is the wife I want.

voilà femme, f. chercher.

The play which they acted did not take.

pièce jouer être goûté.

*to*, is not expressed here, in French.

The

The young man of whom I've spoken to you deserves to be  
*jeune homme, m. parler mériter de*  
 encouraged. [*encouragé.*]

The ladies you want to see are in the country.  
*damè, f. vouloir voir à la campagne.*

I will never forget the favour you have done me.  
*jamais oublier grace, f. faire.*

The dog that has followed you is mine.  
*chien, m. suivre.*

You see the person you have harboured and fed, and to whom  
*personne, f. retirer chez soi nourrir*  
 you have lent | so much | money.  
*prêter tant argent, m.*

I bring you the books you have asked me for, which your  
*apporter livre, m. demander*  
 brother told you of.  
*frère parler.*

The watch you see is a new one. The man who sold it  
*montre, f. voir neuf homme, m. vendre*  
 me is a rogue. [*fripon.*]

Old age is a tyrant that forbids | upon pain of death | all the  
*vieillesse, f. tyran, m. défendre sur peine de la vie*  
 pleasures of youth.  
*plaisir, m. jeunesse, f.*

Have you seen the horse which I used to ride, and for which  
*voir cheval, m. avoir coutume de monter pour*  
 you have offered me a saddle. It is the same of which your  
*offrir selle, f. c'est même*  
 brother was speaking.  
*frère parler.*

The man of whom he complains is an honest man.  
*homme se plaindre honnête.*

He makes me laugh. He says that he is the first who knows  
*faire rire dire que premier savoir*  
 every thing that | comes to pass, | and he is the only one who  
*tout ce qui se passer seul, m. (a)*  
 knows nothing.  
*savoir rien* with *ne* before the verb.

I have seen to-day the lady with whom we dined yesterday.  
*voir aujourd'hui dame avec dîner hier*

Fortune, that has been so propitious to him, and from whom  
*Fortune, f. si propice*

he has received so many favours, is no more kind to him.  
*recevoir tant bienfait, m. plus favorable.*

(a) one, is not expressed in French.



The estate which you have inherited enables you to practise  
*bien, m. hériter mettre en état de pratiquer*  
 generosity. [*générosité, f.*] (a)

I see nothing to which he can apply himself.

*voir rien pouvoir s'appliquer.*

His affairs, which I am entrusted with, (turn, with which I  
*affaire, f. chargé*  
 am entrusted) give me much trouble.  
*donner beaucoup peine, f.*

He won't hear of the misery to which I am reduced.

*vouloir entendre parler misère, f. réduit.*

The condition in which (or wherein) he has found them is  
*état, m. trouver*

deplorable. [*déplorable.*]

Cyrus asked him who that God was whose assistance he begg'd.

*Cyrus demander assistance, f. implorer.*

He has got | at last | the place which he aimed at.

*avoir (b) enfin place, f. aspirer*

I know whose relation she is.

*savoir parente.*

The reason which I rely upon.

*raison, f. se fonder sur.*

He has not read the book to which you have answered.

*lire livre, m. répondre.*

Mr. Smith's sister for whom you have made interest.

*sœur pour (c) solliciter.*

Despair | puts an end | to desires, fears, and cares, which are

*désespoir, m. mettre fin désir crainte, f. souci, m.*

the tyrants of life, and always attend vain hopes.

*tyran vie, f. toujours accompagner vain espérance, f.*

'Tis to her you give it, tho' it is to me you have promised it.

*c'est donner quoique ce (d) promettre.*

'Tis to you I speak.

*c'est parler.*

'Twas from him I expected that favour.

*c'étoit de attendre grace, f.*

The same pride that makes us blame the faults of which we

*même orgueil, m. faire blâmer défaut, m.*

think ourselves free, induces us to condemn the good qualities

*se croire exempt porter à mépriser bon qualité, f.*

which we have not. [*avoir.*]

(a) *hériter*, governs the genitive or 2d state.

(b) *got*, is not expressed in French.

(c) This Relative can have both *Smith* and *sister* for its antecedent.

(d) *Quoique* governs the subjunctive mood.

An observation which my | grand-father | has made, and he  
*observation, f. ayeul, m. faire*  
 communicated to my father, was the cause of a study that last-  
*communiquer pere cause, f. étude, f. dur-*  
 ed all their life, and has made the chief business of mine.  
*ex tout vie, f. principal occupation, f.*

Bring along with you any body you will.

*amener avec vouloir. (a)*

The most illustrious Romans did not leave when they died  
*plus illustre Romain laisser mourir*  
 (turn, in dying) wherewith | to defray the expences | of their  
*faire les frais*  
 funerals. [*funérailles.*]

He told us something. If you ask me what, I will answer you  
*dire quelque chose demander répondre*  
 that 'twas such nonsense | that I knew not what to make of't: |  
*c'étoit un galimatias à quoi je n'ai rien compris*  
 and I don't see in what that discourse can appear fine.  
*voir discours, m. pouvoir paroître beau.*

## CHAP. V.

### Upon Pronouns DEMONSTRATIVE.

I. THE particles demonstrative, *ce, cet, cette, ces*, are mere  
 adjectives: *celui-ci, celle-ci, celle-là, ceux-ci, celles-ci,*  
*ceux-là, celles-là*, are used absolutely without any noun; and  
*celui, celle, ceux, celles*, always require after them a noun in the  
 genitive, or the relative *qui*: as, *Ce tableau, cet ouvrage, cet*  
*homme, cette femme, ces gens, ces filles, celui-ci est meilleur que ce-*  
*lui-là, celles-là et celles-ci, celui qui aime la vertu, celle de Monsieur.*

II. *Ci* and *là*, are sometimes added to the noun that comes  
 after the demonstrative *ce, cet, cette*, in order to specify and par-  
 ticularise it still more; as, *cet homme-ci*, this man; *cette femme-*  
*là*, that woman; *ci* denoting a near or present object, and *là*,  
 a distant or absent one; and *ce* thus followed by a noun at-  
 tended by *ci* or *là*, answer to *this* or *that* before a noun.

III. The pronouns *celui, celle, ceux*, which relate both to per-

*ta* will, must be the future tense in French.

sons



sons and things, being followed by the relative *qui*, are englished by *he who*, or *he that*, *she who*, or *that*, *they who*, or *that*, and *celui* is the subject of one verb, and *qui* that of another; as, *celui qui aime la vertu est heureux*, He who loves virtue is happy, &c.

IV. *He who*, or *he that*, *they who*, or *they that*, (separated in English) are also elegantly rendered into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with the infinitive followed by *que de*, before a second infinitive: as *They know not the value of learning who despise it*, *C'est ne pas connoître le prix de la science que de la mépriser*.

V. The pronouns possessive absolute *his*, *her*, *their*, construed in English with a noun followed by the pronoun relative *who*, or *they* before a verb, is made into French by the genitive of *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, followed by *qui*, and the possessive is left out: as, *all men blame his manners, who often says that which himself does not think*, *Tout le monde blâme les mœurs de ce lui qui dit souvent ce qu'il ne pense pas*.

VI. The pronoun indeterminate *such*, followed by *as* or *that* (but not governed by the verb substantive *to be*) is also rendered into French by *ceux qui*, or *celui qui*: as, *Such as don't love virtue don't know it*, *Ceux qui n'aiment pas le vertu ne la connoissent pas*.

VII. The primitive *ce* coming before *qui*, or *que*, is englished by *that which*, or *what*; these two words making a sort of pronoun, that points and relates to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after: as, *il dit ce qu'il sait*, He says *what* he knows, *c'est ce qui ne sera jamais*, it is *what* will never be.

VIII. When *cequi* or *ceque*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts, is, jointly with the verb, the subject coming before the verb *est* in the second part of the sentence, *ce* must be repeated before *est*, and *est* followed by *de*, if it come before an infinitive, or by *que*, if it be another mood: as, *Ceque je crains c'est, d'être surpris*, and not, *est d'être surpris*, *cequi l'afflige, c'est qu'on le croit coupable*.

IX. *Ce* must not be repeated before *est*, when there comes next an adjective, except when the verb is in the plural: as, *Ceque vous dites est vrai*, *ceque je ne puis souffrir*, *ce sont les infolences et les trahisons*.

I esteem that man. That woman is whimsical.  
estimer homme femme capricieux.

I will

I will take care of those children.

*prendre soin*      *enfant, m.*

He makes love to that girl.

*faire l'amour*      *filles, f.*

Take my horse or that of my son. I'll ride this or that.

*prendre cheval, m.*      *ou*      *fil, m.*      *monter,*

She has eat her orange and that of her sister.

*manger orange, f.*      *sœur, f.*

This hat is not your's: 'tis that of my father.

*chapeau, m.*      *c'est*      *père, m.*

They have sold the goods of your friend, and those of his son.

*vendre marchandise, f.*      *ami, m.*      *fil, m.*

He who cannot keep a secret is incapable of governing.

*savoir garder secret, m.*      *incapable*      *gouverner,*

He that speaks much don't always speak right.

*parler beaucoup*      *toujours*      *juste.*

The opinion of the learned ought to be preferred to that of

*opinion, f.*      *savant devoir (a)*      *préféré*

the ignorant. [*ignorant.*]

What gratifies the senses softens the heart.

*flater*      *sens*      *amollir*      *cœur.*

He that you hate is your friend.

*hair*      *ami, m.*

She that has married M<sup>r</sup>. A. is the prettiest.

*épouse*      *joli (b)*

I know what makes you angry. |

*savoir*      *facher*

An affront is but an imaginary evil to him who suffers it, and

*injure, f. (c)*      *opinion, f. mdl, m. pour*

can only truly offend him who offers it.

*pouvoir (d) véritablement offenser*      *faire.*

That which shines outwardly, is sometimes very little sub-

*briller au dehors*      *quelquefois fort peu so-*

stantial inwardly.

*l'idée*      *au dedans.*

What we most commend is often superficial.

*le plus vanter*      *souvent superficiel.*

The Athenians understand what is good, but the Lacedemo-

*Athénien*      *savoir,*      *honnête mais Lacédémonien*

nians practise it. [*pratiquer.*]

Give to those you love.

*donner*      *aimer.*

(a) *Devoir* has no preposition after it.

(b) Superlative *la plus.*

(c) *but,* is *ne* before the verb, and *que* after.

(d) *only,* is *ne* before the verb, and *que* after



She of whom you speak will come | by and by. |

*parler venir tantôt.*

He to whom you owe money | is starving. |

*devoir argent mourir de faim.*

You love that which I hate, and I hate that which you love.

*aimer haïr.*

They do not always succeed, that take their measures the best.

*toujours réussir prendre mesure, f. le mieux*

Those are mistaken who think that Kings are the happiest.

*se tromper penser Roi, m. heureux.*

What comes swiftly, can go away | after the same manner. |

*venir avec rapidité pouvoir s'en retourner de même.*

Such as seem to be happy are not always so.

*paraître heureux toujours.*

What makes me angry is, that he won't read his rules again.

*fâcher vouloir relire règle, f.*

before he writes his exercise.

*avant que de (a) faire thème, m.*

What grieves him is, that he is not rewarded.

*chagriner récompensé.*

What she fears is that she be discovered.

*craindre découvert.*

What I apprehend from all the accounts that have been

*comprendre par tout relation, f.*

published, is that they have been | soundly | beat.

*publier comme il faut battre.*

What you hear is the truth.

*entendre vérité, f.*

What I ask of you is a reciprocal friendship.

*demandar 3d réciproque amitié, f.*

We always love those that admire us; tho' we do not always

*toujours aimer admirer.*

love those that we admire.

He whom a woman complains of, is | not so often | he that

*se plaindre moins souvent*

is in the wrong | as he that is not liked.

*avoir tort que déplaire.*

I am not acquainted enough with that Minister, to tell him

*connoître assez Ministre, m. pour dire*

what I think concerning the present posture of affairs.

*penfer sur présent état, m. affaire.*

We do not lament the loss of our friends | according to | their

*regretter perte, f. ami selon*

(a) This conjunction governs the infinitive.

merit, but according to our needs, and the opinion which we  
*mérite, m. mais* *besoin, m.* *opinion, f.*  
 think to have given them of what we deserve.  
*croire* *donner* *valoir.*

CHAP. VI.

Upon ASKING QUESTIONS.

I. THE pronouns *qui*, who, whom; *quoi* and *que*, what; *lequel*, *laquelle*, which; and *quel*, are used in asking questions; but *qui* is said of persons, and *quel* of things: as, *Voilà des gens or des sommes qui vous demandent*, answer, *Qui sont-ils? Qui sont-elles?* of things, *J'ai appris de grandes nouvelles, Quelles sont-elles? quelles-sont ces nouvelles?* But *quoi* is never used before a verb, and therefore we don't say *Quoi dites-vous?* but *que dites-vous?*

II. If the subject of the question be a pronoun personal, it comes after the verb, if the tense be simple; or between the auxiliary and participle, if it be compound.

III. If the subject of the question be a noun, or a pronoun indeterminate, the sentence begins with that noun or pronoun; then the verb, if the tense be simple, or the auxiliary if it be compound; and moreover the conjunctive *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, agreeing in gender and number with the subject.

IV. If the verb of the question be reciprocal, it begins with one of the two pronouns, if the subject be expressed by a pronoun; or with a noun and pronoun, if it be expressed by a noun; and the other pronoun comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle, according as the tense is either simple or compound.

V. If the verb of the question end with a vowel, *t* must be added to it between two hyphens (-t-), in order to avoid the hiatus.

VI. The pronouns attending the verb keep the same order in the interrogative form, as in the declarative.

VII. When a question is asked negatively, the particle *ne* comes before the verb, and *pas* after the pronoun, if the tense be



be simple; but if it be compound, *ne* is placed before the auxiliary, and *pas* between the pronoun and participle.

VIII. If the verb of the question be reciprocal, *ne* comes before the first pronoun, and *pas* after the last.

What crime has the man committed?

*crime, m. commettre.*

Has always the wise man virtue for his mobile? Don't he

*sage vertu, f. mobile, m.*

sometimes deviate from it?

*quelquefois s'écarter.*

What can one do in such a case?

*pouvoir faire en tel cas, m.*

What had your daughter done to correct her so severely?

*filie, f. pour corriger si sévèrement.*

Has the man given you change for the guinea? Have you told

*donner monnoye, f. pour guinée, f. compter*

it, and is it right? Is nothing wanting of it? (*to it*)

*juste rien (a) manquer.*

Is the woman come of whom you told me?

*femme, f. venir parler.*

Who would be so bold | as to | attack him?

*assez hardi pour attaquer.*

What shop is that? Whose house is that?

*boutique, f. maison, f. (b)*

It is Mr. Brown's. Is it not very pretty?

*Brun bien joli.*

What man does he ask for? They are two brothers: Which

*demandeur deux frères. [is it?]*

Does that boy mend whom you complained of?

*écolier, m. se corriger se plaindre.*

Tell me which | you will have? | Which you will.

*dire souhaiter (c) vouloir. (d)*

They are two sisters: which shall I write to? To which

*sœur, f. écrire*

| you please. | What do you ask?

*il vous plaira demander.*

'Tis one of them has done it. Which is it?

*c'est un faire.*

(a) *ne* before the verb.

(b) The relative in 3d state.

(c) *have*, is not expressed in French.

(d) *vouloir* must be in the future. But observe, that *that* is grammatically understood before *which*. Therefore don't answer in French with the same pronoun the question is ask'd, but with another relative,

Who is the author of this book? What man has he employed?  
*auteur, m. livre, m. employer.*

To what use shall I put it?  
*usage, m. mettre.*

Has nobody asked for me?  
*personne demander.*

Can any one be sure never to be mistaken?  
*pouvoir quelqu'un sur jamais de se tromper.*

Does nothing appear?  
*rien, m. paroître.*

Dost thou not ask me my opinion? Why then art thou angry  
*demande sentiment, m. pourquoi donc se fâcher*  
 when I tell it thee.  
*quand déclarer.*

Don't you promise them more than you can afford to give?  
*promettre plus que pouvoir(a) (afford is not expressed)*

What stuff have you chosen? What are his reasons? Whom  
*étouffe, f. choisir raison, f.*  
 do you seek for? [*chercher.*]

What have you done with your book? Ha'n't you sold it?  
*faire de livre, m. (b) vendre.*

What book are you speaking of? [*parler.*]

What are men before God? are not all creatures alike  
*homme tout créature, f. semblable*

| with respect to | their Creator?  
*par rapport à Créateur, m.*

Whom can one trust to | now-a-days? |  
*pouvoir on se fier, 3d ft. aujourd'hui.*

Has not your father bid you go thither? Why don't you go  
*père, m. dire(c) aller pourquoi*  
 then?

What passion is he inclined to? Is not he very foolish?  
*passion, f. enclin bien simple.*

What is he speaking of? I speak of one of thy sisters. Of  
*parler sœur, f.*

which do you speak?

I gave her a jewel. To which, pray?  
*bijou, m. je vous prie.*

Here are | all sorts of fruits. | Of which will you eat?  
*voici toute sorte, f. fruit, m. manger.*

What have you resolved to do? What | you please. |  
*résoudre il vous plaira.*

(a) *ne*, must come before this verb in French.

(b) *Ha'n't*, stands for have not.

(c) *dire*, requires *de* before the next verb.



About what does she make | so much noise? |  
*touchant faire tant bruit, m.*

I don't know what she means, nor what is her thought.

*savoir vouloir dire ni pensée, f.*  
 What is your sentiment? 'Tis in what she is mistaken.

*sentiment, m. c'est en se tromper.*  
 They are four sisters; to which do you give the preference?  
*quatre sœur, f. préférence, f.*

Ha'n't you heard of the reports that are spread abroad? No:

*entendre parler bruit, m. courir non*  
 what are they? Have the allies got the victory, or have they  
*allié remporter victoire ou*  
 been beat? [*battre.*]

## CHAP. VII.

### Upon Pronouns INDETERMINATE.

I. *ON* is rendered into *English* several ways. Sometimes by *one*, as *on croiroit*, one would think; sometimes by the pronoun of the third pers. plur. *they*, or that of the first, *we*; as *on dit*, they say; *on apprend*, we hear; sometimes also by these indeterminate words *people, men, a body, &c.* as, *on s'imagine*, people or men think; but *on* is more generally and better englished by converting the verb from the active voice into the passive; as, *on croit*, it is thought.

II. In order therefore to put into *English* a sentence with the particle *on*, if the *French* verb govern no noun, or be followed by *que*, you need only english *on* by *it*, and change the active state of the verb into the passive, thus, *on croit*, it is thought: *on avoit dit que*, it had been reported that, &c.— Sometimes the *English* pronoun is left out: *comme on a déjà dit*, as has been said already; whereas it is necessarily understood.

III. If the *French* verb governed of *on* be a verb active, attended by a noun or pronoun as its object, that noun or pronoun must be made the subject of the verb in *English*, and the verb active changed into the passive state, and put in the same tense as in *French*; as, *on tint hier un conseil à Whitehall*.

IV. If the verb governed of *on* be not immediately followed by a noun or pronoun, but by another verb in the infinitive, then

it

it is the noun or pronoun of the object of the second verb, that must be made the subject in *English*, and the second verb active changed into the passive state: *on étoit tenir aujourd'hui un conseil à Whitehall.*

V. *L'on* is the same pronoun as *on*; but observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, that *on* is generally used in the beginning of a sentence; 2<sup>dly</sup>, that it is used in the middle of a sentence after a word ending with a consonant, or an *e* not sounded: as, *celui dont on parle*; *Quand il parle on écoute avec attention.*

On the other hand, *l'on* is used, 1<sup>st</sup>, after all words ending with a vowel except *e* is not sounded, and the conjunction *si*; 2<sup>dly</sup>, after *et* and the particle *ou*, as likewise other words ending in *ou*.

VI. When that pronoun comes after *que*, one must consider the other words that make up the sentence: for whenever the word coming before *que*, ends also in *que*, or there are already, or will be too many *que*'s in the sentence, one must then make use of *qu'on*, and not *que l'on*.

VII. For the same reason we use *que l'on* and not *qu'on* immediately before verbs beginning with *com* or *con*.

VIII. *On* must always be repeated in the sentence before every verb of which it is the subject, and must continue the same without any variation, and notwithstanding the afore-said observations concerning *on*, and *l'on*: as, *on loué, on blâme, on menance*; *on emploie la douceur & la rigueur*; & *malgré tout cela on n'en sauroit venir à bout.*

One ought not to be judge in his own cause.

*devoir juger dans propre cause, f.*

Don't you know whether we have been beat or no? It was

*savoir si battre ou non.*

said at first that we had got the victory; but now it is assured

*dire d'abord que gagner victoire, f. mais à présent assurer*

that we have been beat soundly. | Yes, they say so: but how

*comme il faut ou mais comment*

can one give credit to what is so variously reported? We are (a)

*pouvoir ajouter (a) foi si différemment rapporter*

told that the enemies were inferior in number to us.

*ennemi, m. inférieur en nombre.*

It has been resolved in the King's council to send troops to

*résoudre au Roi, m. conseil, m. de envoyer troupes, f.*

(a) The noun *foi* without an article after *ajouter*.



Flanders; and it is thought that the parliament will approve of  
*Flandre* • *croire* *parlement, m. approuver, 1st ft.*  
 all the measures of the court.

*mesure, f.* *court, f.*

People flatter themselves often more than they should.

*se flatter* *souvent plus que (with ne before) devoir.*

It is observed, that since the last news, they work night and day

*observer* *depuis dernier nouvelle, f. travailler nuit & jour*

at the Tower. Order has been sent to the Admiral to set sail

à *Tour, f.* *ordre, m.* *envoyer* *Amiral de mettre à la voile*

| as soon as possible. | It is hoped that he will be able to do it

*le plutôt qu'il lui sera possible* *espérer* *pouvoir.*

about the end of the month. They also talk of laying an embargo

*vers fin, f.* *mois, m.* *aussi parler de mettre embargo, m.*

upon all ships; and that twenty more men of war will be put

*sur tout (a) vaisseau, m.* *vingt encore vaisseau de guerre mettre*

into commission. | We hear from all sides that, &c.

*en commission* *apprendre de tout côté.*

When one is well, one commonly laughs at these doctors; Is

*quand se porter bien* *ordinairement se moquer de docteur, m.*

one sick? one submits tractably to their prescriptions.

*malade se soumettre docilement* *ordonnance, f.*

It is natural to every one to think of himself.

*il naturel à* *de penser à.*

That is good in itself. Virtue is amiable of itself.

*bon en* *vertu, f.* *aimable.*

The loadstone attracts iron to itself.

*aimant, m.* *attirer fer, m.*

The remedy that is proposed is harmless of itself.

*remède, m.* *proposer* *innocent.*

I have been told that he is dead.

*dire* *mort.*

Do you know what is said of you?

*savoir* *dire,*

It has been taken from him. [*ôter.*]

They say that you don't know if the letters have been received

*dire* *savoir si* *lettre, f.* *recevoir*

which were expected last mail; and that in case they have not

*attendre dernier ordinaire, m.* *en cas que (b)*

been received, or are not received to-day, fifty men are to

*recevoir, ou* *aujourd'hui cinquante de partir*

be sent to the forest, where it is thought the messenger has been

*envoyer* *forêt, f.* *où* *croire* *courier, m.*

(a) Tout for every has no article to its noun.

(b) This conjunction governs the subjunctive mood.

robbed: because it is known that letters of great consequence  
*voter parce que* *avoir* *lettre, f. grand consequence, f.*  
 had been given him. And as there is no doubt that the enemies  
*donner* *comme il y a doute, m. (a) ennemi, m.*  
 have kept him, since we have certain advice that some of our let-  
*retenir* *puisque* *sur avis, m.*  
 ters have been seen in their hands; a spy has been sent to enquire  
*voir dans* *main, f. espion, m. envoyer pour s'informer*  
 underhand after what is reported; and he has been promised  
*secrètement de* *rappporter* *promettre*  
 a reward if he can hear of them.  
*récompense, f. si pouvoir apprendre des nouvelles.*

IX. *Quelque* signifies either a number indeterminate, or a quality or quantity indeterminate; in the first signification it answers to the word *some*; in the other signification it answers to these expressions, *whatever, whatsoever, though, with, ever so, or never so much.*

X. *Quelque*, signifying *some*, is always an adjective: but when it signifies *whatever, &c.* it is sometimes an adverb, and therefore indeclinable; and sometimes a pronoun incomplete adjective, which agrees in gender and number with the following substantive or adjective.

XI. *Quelque* is only adverb when it comes before an adjective, and a substantive governed of *être*; or only when it comes before an adjective, which can never happen but with *être*.

XII. When *quelque* comes before a substantive attended by an adjective, or before a substantive only, but with any other verb than *être*, it is an adjective following the same rules as the other adjectives.

XIII. *Quelque* signifying *whatever*, followed immediately by a substantive or adjective, always requires, if it be indeclinable, the particle *que*, and if declinable, the relative *qui*, before the next verb, which it governs in the subjunctive, and of which it is governed, as to its case.

XIV. *Quelque* with its substantive and adjective, or with either, makes a sort of *nominative absolute*, i. e. a subject which goes for nothing in the grammatical order of the sentence, and

(a) *Qu* after *doute* requires *ne* before the next verb, which must be in the subjunctive.



the verb must besides have another noun come before it for its subject, and another for its object, unless it be neuter.

XV. As *whatsoever* is a pronoun compound, which is sometimes separated in two parts by a word between, in what condition *soever I be*, (*en quelque état que je me trouve*) so is like wise *quelque* separated in two words, viz. *quel* and *que*, but without any word between as in *English*; and *quel que* must be immediately followed by a verb, or a pronoun personal in the nominative case; then *quel* must agree in gender and number with the following noun or pronoun, that comes before the verb. *N. B.* If the word that expresses the subject be a substantive, it comes after the verb, and the verb requires no other case of the relative *qui* before it, though it be still governed in the subjunctive by *que*.

XVI. *Whatever* and *whatsoever* are not always rendered by *quelque*; but are sometimes translated by *quoique*, *tout ce qui*, and *tout ce que*.

XVII. From *qui* and *quoi* are formed these two other pronouns indeterminate, *qui que ce soit*, *qui que ce fût*, *quoi que ce soit*, *quoi que ce fût*: the two first are said of persons, the two others of things: *qui que ce soit* answers to *any body whatsoever*; and when its verb is attended by a negative, it signifies *no man in the world*, *no man living*, *no body at all*. *Qui que ce fût* is the same pronoun, used with the other tense of the subjunctive, according as the construction requires it.

XVIII. These two pronouns, used without a negative, make a sort of *nominative absolute*, which must be followed by the pron. personal *il*: and when the sentence has two parts, *qui que ce soit*, *qui que ce fût* must be immediately followed by the relative *qui*, before the verb of the first part, and *il* must come besides before that of the second.

*Qui que ce soit*, *quoi que ce fût*, without a negative, signifies *any thing whatever*; and with a negative, *nothing in the world*.

Some author has maintained that women have no soul.

• auteur, m. • soutenir • aime, f.  
Tho' your reasons be never so good, they won't be heard.  
• raison, f. • bon • écouter.

Whatever fortune a man have, it is good to save.

• bien, m. • il • bon de épargner.  
Whatever riches you have, you will never be satisfied if you  
• richesses, f. • jamais • content

do not fix your desires.

fixer • desir, m.

• I don't

I don't fear him, whatever he be. [*craindre.*]

Tho' fashions be never so foolish, people always follow them.  
mode; f.                      fou                      toujours suivre.

Whatever good fortune befall him, he is always the same.  
bonheur, m. arriver même.

Tho' land be never so good, yet it must be manured for all that.  
terre, f.                  bon        (a) il faut        cultiver.

Whatever your motives may be, your conduct will be  
condemned. [*condamner.*]

What faults soever you have committed, they will forgive  
*faute, f. faire pardonner*  
 you if you promise to behave better | for the future. |  
*si • promettre de se conduire mieux à l'avenir.*

Whatever services he has done me, I have been grateful for  
*service, m. rendre reconnoissant*  
 them.—He allows her whatever she desires.

Whatever is right in itself, is not always approved.  
*bien en approuvé.*

He won't marry, whomsoever you may intend to offer him.  
*vouloir se marier*                      *avoir dessein de offrir.*

Whatever women are, men cannot live without them.  
*femme, f.      in      (b)      se passer de.*

She is never pleased, whatever he do.  
*jamais content faire.*

Tho' he be never so wicked, &c. [*méchant.*]

Tho' true love be ever so uncommon, yet it is less so than  
*véritable amour, m. rare encore moins*  
 true friendship. [*amitié, f.*]

Whosoever break it shall be punished.  
rompre punir.

He trusts nobody whatever. [*See first 3d state.*]

Whatever he write, give me notice of it.  
*mander donner avis.*

Tho' the motions of the soul be never so secret, and what-  
*mouvement, m. ame* *secret,*  
 ever care a man take to hide them, they are no sooner formed,  
*join, m. prendre de cacher* *plutôt formé*  
 than they appear upon his face.

que paroître sur visage, m.

This work, whatsoever it be, is very dear.  
*ouvrage, m. fort cher.*

(a) Yet, must, and for all that, are made by this French idiom, *Il ne faut pas laisser de*; and to be manured, must be by the active voice.

(b) *Cannot*, is rendered by *ne sauroit*.



How little soever you give to a thankful man, he will thank  
 you for it. (a) *peu donner reconnoissant remercier*

Whomsoever you employ, make a bargain first.

*se servir 2d ft. faire marché auparavant*

I complain of nothing in the world.

*se plaindre.*

He thought of nothing in the world.

*penser à*

Whomsoever you apply to, they will tell you the same thing.

*s'adresser*

*même chose, f.*

Nobody in the world has prepossessed me against you.

*prévenir*

*contre.*

Trust nobody in the world. [*se fier.*]

I have heard of nothing in the world. [*apprendre, 1st ft.*]

Tho' men be never so wicked, they dare not shew themselves

*méchant*

*oser (b) paraître*

enemies to virtue; and when they intend to persecute it, they

*ennemi (c) vertu, f. quand vouloir persécuter*

pretend to believe that it is false, or they object crimes against it.

*seindre de croire*

*faux ou*

*supposer crime (d)*

XIX. *Tout* is construed several ways. 1st, It is an adjective signifying *all and whole*, and always coming before the article of its substantive, besides the prepositions *de* and *à*, which it requires before itself. It is to be observed, that when this adjective is construed with the name of a city or town of the feminine, it does not agree with it in gender, and besides causes the other adjective (if there be any) to be masculine. 2dly, It signifies *any or every*, and its substantive has no article. 3dly, *Tout*, construed with some verbs, especially with *être*, is taken substantively, and signifies most times *every thing*; sometimes it signifies *the whole*; it signifies also *every* in these words, *tous les jours*, every day; *toutes les semaines*, every week, &c. *à toute heure*, every hour; *à tout moment*, every moment, &c.

XX. *Tout* being an adjective, must be repeated before each substantive of which it can be said, especially if the substantives are of different genders; as *Je suis avec toute l'ardeur*, & *tout le respect possible*, &c.

(a) *Remercier* governs the 2d state of the thing, and is rendered by *en*.

(b) This verb must be made by the conditional tense in French.

(c) *To virtue* is here the 2d state.

(d) *Against* is not expressed in French; and the pronoun is put in the 3d.

XXI. *Tout*, besides its construction of noun, adjective, and pronoun, has three others: 1st, It is used before an adjective, followed by *que*, and is rendered by *although*, or *whatever*, or by *as*, repeated with an adjective between, or only coming after an adjective. In this signification it is indeclinable, except (which is worth observing) when the adjective feminine, before which it comes, begins with a consonant; for then it is used in the feminine gender and plural number: but when the adjective, tho' feminine and plural, begins with a vowel, *tout* remains indeclinable. 2dly, *Tout* is also used before an adjective, without being followed by *que*: but it is liable to the same rules and construction as when it is, and is englished by the adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, &c. 3dly, *Tout* is besides used before the adverbs *bas*, low; *doucement*, softly: as, *parlez tout bas*, &c.

All women are not coquets, nor all men rakes.

*femme, f. coquette ni homme, m. libertin.*

She is quite altered by her illness.

*changé de maladie, f.*

They were quite astonished. These thoughts are quite new.

*étonné pensée, f. neuf.*

Her sisters are quite cast down.

*sœur, f. abattu.*

As learned as they be, they are sometimes mistaken:

*savant quelquefois se tromper.*

As simple as those girls look, they have malice.

*simple fille paroître malice, f.*

He has lost all the esteem and respect he had for her.

*perdre estime, f. respect, f. pour.*

As insensible as your sisters look, they have taste.

*insensible paroître gout, m.*

Hope, as deceitful as it be, serves at least to lead us to the end

*espérance, f. trompeur servir au-moins à mener fin, f.*

of life through a pleasant way.

*vie, f. par agréable chemin, m.*

Others by Jupiter understand the soul of the world, which

*autre par entendre ame, f. monde, m.*

is diffused not only thro' all human bodies, but likewise thro'

*répandu non seulement dans humain corps, m. encore dans*

all the parts of the universe.

*partie, f. univers, m.*

XXII. *Personne*, signifying *nobody*, is directly opposite to *quiconque*, and never used but with verbs attended by a negative,



or in exclusive propositions, or wherein the adverb *trop* is used: as, *Ne faire tort à personne; il est trop hardi pour craindre personne, &c.*

XXIII. When it means *any body*, it is used without a negative in sentences of interrogation, or rather of admiration, wonder, and doubt: as, *Y a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi?*

XXIV. Tho' *personne* is of both genders, yet it requires the adjective or pronoun which refers to it in the masculine, even in speaking of a woman: as, *Personne n'est venu, and not venue.*

XXV. *Quelqu'un* and *chacun* are said both of persons and things, but *chacun* has no plural. They require the particle *de* after them, when there follows a noun or pronoun. *Quelqu'un* is sometimes used absolutely, but most times relatively to a noun that comes after with *de*, or one that comes before, and is mentioned again by the pronoun *en*, and then *quelqu'un* is Englished by *some*: as, *Vous avez de beaux livresz pretez m'en quelqu'un or quelques uns.*

XXVI. *Quiconque* signifies and is said of *any body whatever*, and is noly of the singular number. Sometimes it is the object of one verb, at the same time that it is the subject of another: as, *En dépit de quiconque y trouvera à redire.*

XXVII. *Nul, pas un, and aucun*, are pronouns negative, requiring another negative before the verb, except in sentences of interrogation or doubt. *Aucun* is hardly used but in sentences of interrogation, and is followed by the genitive: as, *y a-t-il aucun de vous?*

XXVIII. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* will have the verb in the singular, if it come after it; and in the plural if it come before it: but *l'un & l'autre* will always have it in the plural: as, *L'un & l'autre ont raison, &c.*

XXIX. The verb construed with *l'un l'autre* must be a reciprocal one, except it be the verb *être*: as, *ils se font des Grimaces l'un à l'autre.*

XXX. *Some*, repeated in a sentence, is expressed in French by *les uns* in the first part of the sentence, and *les autres* in the other: as, *les uns aiment une chose, & les autres une autre.*

XXXI. *Plusieurs* is of both genders, and of the plural number only. *Many a man* is rendered into French by *plusieurs hommes*, or *plus d'un homme*; *many women* by *plusieurs femmes, &c.*

XXXII. *Autrui.*

XXXII. *Autru* has neither gender nor number, and is used in the genitive and dative cases.

XXXIII. *Quelconque*, *quelque*, and *chaque* are mere adjectives, inseparable from a substantive. *Quelconque* signifies any, whatever, and always follows its substantive.

No-body loves mischief as mischief.

*aimer mal, m. comme.*

There is no-body come | as yet. }

*il y a personne venu(a) encore.*

I know no-body so happy as she.

*connoître si heureux que.*

Has no-body met you? Have you seen no-body?

*rencontrer voir.*

Has any body made the trial of it?

*faire épreuve, f.*

They live without doing any body wrong.

*vivre sans (b) faire tort.*

Whosoever is rich is every thing. [*riche.*]

Somebody shall be punished. [*punir.*]

He dismissed any body who displeased him.

*se défaire 2d ft. déplaître.*

The Provinces sent two deputies each.

*Province, f. envoyer deux député.*

Every body lives | after His own way. |

*vivre à manière, f.*

I should be glad to see some of those learned ladies.

*bien aise de voir savant dame, f.*

I know some of them that deserve that title.

*connoître mériter titre.*

Did ever any body see the sun | stand still? |

*jamais voir soleil, m. s'arrêter.*

These flowers are fine; give me some of 'em.

*fleur, f. beau donner.*

We must give to every body | his own. |

*il faut rendre ce qui lui appartient.*

Every country has its customs and laws.

*pays, m. coutume, f. loi, f.*

Lend me some of your books.

*prêter livre, m.*

They have each a good place.

*avoir bon place, f.*

(a) The preposition *de* is used after the impersonal *il y a*; and *personne*, &c.

(b) *Sans* governs the present tense of the infinitive, not the participle.



He sees many women without being | in love, | with any. |

*voir femme, f. sans amoureux de.*

Many a man thinks so. | They follow one another.

*penfer ainsi se suivre.*

They laugh at one another. They do justice to one another.

*se moquer de se rendre justice.*

None is free from faults. Both are too dear.

*exempt défaut trop cher.*

I will meddle with neither.

*toucher à (a)*

They cannot live without one another.

*saurois vivre sans.*

Our mistrust justifies other men's cheat.

*défiance, f. justifier tromperie, f.*

Good or bad fortune commonly falls out to those that have  
*bonheur, m. ou malheur, m. d'ordinaire aller.*

most of either. | *le plus.* |

Men would not live long in society, if they were not the

*vivre long-tems en société si*

dupes of one another. | *dupe.* |

Whomsoever you shall send there, he will lose his labour.

*envoyer perdre peine, f.*

Pyrrhonians are philosophers who doubt of every thing.

*Pirrhonien, m. philosophe, m. douter de.*

Every woman is frail, but every woman don't yield.

*fragile mais succomber.*

It is impossible to content every body.

*il est impossible de contenter.*

It is observed that all handsome women affect an indolent air.

*remarquer affecter indolent air, m.*

The wise man ought to be prepared against every thing.

*sage devoir prêt à.*

I am found at very hour of the day.

*trouver à heure, f. journée, f.*

For all he is a fool, no-body understands his interest better.

*fou entendre intérêt, m. mieux.*

Do not do by others what you would not be done by. [*vouloir.*]

They both suspect her, but neither will tell why.

*soupçonner vouloir dire pourquoi.*

Did ever any body seriously doubt the existence of God?

*jamais sérieusement douter existence, f. Dieu.*

I never saw any body so vain as these two women.

*jamais (b) si vain que deux.*

(a) The negative *ne* is used before the verb preceding *ni à l'un, ni à l'autre.*

(b) *Personne* indefinite requires the masculine, preceded by the preposition *de.*

Every science has its principles.

*science, f. principe, m.*

The vote of every citizen is required.

*suffrage, m. citoyen, m. voter.*

None of the judges has opposed it.

*juge, m. s'opposer 3d ft.*

He has accepted of none of the terms offered him.

*accepter, 1st ft. condition, f. offrir.*

Of all those who know my reasons, did any one blame me?

*savoir raison, f. blamer.*

None can boast of it.

*pouvoir se vanter.*

It is a sad thing | to depend upon others. |

*il est fâcheux de dependre, 2d ft.*

I keep company with no woman : none of 'em can complain.

*s'attacher à pouvoir se plaindre, 2d ft.*

of me.

It is uncommon for two poets to speak well of one another.

*rare à poete de dire du bien*

The people always suffer by the war that princes make with

*peuple souffrir guerre, f. prince, m. faire.*

one another.

Cæsar and Pompey were two able captains : but the one fought

*César Pompée habile capitaine combattre*

to enslave his country, the other to preserve its liberty.

*pour se rendre maître patrie, f. maintenir (a) liberté, f.*

They both relate the same circumstance.

*rapporier circonstance,*

Of the magistrates, some voted for the death of the accused

*magistral, m. opiner, à mort, f. accusé*

person, and some for the death of the accuser. [*accusateur.*]

Few men use both hands equally.

*peu gens se servir main, f. également.*

I have satisfied both objections.

*satisfaire objection, f.*

We have the performances of several learned women.

*ouvrage, m. savant.*

Many princes | entered into a league | (a) no purpose | against

*se liguier inutilement contre.*

Lewis the Fourteenth.

*Louis (b)*

A prepossessed mind yields to no reason.

*prévenu esprit, m. se rendre raison, f.*

(a) Son, sa, ses, with repetition of *patrie*, or else *en*.

(b) No article used before the Cardinal Number, speaking of Kings; as Louis Quinze : so we say George Second, &c.



Of all the nations of the earth, there is none, but what has  
*nation, f. terre, f. il y a. qui (a)*  
 an idea of God.  
*idée, f. Dieu, m.*

## CHAP. VIII.

## On ADJECTIVES.

I. **A**DJECTIVES, ending in *e* not sounded, are of both genders; and the others, few excepted, only add an *e* not sounded for their feminine gender.

II. Adjectives, ending in *s* or *x*, have their singular and plural alike, and most of the others form their plural by adding an *s* to their singular.

III. Of common adjectives these fourteen only come before the substantive.

|                        |                            |                           |
|------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>beau</i> , fine.    | <i>grand</i> , great.      | <i>meilleur</i> , better. |
| <i>bon</i> , good.     | <i>gros</i> , big.         | <i>petit</i> , little.    |
| <i>brave</i> , brave.  | <i>jeune</i> , young.      | <i>vieux</i> , old.       |
| <i>cher</i> , dear.    | <i>mauvais</i> , bad, ill. | <i>saint</i> , holy.      |
| <i>chétif</i> , sorry. | <i>méchant</i> , naughty.  |                           |

IV. Verbal adjectives; adjectives of nations, colour, and figure; adjectives expressing some physical or natural qualities; and adjectives ending in *esque*, *ile*, and *ule*, come after the substantive.

V. Adjectives ending in *ic*, *ique*, and *if*, and those ending in *able*, are placed after the substantive, although some of them may also come before it.

VI. Most other adjectives are almost indifferently placed before or after the substantive; at least it is only in reading good books, and conversing with those who speak French well, one can learn which are better put before, and which after.

VII. When the substantive is attended by two adjectives, it is sometimes indifferent to put them before or after it; but it is more general to put them after.

VIII. If the substantive have three or more adjectives belong-

(a) *Ne* without *pas* and the subjunctive.

ing to it they must absolutely be put after it with the enclitic *et* before the last, which must likewise be observed, even when there are but two adjectives.

IX. Some adjectives, being construed with certain substantives, will come first; and when construed with others, will come last.

X. Some adjectives, when taken in the proper sense, are put after, and when taken in the figurative, before the substantives.

XI. Of adjectives, some always require after them either a noun or a verb, which they govern; some are used absolutely, without being ever attended by any noun or verb; and others may be construed both with and without a noun, which they govern: as, *C'est une femme insensible, elle est insensible à l'amour, &c.*

XII. The following adjectives require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive, and govern the genitive of nouns.

|                               |                                    |  |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| <i>digne</i> , worthy.        | <i>mécontent</i> , discontented.   | <i>enragé</i> , enraged.                             |
| <i>indigne</i> , unworthy.    | <i>comblé</i> , loaded, heaped up. | <i>avide</i> , greedy.                               |
| <i>capable</i> , capable.     | <i>taxé</i> , taxed.               | <i>las</i> , tired.                                  |
| <i>incapable</i> , incapable. | <i>chargé</i> , loaded.            | <i>fatigué</i> , fatigued.                           |
| <i>aise</i> , glad.           | <i>accusé</i> , accused.           | <i>ennuyé</i> , wearied.                             |
| <i>ravi</i> , overjoyed.      | <i>contrit</i> , sorrowful.        | <i>libre</i> , free.                                 |
| <i>joyeux</i> , joyful.       |                                    | <i>qualifié</i> , one that has the character of, &c. |
| <i>content</i> , contented.   |                                    |  |

as likewise adjectives signifying *fulness*, *emptiness*, *plenty*, or *want*.

XIII. The following adjectives which require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, govern the dative of nouns: as

|                                    |                                 |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>adroit</i> , dexterous.         | <i>ingénieux</i> , ingenious    | <i>ardent</i> , } eagre.        |
| <i>bon</i> , good.                 | <i>contraire</i> , contrary.    | <i>âpre</i> , }                 |
| <i>beau</i> , fine.                | <i>opposé</i> , opposite.       | <i>occupé</i> , busy.           |
| <i>agréable</i> , agreeable.       | <i>conforme</i> , conformable.  | <i>lent</i> , slow.             |
| <i>désagréable</i> , disagreeable. | <i>semblable</i> , like.        | <i>nuisible</i> , hurtful.      |
| <i>comparable</i> , comparable.    | <i>pareil</i> , alike.          | <i>prompt</i> , quick.          |
| <i>agile</i> , nimble.             | <i>enclin</i> , inclined.       | <i>prêt</i> , ready.            |
| <i>alerte</i> , brisk, pert.       | <i>adonné</i> , addicted.       | <i>sensible</i> , sensible.     |
| <i>habile</i> , skilful.           | <i>porté</i> , apt, prone.      | <i>insensible</i> , insensible. |
| <i>laide</i> , ugly.               | <i>sujet</i> , subject, liable. | <i>souple</i> , pliant.         |
|                                    | <i>propre</i> , fit.            | <i>aisé</i> , facile, easy.     |

And



And all adjectives signifying inclination, aptness, fitness, and unfitness, advantage and disadvantage, profit or disprofit, pleasure or displeasure, due, submission, resistance, and difficulty: as *Je suis sensible au froid, lent au travail, &c.*

A sedulous teacher loves attentive scholars.

*soigneux maître, m. aimer attentif écolier, m.*

A good wife is a great treasure.

*bon femme, f. trésor, m.*

Great men are scarce.

*Grand rare.*

I always drink warm water with cold wine.

*toujours boire chaud eau, f. avec froid vin.*

'Tis a tall fair man, who has married that short black girl of

*c'est grand blond épouser petit brun fille*

Spanish extraction. She is of a squeamish constitution. He has

*Espagnol extraction, f. délicat tempérament, m.*

crooked legs, and she a long red nose.

*crochu jambe, f. grand rouge né, m.*

He learns the French tongue to converse with her.

*apprendre François langue, f. pour converser avec.*

The great man does not fear death, and the wise man prevents it.

*craindre mort, f. sage prévenir.*

A handsome, well-shaped, virtuous, and rich woman, is an

*beau bien fait vertueux riche*

uncommon thing in nature.

*extraordinaire chose, f. nature, f.*

That short, ugly, old, and loathsome creature, who is not

*petit laid vieux dégoûtant créature, f. n'a pas*

worth a groat, has found a tall, handsome, and rich husband.

*quatre sous vaillant trouver grand beau mari.*

Affected simplicity is a nice cheat.

*affecté simplicité, f. délicat imposture, f.*

His condition is not worth envying (turn worthy of envy.)

*état, m. digne envie*

I am very sensible of cold. He is like his father.

*très sensible froid, m. ressembler.*

She is pleased with her husband, and he is pleased with her.

*content mari, m.*

I am content with what I have.

*content.*

He is sensible of injuries. She was overjoyed at that news.

*sensible injurie, f. ravi nouvelle, f.*

He is displeased with his children.

*mécontent enfant, m.*

She

She is fit for any thing. We are not pleased with his bargain.  
*propre (a) content marché, m.*

They are egraged at the measure, of the administration.  
*enragé mesure, f. gouvernement, m.*

He is not qualified for the place, being naturally inclined  
*propre place, f. naturellement inclin*  
 to gaming and raking.  
*jeu, m. débauche, f.*

That Lord has a set of six beautiful | yellow dun | horses.

*Seigneur attelage, m. six beau isabelle cheval, m.*

Give that to your eldest sister, and this to your younger brother.

*donner aîné sœur, f. jeune frère, m.*

There is | a new fashion. |

*il y a nouveau mode, f.*

The French tongue is spoken in all the courts of Europe.

*François langue, f. se parler*

He can't bear English cheese. He eats Dutch cheese.

*souffrir Angleterre fromage, m. manger Hollande.*

She has brought him a considerable fortune.

*apporter considérable bien, m.*

There are | few arable lands in Sweden. |

*il y a (guère b) labourable terre, f. en Suede.*

A black swan is a rare bird, and a white crow is a strange

*noir cigne, m. rare oiseau, m. blanc merle, m. surprenant*

fight. — He wears | square-toed | shoes. (c)

(d) *porter quarré soulier, m.*

Bath is, indeed, but a small city; but it is famous for its

*Bath à la vérité ne que petit ville, f. mais fameux pour*

medicinal waters and hot baths.

*médicinal eau, f. chaud bain, m.*

The public good is preferable to private interest.

*public bien, m. préférable particulier bien, m.*

'Tis an eternal decree, to which all men ought to submit.

*c'est éternel décret, m. devoir (c) soumettre.*

Human life is never free from troubles.

*humain vie, f. jamais exempt trouble, m.*

Almost all men are prone to pleasure.

*presque porté plaisir, m.*

Let a prince be slow to punish, and swift to reward.

*prince lent punir prompt récompenser.*

(a) *Tout*, any thing, is here substantively taken, with *être* and the prep. *à*.

(b) *De* after *guères*.

(c) *Merc* signifies a black-bird,

(d) *Sight* is made by the word *chose*, f.

(e) *To* is not expressed after *devoir*.



Some substantives governing the 3d state of the following noun in English, follow the general rule in French, i. e. govern the second state.

The dog is a friend to man.

*chien, m. ami, m.*

Pleasure is an enemy to reason and virtue.

*plaisir, m. ennemi, m. raison, f. vertu, f.*

XIV. The article and adjective agree with the noun in gender and number.

XV. When two or more substantives of different numbers and genders, or genders only, have an adjective common to both, it agrees in number and gender with the last.

XVI. When there be one, or many words, between the last noun and the adjective, that adjective (common to all) agrees with the noun masculine, tho' the last noun be feminine: and if the nouns be singular, then the adjective common shall be in the plural number.

XVII. When the adjective (common to three or more nouns, whether of the same or of different genders) is preceded and governed by the verb *être*, it must have another noun plural, as *choses* or *biens*, to agree with.

XVIII. *Chose*, a thing, (a noun feminine) joined to *quelque*, is masculine, and therefore requires the next adjective or pronoun relative to agree with that gender, as, *je suis assis sur quelque chose qui me paroit dur*.

XIX. The substantives feminine *partie*, a part; *la plus part*, the most part; *foule*, a crowd; *troupe*, *multitude*, a multitude; *moitié*, half; *espèce*, *sorte*, kind, sort; governing a noun masculine, and attended by an adjective, won't have the adjective agree with it, which it relates to of course, but with that noun masculine which it governs in the genitive.

The husband and the wife are sick.

*mari, m. femme, f. malade.*

Men and women are mortal.

*homme femme mortel.*

He has made his wife and daughter miserable.

*rendre femme fille misérable.*

My brother and sister are idle.

*frère, m. sœur, f. paresseux.*

The

The brother and sister are living still; and they are very  
*vivant encore*

troublesome to him. [*importun.*]

She has a charming face and neck. Her breast and arms are

(a) *charmant visage, m. cou, m. gorge, f. bras, m.*

beautiful: one would think them | artificially | turned.

*superbe* *dire* *ou tour* (b) *fait.*

The room and the closet, the trunk and the box, were opened.

*chambre, f. cabinet, m. coffre, m. boîte, f. ouvert.*

I have left the room and the closet locked with the key.

*laisser* *fermé à* *clé, f.*

He says that he found the bureau and the box opened.

*dire* *trouver* *bureau, m. boîte, f. ouvert.*

You speak of an affair wherein time and pains will be well

*parler* *affaire, f. où* *tems, m. peine(c) f. bien*

bestowed. [*employé.*]

Riches, health, honours and power, are fading and uncertain.

*richesses, f. santé, f. honneur, m. autorité, f. de peu de durée incertain.*

Nobility, grandeur, favour, and riches, are frail and common

*noblesse, f. grandeur, f. faveur, f. richesses, f. caduc commun*

to the good and the wicked, and can easily be taken from us; but

*bon méchant pouvoir aisément ôté* *mais*

glory, honour, good-nature, and virtue, are solid, sure, and

*gloire, f. honneur, m. bon-naturel, m. vertu, f. solide sûr*

lasting. [*durable.*]

It is not in the power of men to deprive us of them.

*il au pouvoir de priver.*

They say that there is in this work something that is not

*il y a dans ouvrage, m. quelque chose, m.*

approved of. [*approuvé.*] (d)

His descriptions are somewhat tedious. (Turn, have some-

*description, f. ennueux.*

thing tedious.) (c)

I have found part of my money stolen away.

*trouver partie, f. argent, m. dérobé.*

Part of the cannon was nailed up.

*cannon, m. encloué.*

He retook part of the baggage which had fallen into the

*reprendre partie, f. baggage, m. tomber entre*

hands of the enemies.

*main, f. ennemi.*

(a) This participle is made by the article in French, and not by *un*,

(b) Turn thus, *one would say that they are artificially made.*

(c) *Rains* is made by the singular in French.

(d) *Of* is not expressed here, in French.

(e) The prep. *de* is used after *Quelque chose*, with the adjective in the masculine.



Half of that fruit is rotten.

*moitié, f. fruit, m. pourri.*

'Tis a sort of fruit which they find very good, but it is very

*c'est sorte, f. fruit, m. trouver fort bon*

unwholesome. [*mal sain.*]

You look for something: I know where it is.

*chercher quelque chose, m. savoir où.*

XX. These adjectives, signifying dimensions, viz. *haut*, high, tall; *profond*, deep; *épais*, thick; *gros*, big; *large*, wide, broad; and *long*, long; which come after the word of the measure of magnitude in *English*, come before in *French*, and are attended by the preposition *de*. Or (which is much better, and more generally used) the adjective of the dimension is turned into its substantive in *French*, with the word of the measure before, as in *English*, but so that both the words of the measure, and that of the dimension, are preceded by the preposition *de*. And the verb substantive *to be* is also turned into the verb *to have*, governing the noun of the measure, with the preposition before that of dimension.

Before the scholar makes the following Exercises, he must get by heart the nouns of number in the Vocabulary, Pag. 128, &c.

These Exercises must be rendered both ways. Therefore I have set down both the adjective and substantive of the magnitude.

A book three inches thick.

*livre, m. pouce épais épaisseur, f.*

A tree four fingers broad.

*arbre, m. doigt large largeur, f.*

A tower an hundred feet high.

*tour, f. pié haut hauteur, f.*

A river six feet deep.

*rivière, f. pié profond profondeur, f.*

Our school is twenty feet long, and twelve wide.

*école, f. long longueur, f. large largeur, f.*

It is rare to see a fir plank twelve yards long, ten feet broad,

*il rare de voir sapin planche, f. verge long-gueur, f. pié large-geur, f.*

and eight inches thick.

*pouce épais seur, f.*

There are in the garden walks which are two hundred and

*il y a dans jardin, m. allée, f.*

fifty paces long, and fifteen wide.

*pas long-geur large-geur.*

I have

I have seen many a thick tree, but never saw one yet that  
*voir* (a) *gros arbre, m. jamais,* *encore*  
 was three ells round. [*aune tour.*]

He sits upon a | four-square | stone, that is twelve inches  
*être assis sur* *quarré* *pierre, f.* *pouce*  
 long, twelve broad, and twelve thick.

*long-gueur* *large-geur* *épais-aisseur.*  
 We dwell in a fine house, seated on a hill an hundred yards  
*demeurer dans beau maison, f. situé sur montagne, f.* *verge*  
 high | with a well in it | which is fifty fathoms deep.

*haut-teur* *puits* (b) *toise profond-deur.*  
 That must needs be | a very strong ship which is made of  
*ce doit être là* *bien fort vaisseau, m.* *faire*  
 planks six and thirty inches broad, and twelve thick.  
*planche, f.* *pouce large-geur* *épais-seur.*

He is seven feet in height, but he does not look so tall, because  
*haut-teur* *paraître si grand parce*  
 he is big and fat.  
*que gros gras.*

Her face is twelve inches in diameter: and that of her sister  
*visage, m.* *pouce* *diamètre, m.*  
 three feet long. [*long-gueur.*]

The walls of Algiers are twelve feet thick, and thirty feet  
*mur, m. Algèrs* *épais-seur*  
 high. That city was | most terribly | bombarded by the French  
*haut-teur* *ville, f.* *terriblement bombardé* *François*  
 in one thousand six hundred and eighty-eight. (c)  
*en*

Agra, formerly the capital of the whole empire, and the resi-  
*Agra autrefois* *capitale, f.* *tout empire, m. lieu, m.*  
 dence of the Great Mogul, is forty eight miles in circumference.  
*de la résidence Grand Mogol* *mille circonférence.*

The wall that encompasses it is an hundred feet wide.

*mur, m. environner* *large-geur.*

The Japanese have at Meaco, in a stately temple, an idol of  
*Japonois* *à Meaco dans magnifique temple* *idole* *f.*  
 gilt copper, whose chair is seventy feet high and eighty broad.  
*doré cuivre* *chaise, f.* *haut-teur* *large-geur*

His head is big enough to hold fifteen men, and his thumb  
*tête, f.* *Gros assez pour contenir* *pouce*  
 forty inches round. [*pouce, m. tour.*]

(a) Many is rendered by *plusieurs*, or *plus d'un*.

(b) Turn thus in French, *wherein* is a well, &c.

(c) The conjunction & (and) is dropped after *six cents*, as also after *quatre-vingts*, from the unity, and so is the *s* from *vingts*, and *six cents*, for the date of a year, &c. as, *will six cent cinquante*, &c.



## CHAP. IX.

*Upon the COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.*

I. **T**HERE are but three French adjectives denoting by themselves the comparison, viz. *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less. Their superlatives are formed by putting the article before them; as *le meilleur*, the best; *le pire*, the worst; *le moindre*, the least.

II. The comparison of adjectives is made in French by placing before them some of the following particles, viz. *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *aussi, si*, as, so; *tant, autant*, so much, so many, as much, as many; but *mieux*, better, must be put before the participles passive.

III. For denoting the highest or lowest degree of the adjective, we put one of these adverbs of excess before it, *très*, most; *bien, fort*, very; *infiniment, extrêmement, prodigieusement*, extremely, vastly, mightily; or if there is comparison, we put the article before the comparative adverbs, which we make agree in gender and number with the substantive.

IV. Pronouns adjectives have the same effect as the article in making the superlative degree; and *mon meilleur ami* is equal to *le meilleur de mes amis*, the best of my friends.

V. Adverbs increase or decrease also in their signification; as *très sagement*, very wisely; *le plus subtilement qu'on puisse imaginer*, with the greatest subtilty one can imagine; *fort légèrement*, very lightly. And these three form their comparative and superlative irregularly.

| Pos.                 | Comp.                    | Superl.                         |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>bien</i> , well.  | <i>mieux</i> , better.   | <i>le mieux</i> , the best.     |
| <i>mal</i> , ill.    | <i>pis</i> , or } worse. | <i>le pis</i> , or } the worst. |
|                      | <i>plus mal</i> , }      | <i>le plus mal</i> , }          |
| <i>peu</i> , little. | <i>moins</i> , less.     | <i>le moins</i> , the least.    |

VI. *Bien* denotes either the *quality* or *quantity*: if it be used in the former sense, its comparative is *mieux*; if the latter, it is *plus*.

*plus*; as, *bien fait*, well made; *mieux fait*, better made; *bien fatigué*, much tired; *plus fatigué*, more tired.

VII The highest or lowest degree of comparison is expressed in French by the particles *le, la, les*, put before the adverbs *plus, moins, mieux*, followed by the adjective. But as some adjectives come before the substantive, and others after, so whenever it is the case of the adjective in the highest or lowest degree to come after the substantive, it requires the article before *plus* or *moins*, tho' the substantive that comes before has it already (with the preposition); or what is the same, though the foregoing noun is in the genitive or dative.

VIII. The noun that follows the adjective in the highest or lowest degree is put in the second state.

IX. When the superlative is followed by a verb, if that verb is in English the present, or preterite, or their compounds, it must be put in French in the subjunctive, preceded by the relative *qui*. And if the superlative is of an adverb, the verb must be preceded by *que*.

X. The particle *than*, that follows the comparative in English, is rendered into French by *que* without the next noun in the nominative.

XI. If *than* is followed by a verb, it must be made into French by the infinitive with the particle *de* after *que*, or by the imperfect of the indicative, or its compound, with the conjunction *si* after *que*.

XII. If the verb that follows *than* in English is not in, nor can be rendered by the infinitive, it must take in French the negative *ne* before it; but if there comes before the verb a conjunction governing it, that negative must be left out.

XIII. The simple comparatives *plus* and *moins*, meeting with a noun of number, are attended by the preposition *de*. Therefore the preposition *above*, before a noun of number, must always be rendered into French by *plus de*.

XIV. The prepositions *by* and *than*, used to join a certain definitive quantity to the adjective or adverb of the comparison, is expressed in French by *de*. *Beaucoup* and *peu*, denoting comparison, have likewise the particle *de* before them.

XV. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, which are always followed by *que* after the adjective, are englished, *si* and *aussi* by *so*, before the adjective; and *que*, by *that* or *as* after it, or by *as* both before and after.

XVI. *Tant* and *autant*, followed likewise by *que* (as much,



so much as) are construed with verbs and substantives, as *si* and *aussi* with adjectives; but *aussi* gives more force to the comparison than *si*.

XVII. *Si* is used in negative prepositions, and in affirmative, only when there is no comparison of equality made between two things; and *aussi* in affirmative prepositions with comparison.

XVIII. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, *plus* and *le plus*, must be repeated before each adjective or adverb governed, as likewise *tant* before each substantive, and *autant* before each verb, when there are many in the sentence.

XIX. The verb *to be*, that ordinarily follows *than* and the comparative or superlative in English, is always left out in French; and we are then contented with *que* and the pronoun, without a verb after it; as *plus riche qu'elle*, and not *plus riche qu'elle est*, richer than she is.

XX. *As*, repeated with an adverb between, is rendered into French either by *aussi* and *que*, or *le plus* and *que*, with the adverb between.

XXI. These comparative ways of speaking, *the more an hydroptic drinks, the more thirsty he is; the more I see her, the more I hate her; the richer men are, the happier they are; men are so much the more happy as they are more rich; the poorer people are, the less care they have, &c.* are rendered into French by *plus* or *moins* beginning each part of the sentence, and followed by the noun, or pronoun subject to the verb, then the verb, the adjective of the comparison, if there be any, or even the substantive, if there be one governed by the verb.

He is as experienced a soldier as a cunning statesman.

*habile capitaine, m. rusé politique, m.*

Augustus was not perhaps a greater man than Antony, but he

*Auguste peut-être grand Antoine mais*

was more fortunate than he. [*heureux.*]

Giddy people doubt less than the wise.

*étourdi douter sage.*

She has as much fortune and beauty as her cousin.

*bien beauté cousine, f.*

He has not so much wit as his brother, but he has more

*esprit, m. frère mais*

judgment. [*jugement, m.*]

She is not so cunning as he. [*rusé.*]

She

She has as many sweethearts ftill as formerly.

*galant, m. encore autrefois.*

The Loire is larger than the Seine, but it is lefs rapid than

*Loire, f. grand      Seine, f.      rapide*

the Rhone. [*Rhone.*]

The Thames is not fo rapid as the Rhine.

*Tamife, f.      rapide      Rhein, m.*

He is not fo learned as his brother, and has not read fo much ;

*savant      frere, m.      lire*

but he is as sober and | well behaved, | and has as much fenfe,

*sage      poli      fens*

and is as much efteemed as he, but he is not fo rich.

*eftime      riche.*

It is as eafy to do good as to do evil.

*il      aife de faire bien      mal.*

Your father is richer than mine, and therefore you are to

*pere, m. riche      par confequent      (a)*

have a greater portion in marriage ; and as you are richer, and

*grand dot, f. en mariage      comme*

even handsomer than I am, you will more eafily and fooner get

*me'me beau      aifement tot trouver*

a husband : but virtue is more precious than riches.

*mari, m.      vertu, f.      precieux.*

You learn pretty well ; but your brother learns better, becaufe

*apprendre affez bien mais      frere      parce que*

he is more diligent than you, and takes more pains.

*diligent      prendre      peine.*

'Tis ridiculous, moft ridiculous, the moft ridiculous thing

*c'eft ridicule, m.      chofe, f.*

in the world. [*monde, m.*]

Trier is the oldeft city in all Germany.

*Trere      ancien ville, f.      Allemagne, f.*

The right hand is ftronger than the left, and the middle

*droit main, f.      fort      gauche      milieu*

finger is the longeft.

*doigt, m.      grand.*

The greateft pleafure in life is love ; the greateft treafure is

*grand plaifir, m.      vie, f. amour, m.      trefor, m.*

contentment ; the greateft poffeffion is health ; the greateft eafe

*contentement, m.      jouiffance, f. fanté, f.      foulagement, m.*

is fleep ; and the greateft medicine is a true friend.

*fommeil, m.      remede, m.      veritable ami, m.*

The Jupiter of Phidias is one of the fineft ftatues extant

(Turn, that is) in Italy. [*en Italie.*]

(a) *Are* is here only the fign of the future of the next verb.



Tully was the most eloquent of the Roman orators.

*Cicéron éloquent Romain orateur, m.*

Scipio Nafica was a very honest man: he was esteemed

*Scipion (a) honnête jugé*

the most honest man in the city.

The most experienced men sometimes are guilty of the  
*habile, (b) quelquefois faire*  
grossest faults.

*grossier (b) faute, f.*

The Life of Lewis the Great is not the best performance of

*vie, f. Louis, m. (b) ouvrage, m.*

our age. [*siècle, m.*]

He always speaks as modestly and as clearly as possible.

*toujours sagement clairement possible.*

She is the loveliest girl that I know.

*ce aimable fille connoître. (c)*

She has received me in the most civil manner. (d)

*recevoir.*

The best quality a man can have, is to be civil and obliging

*qualité pouvoir civil obligeant*

to the most uncivil and disobliging people.

*incivil desobligeant personne, f.*

The best of all fathers is become the most terrible and

*père, m. devenu terrible*

inexorable father. [*inexorable.*]

I have rather chose to deny than confess.

*aimer mieux nier avouer*

I think her more unfortunate than if she had lost all her

*trouver malheureux perdre*

wealth. [*bien.*]

She is happier than if he had married her.

*heureux épouser.*

They are more courageous than was said.

*brave dire.*

This is very bad, but that is worse, and his is the worst of all.

*mauvais mais.*

They are of less size than your's. [*grandeur.*]

They have better officers than we have, and they understand

*officier, m. entendre.*

(a) No article is put before an adnoun separated from its noun.

(b) These adjectives must come after the substantive in French.

(c) This verb must be made by the subjunctive in French, conformable to the Rule IX.

(d) Turn, the most civilly that can be. Civilly is *civilement*

war better, but we have more courageous soldiers, than they.  
guerre, f. mais vaillant soldat, m.

The best remedies are always bitter, and antidotes are less  
remède, m. toujours amer antidote, m.  
pleasant to the taste than poisons.  
agréable gout, m. poison, m.

There is no fool so troublesome as he that has wit.  
il y a sot, m. (a) incommode (a) (a) esprit.

A fool mocks the wisest philosopher.  
fou, m. se moque 2d ft. sensé (b) philosophe, m.

Riches are oftentimes more dangerous than poverty is  
richesses, f. souvent funeste pauvreté, f.  
troublesome. [incommode.]

We have no more than a hundred pounds sterling, and he  
has little less than two hundred guineas. [guinée.]  
livre sterling

I speak of the most learned man in Europe.  
parler savant Europe.

He behaves better now than he did before.  
conduire à présent faire auparavant.

She is better than when she was in the country.  
se porter quand à campagne, f.

She ought to have confessed, rather than | told a lie, |  
devoir (c) avouer mentir.

He is less to | be pitied | than if he had lost his health, or the  
à plaindre perdre santé, f.  
use of his limbs, as his brother has.  
usage, m. membre comme.

I am older than you by seven years.  
âgé an.

Your sister is taller than you by the whole head.  
sœur, f. grand de tout tête, f.

We are more than half persuaded of it.  
à moitié persuadé.

The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable.  
difficile honorable.

Simonides said, that the longer he considered the nature of  
Simonide dire considérer nature, f.

God, the more obscure the thing seemed to him.  
Dieu obscur chose, f. sembler.

The richer you are, the more covetous you are.  
riche avare.

(a) This must be made by the plural.

(b) This adjective must come after the substantive in French.

(c) Have is suppressed in French, and the participle passive is made by the infinitive.



He had rather starve than work.

*aimer mieux (a) mourir de faim travailler.*

She is less handsome by much.

*beau beaucoup.*

He is not so tall as you by three inches.

*haut pouce.*

The longer the day is, the shorter is the night.

*long jour, m. court nuit, f.*

The more elevated in dignity one is, the less pride one ought

*élevé en dignité orgueil devoir*

to have.

He is more than half dead.

*à demi mort.*

There was more than | half a pint | spilt.

*il chopine, f. répandu.*

Men ought to humble themselves so much the more, and

*devoir s'humilier.*

think themselves so much the less happy, that they want more

*croire heureux avoir besoin, 2d st.*

people to serve them. They depend so much the more upon

*gens pour servir dépendre.*

their servants that they cannot | live without them. |

*domestique saurois s'en-passer.*

## CH A P. X.

### Upon V E R B S.

I. **T**HE verb always has a noun or pronoun before it, for its subject, with which it agrees in person and number; and when the subject is a relative, it is of the same person with the pronoun personal, or noun it refers to: as *C'est moi qui ai fait cela, C'est lui qui a vu cela, C'est nous qui disons.*

II. Many nouns singular will have the verb in the plural, except when the two nouns singular are joined by the conjunction disjunctive *ou*; for then the last noun is supposed to govern the verb: as *ou la douceur ou la force te fera, and not le feront*

III. If one of the nouns be in the plural, the verb must agree with it: as *Le Prince autant que les peuples souhaitent la*

*paix*; but if the last noun be preceded by *mais*, the verb must agree with it, tho' it is singular, and there may be many plurals before: as, *Non seulement ses honneurs & ses richesses, mais sa vertu même s'évanouit.*

IV. When the verb has many pronouns of different persons for its subject, it must agree with the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than third: as, *Vous & moi, Nous sommes d'accord*, you and I agree.

V. The person who speaks, in French, always names himself last: as, *Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord.*

VI. These nouns *une infinité, un grand nombre, un nombre infini, la plupart*, and *la plus grande partie*, coming before a noun plural, require their verb in the plural. The same nouns will have also a plural when they come immediately before a verb, without being followed by a noun plural, because that last noun is always understood; but when they are placed before a noun singular, the verb must be in the singular. All this shews, that it is not with the above nouns of collection, but with the noun that comes after each of them, that the verb agrees in number. As to the other collective nouns, they follow the general rule.

VII. The noun, expressing the subject, comes after the verb, (or between the auxiliary and participle, if it is a pronoun) in a short sentence used by parenthesis, and as an accessory member to the chief sentence: as, *Tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau*, all men are mad, says Boileau.

VIII. The subject is likewise better put after the verb in the narrative discourse, when the verb has no object, or when it is expressed by one of these conjunctive pronouns, *se, que, le où*, or the adjective *tel* comes after the verb: as, *Sur cela parut le Prince. La prison où furent mis les malfaiteurs. Tel parut à ses yeux l'éclat de sa beauté, &c.*

Virtue and vice have different consequences.

*vertu, f. vice, m. différent. suite, f.*

Neither you love nor your hatred concerns me.

*ni amour, m. ni haine, f. toucher.*

Either friendship or self-love will make him do it.

*ou amitié, f. ou amour propre, m. faire.*

The King, the Parliament, and the whole nation | are for |

*Roi, m. Parlement, m. tout nation, f. souhaiter*

war, [*guerre, f.*]

The



The Princes of Germany, the Emperor, and the Queen of  
*Prince, m. Allemagne. Empereur, m. Reine, f.*  
 Hungary, would be glad of a peace, but the maritime powers  
*Hongrie, bien aise (a) paix, f. mais maritime puissance, f.*  
 and the King of France are against it.

*Roi, m. France s'opposer 3d ft.*

Most people judge of men only by the vogue they are in.  
*la plupart gens juger ne and que par vogue, f. (Turn, they have.)*  
 One half of men don't think, and the other half know not  
*moitié, f. penser autre savoir (b)*  
 what to think.

The generality of women are coquets.

*la plus grande partie, f. coquette.*

A great number of houses were burnt.

*grand nombre, m. maison, f. brûlé.*

A world of people came to see him.

*infinité, f. monde venir voir.*

One half of the enemy were cut to pieces: the other half  
*ennemi taillé en pièce*

] took to their heels. ]

*prendre la fuite.*

Most friends disgust us with friendship, and most religious

*ami, m. dégoûter amitié, f.*

people disgust us with religion. ] *devotion, f.* ]

A multitude of people flock there.

*grand nombre, m. gens accourir.*

The ] third part ] of the trees were cleft asunder.

*tiers, m. arbre, m. fendu en deux.*

Two thirds of the palace were quite consumed.

*tiers, m. palais, m. tout à fait consumé.*

A crowd of soldiers rushed upon him, though abundance

*foule, f. soldat, m. se jeter sur quoique (c) quantité, f.*

of his men were hard by.

*gens tout auprès.*

Most men have, like plants, hidden properties, which

*comme plante, f. caché propriété, f.*

chance ] brings to light. ]

*hasard faire découvrir.*

IX. The present tense of the indicative is used to denote  
 the thing that is, or is a doing in the present period of time  
 wherein we speak: as, *Je vois, je pense*, I see, I think.

(a) Turn, glad to make a peace.

(b) Before *savoir*, implying uncertainty, *ne* only is used, without *point* after it, and *que* before the infinitive.

(c) This conjunction governs the subjunctive.

X. The

X. The imperfect is used, 1st, to denote that the thing which we speak of, was present in a time past specified.—2dly, It is used to express, in a narration, the inclinations and qualities a person had, or what he at certain times did in a time entirely past.—3dly, it is used after the conjunction *se*, to denote the thing that should be, that another thing might happen: as, *S'il l'aimoit, il l'épouserait*.

XI. The preterite is used to denote a thing past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it happened: as, *Je fus hier à la comédie*, I went yesterday, &c.

XII. The future denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come: as, *Nous aurons la paix*, We shall have peace.

XIII. The conditional or uncertain tense is used to denote a thing, that would, should, or could be in an unspecified and uncertain time, because it depends upon another uncertain and conditional thing. It is also used to denote the present time, especially in sentences of wish: as, *Je voudrais qu'il fût beau Dimanche*.

XIV. The compound of the present denotes a thing that is past, but so that there is still actually remaining some part to slide away of the time wherein we declare the thing has been done. However, when the time wherein the thing has happened is entirely past, and is not specified, we may indifferently use the preterite or this tense.

XV. The compound of the imperfect is used to denote, that in a certain specified time past the thing spoken of was also past.

XVI. The compound of the preterite denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to slide away; but it intimates something later, and besides most commonly expresses a thing past before another; and is almost always construed with these conjunctions, *quand, lors que, dès que, aussi-tôt que, après que, &c.*

XVII. The compound of the future is used to denote a thing that is yet to be, with respect to itself, but that shall be over with respect to another future thing, which is to follow it.

XVIII. The compound of the conditional is used to denote a thing that could, would, or should have happened in an uncertain time, had it not been for some other conditional thing.

XIX. The imperative commands, desires, intreats, and exhortations.

I say



I say that it is so.

*dire ainsi.*

I hope my father will come.

*espérer père venir.*

She | was asleep | whilst he was preaching.

*dormir pendant que prêcher.*

Louis the Fourteenth was a great man and a good King. He

*Louis grand bon Roi, m.*

had fine qualities, but he loved war | too much. |

*beau qualité, f. mais aimer guerre, f. trop.*

If he should do that, I would punish him.

*si faire punir.*

I like her well enough; and I would marry her, if she had

*agréer bien assez épouser.*

money. [*argent, m.*]

When I was at Paris I used to go | every morning | to the

*quand à Paris (a) aller tous les matins à*

Academy, where I did ride three horses. Then I fenced. And

*Académie ou monter cheval, m. ensuite faire des armes*

| in the afternoon | I applied myself to mathematics.

*l'après dinée, f. s'appliquer mathématiques, f.*

My mother was a handsome woman, and was so still in her

*mère, m. beau femme, f. encore dans*

old age, some years before she died. My aunt was handsome

*vieillesse, f. année avant de tante, f.*

too, and had | a great many | admirers in her time: but she is

*aussi beaucoup adorateur dans tems, m.*

of a more vigorous constitution than my mother was.

*robuste temperament, m. mère.*

My cousin was a sweet girl | ten years ago, | She had, and

*cousine, f. charmant il y a dix ans*

has still, very regular features; her complexion was of lilies and

*encore, régulier trait, m. teint, m. lis, m.*

roses: but grief has made a sad havoc | in her person. | The

*rose, f. chagrin, m. faire triste dégât, m. chez elle*

poor girl grieves herself to death: yet she would recover her

*pauvre se chagriner mort, f. cependant recouvrer*

charms, if she was married. A husband is the true specific

*charme, m. marier, (b) mari, m. vrai spécifique, m.*

| in her case. | [*pour cela.*]

When he saw that he could not make her understand reason,

*quand voit pouvoir faire entendre raison.*

(a) *I used to go*, must be made in French by *I went* only.

(b) This must be made with *on*.

he applied himself to her mother, and represented to her the  
*s'adresser* *représenter*  
 advantages that would accrue to her by that marriage; but  
*avantage, m.* *revenir* *de* *mariage, m.* *mais*  
 neither he nor she could | prevail upon | her daughter to con-  
*ni* *ni* *pouvoir persuader (a)* *filles, f.*  
 sent to it. [*consentir.*]

I dined yesterday at your cousin's, where I met two of your  
*diner hier* *chez cousin, m.* *où trouver*  
 friends who were quarrelling. They were however reconciled  
*ami, m.* *se quereller* *pourtant réconcilié*  
 at last, and went to | take a walk | together.  
*à la fin* *aller* *faire un tour ensemble.*

Alexander, with forty thousand men, attacked Darius, who  
*Alexandre avec* *attaquer Darius*  
 had six hundred thousand men. He gave him battle twice,  
*livrer bataille deux fois*  
 defeated him, and made his mother, wife, and daughters  
*défaire* *faire* *mère femme* *filles*  
 prisoners. [*prisonnier.*]

He has travelled in Italy.

*voyager* *Italie.*

I have seen the King | to day, | and had the honour to kiss  
*voir* *Roi, m.* *aujourd'hui* *honneur baiser*  
 his hand. | I have not seen that opera.  
*main, f.* *opéra, m.*

I breakfasted this morning with your brother; and we shall  
*déjeuner* *matin avec* *frère*  
 sup together. | Where did you sup | last night?  
*souper ensemble* *où* *hier au soir.*

When did you do that? I did it this morning.

*quand* *faire* *matin, m.*

I have lost my time this week, but I studied | very hard |  
*perdre* *temps, m.* *semaine, f.* *étudier* *beaucoup*  
 last week. | [*la semaine passée.*]

We had no summer | last year. |

*été, m.* *l'année dernière.*

I wrote | a fortnight ago | to your brother, and have received  
*écrire* *il y a quinze jours* *frère*  
 his answer in the beginning of this week. I was at the Coffee  
*réponse, f.* *commencement, m.* *semaine, f.* *au Café, m.*  
 house when it was brought to me. Your cousin who was with  
*apporter* *cousin, m.* *avec*  
 me, asked me who he was. I shewed him his letter; and as he  
*demander comment se porter montrer* *lettre, f.*

(a) De before the next infinitive after persuade.



was reading it, somebody came to ask for me: I was obliged  
*lire venir demander obligé*  
 to go, and left him the letter. But he has promised to give  
*sortir laisser promettre de rendre*  
 it me again to-day, if I dined | at your house. | Therefore you  
*aujourd'hui dîner chez vous ainsi*  
 will see him at dinner.  
*voir à dîner.*

If you could do me that | good turn | I would be infinitely  
*si (a) pouvoir rendre service, m. infiniment*  
 obliged to you. | If I had time, I would write to him.  
*obligé tems, m. écrire.*

I should be | very much | concerned if he should lose his place.  
*très mortifié perdre place, f.*

I had finished my work when he sent for me.

*finir ouvrage, m. quand envoyer querir.*

After I had done, I went abroad.

*après que faire sortir.*

Let us be true to our friends, and have no whim | for them. |  
*fidèle ami caprice à leur égard.*

When we had supped we went to cards.

*quand souper jouer (b) carte, f.*

I shall be come back again then.

*revenir alors.*

Speak and do what you will.

*dire faire vouloir.*

Let them submit to the laws.

*se soumettre loi, f.*

I should have had done yesterday, if he had helped me.

*finir hier aider*

I would have lent him money, if I had known that he wanted  
*prêter argent, m. savoir avoir besoin, 2d ft.*

any.

I hope he will not refuse me the favour I beg of him.

*espérer refuser grace, f. demander.*

Cæsar was the greatest of all the Romans.

*César grand Romain, m.*

As soon as I have dined I will go out.

*aussi-tôt que dîner (c) sortir.*

Never speak English to me: speak always French.

*jamais parler Anglois toujours François.*

Quarrels would not last long, if the wrong was of one side only.  
*querelle, f. durer long-tems tort, m. côté, m. ne and que.*

(a) *Si* is never construed with the conditional in French.

(b) The particle *at* after *jouer* is *à, au, à la, aux*, in French.

(c) Turn thus, *I shall have dined.*

Do not speak so fast; pronounce well, and mind what you say.

*si vite prononcer bien penser 3d ft.*

I wish I could serve you, I would do it with all my heart.

*souhaiter pouvoir servir (a) faire de cœur.*

We should desire very few things eagerly, if we perfectly

*désirer guères chose avec ardeur parfaitement*

knew what we desire. [*connoître.*]

We should often be ashamed of our finest actions, if the

*souvent avoir honte beau action, f.*

world saw all the motives that occasion them.

*monde voir motif, m. produire*

### Upon the Construction of the MOODS.

XX. The tenses of the subjunctive mood, whether simple or compound, have always, or at least suppose before them, the conjunction *que*; or the relative *qui*, except in some few sentences of *wishing*, wherein the present is used without *que*: as, *fasse le Ciel*, &c.

XXI. These Conjunctions govern the Subjunctive.

|                              |                         |                          |                      |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>fin que,</i>              | } that, to the end that | <i>non pas que,</i>      | not but              |
| <i>pour que,</i>             |                         | <i>ce n'est pas que,</i> | it is not but that.  |
| <i>avant que,</i>            | before.                 | <i>pourvu que,</i>       | } so, if, provided   |
| <i>sans que,</i>             | without that.           | <i>moyennant que,</i>    | } that.              |
| <i>bien que,</i>             | } though,               | <i>à moins que,</i>      | } unless.            |
| <i>quoique,</i>              |                         | } and                    |                      |
| <i>encore que,</i>           | } although.             | <i>si ce n'est que,</i>  |                      |
| <i>soit que,</i>             | whether and or.         | <i>pour peu que,</i>     | if, never so little. |
| <i>supposez que,</i>         | suppose that.           | <i>bien entendu</i>      | } with a proviso     |
| <i>supposons que,</i>        | let us suppose that     | <i>que,*</i>             | } that.              |
| <i>posez le cas que,</i>     | put the case that       | <i>à condition</i>       | } upon condition     |
| <i>à la bonne heure que,</i> | } I grant               | <i>que,</i>              | } that.              |
| <i>au cas que,</i>           |                         | } that, &c.              | <i>excepté que,</i>  |
| <i>en cas que,</i>           | } in case that, or if.  | <i>hormis que,</i>       | } save that.         |
| <i>non que,</i>              |                         | not that.                |                      |
|                              |                         | <i>si non que,</i>       | but that.            |
|                              |                         | <i>de peur que,</i>      | for fear that.       |

(a) Turn, I should wish to be able to serve you.

\* *Bien entendu que*, and *à condition que*, are also construed with the future and conditional.



de crainte que, lest,  
 loin que,\* far.  
 bien loin que,\* very far from.  
 tant s'en faut } it is so far from.  
 bien que,\* }  
 tant s'en faut } we, he, they,  
 bien que, } people, &c. are  
 so far from.

Malgré que, for all that.  
 nonobstant que } notwithstanding that.  
 Dieu veuille que, God grant.  
 Plaise, or Plût } Would to God  
 à Dieu que, }  
 A Dieu ne } God forbid.  
 plaise que, }

XXII. Verbs of *willing, wishing, commanding, permitting, prohibiting, and hindering; asking, desiring, beseeching, and entreating; fearing, doubting, suspecting, admiring, wondering; being glad and rejoicing; sorry and grudging*: Verbs of *denying, and denoting ignorance, doubt, fear, wish, intention*; and, generally speaking, all verbs expressing some *desire, affection, passion, sentiment, or motion of the mind*, govern the subjunctive with the particle *que*. But when those verbs are attended by a noun or pronoun, expressing either their object or end, then they require the next verb in the infinitive with the particle *de*, as does likewise *se repentir*, to repent.

XXIII. Verbs denoting *belief or certainty* of something, as *assurer*, to assure; *être sûr*, to be sure; *affirmer*, to affirm; *croire*, *penfer*, to think; *gager*, *parier*, to lay a wager; *mettre en fait*, to take for granted; *soutenir*, to maintain; *prétendre* in the sense of *to maintain* (for in the sense of *being willing*, it governs the subjunctive); *jurer*, to swear; *montrer, faire voir*, to shew; *prouver*, to prove; *démontrer*, to demonstrate; or verbs signifying only *telling, foretelling, saying, seeing, foreseeing, conjecturing, presaging, declaring, certifying, notifying, signifying, intimating, setting forth, supposing*, (but not *proposing* and *voting*), *presuming, being sensible, perceiving, hearing, apprehending* (in the sense of *conceiving*, for in that of *fearing*, it governs the subjunctive), *knowing, understanding, hoping*, (though it signifies an affection of the soul), *reckoning, agreeing, confessing, owning, repuling, publishing, remembering, forgetting, promising, concluding, fancying, imagining, judging*, and such like, govern the indicative.

XXIV. But when the same verbs are used interrogatively, or with a negative, or with the particle *si*, there is a distinction to be made. If they signify merely *knowing, saying, hearing,*

\* These three are used in compound sentences, and require *que* before the second part of the sentence; but *Il s'en faut bien que* is used in simple sentences.

in short, express only their natural import, especially the verbs signifying *saying, telling, declaring, and affirming*, the next verb is put in the indicative; but they most commonly imply *doubt or ignorance* in those constructions, and therefore it is better to construe them with the subjunctive, if however the next verb is in the present, preterite, future, or their compounds; for in any other tense, it must commonly be left in the indicative.

You assure that he is an honest man, but we all doubt that  
*assurer honnête douter*  
 he is so.

He does not mind what you call him.

*prendre garde appeller.*

I have ordered supper to be got ready.

*ordonner souper, m. preparer. (a)*

If you say that he is not guilty, I believe you.

*dire coupable croire*

I believe that he does not intend to speak of it.

*croire avoir dessein de parler.*

I don't believe that he intends to speak of it.

Do you believe that he intends to speak of it?

Do you not believe that he intends to speak of it?

We wonder that he is not arrived yet.

*être surpris arrivé encore.*

I know that he is come. She | knows not | that he is come.

*savoir venu ignorer*

If you desire that he should do that, I will | take care | that

*souhaiter faire avoir soin.*

he shall do it.

He declares that he has not seen it, but I think he lies.

*déclarer voir croire mentir.*

Do you think he is capable of telling a lie? [*mentir.*]

He denies in vain that he has seen it, since I can prove that

*nier en vain puisque pouvoir prouver.*

he had it yesterday.

I believe that he will come. Do you think that he will come?

*croire venir croire.*

I don't believe he will come.

I did not think, or believe that he would come, or would have come.

(a) Turn, ordered that supper should be got ready, with the particle *on* besides.



I will have you come. Why won't you?

*vouloir*

(a)

What will you have me to do?

What would you have had me done?

I was told yesterday that you were married, but I could not believe that you had married so rashly as was reported.

*dire hier*

*marier*

*pouvoir*

*se marier si étourdiment*

*dire.*

I repent that he has done it, and wish it were to be done still:

*se repentir*

*souhaiter (b)*

*à*

*encore*

I would dissuade him from it, far from advising him to it.

*dissuader*

*loin de conseiller 1st fl.*

Did not you say that you would go to France?

*dire*

*aller.*

I wish you may succeed. I wish you would write.

*souhaiter*

*réussir*

*écrire.*

I hope that he will behave better, and please you.

*espérer*

*se comporter*

*plaire.*

I lay that she is | in the wrong. |

*gager*

*avoir tort.*

I maintain that he | is in the right. |

*soutenir*

*avoir raison.*

She is sorry that he is come. [*fâché.*]

They wonder that you refuse that place.

*s'étonner*

*refuser*

*place, f.*

He pretends that his orders should be executed.

*prétendre*

*ordre, m.*

*exécuter.*

I could never have thought that you had submitted to such

*jamais*

*croire*

*se soumettre*

hard terms.

*dur condition, f.*

I doubt that any philosopher ever knew the origin of the winds.

*douter*

*philosophe jamais connoître origine, f.*

*vent, m.*

I will undertake nothing before I have consulted wise people.

*entreprendre*

*que and ne*

*consulter sage gens.*

I did not know that you had learnt mathematics.

*savoir*

*apprendre mathématiques.*

You did not think that they had laid a snare for you.

*croire*

*tendre piège, m.*

You would have taken it amiss if we had acted contrary to

*trouver mauvais*

*contredire, 3d fl.*

your orders. [*ordre, m.*]

(a) The verb *come* must be repeated in *French*.

(b) *I wish* before any preterite or conditional, is made in *French* by the conditional *I should wish*.

XXV. The following verbs impersonal govern the subjunctive with *que* :

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Il faut</i> , must.  | <i>beau</i> , fine.                    |
| <i>il convient</i> , it becomes.  | <i>chagrinant</i> , vexatious.         |
| <i>il importe</i> , it concerns.  | <i>cruel</i> , cruel.                  |
| <i>il est important</i> , <i>il est de conséquence</i> , it is of moment, or consequence.                   | <i>dangereux</i> , dangerous.          |
| <i>il n'y a pas moyen</i> , there is no possibility.  | <i>difficile</i> , difficult.          |
| <i>il y a de l'honneur</i> , or <i>du dés-honneur</i> , there is honour, credit, or discredit and disgrace. | <i>divertissant</i> , diverting.       |
| <i>il y a de la gloire</i> , or <i>il y a de la honte</i> , there is glory or shame, &c.                    | <i>doux</i> , sweet, pleasant.         |
| <i>il est à propos</i> , it is fit.   | <i>douloureux</i> , grievous.          |
| <i>il est expédient</i> , it is proper, meet  | <i>dur</i> , hard.                     |
| <i>il est nécessaire</i> , it is needful.   | <i>disgracieux</i> , unpleasant.       |
| <i>d'une nécessité absolue</i> , of an absolute necessity.  | <i>ennuyeux</i> , tedious.             |
| <i>il est bienfaisant</i> , it is fitting.  | <i>étonnant</i> , astonishing.         |
| <i>de la bienfaisance</i> , seemly.   | <i>facile</i> , easy.                  |
| <i>il est décent</i> , it is decent.  | <i>fâcheux</i> , sorrowful.            |
| <i>il est de la décence</i> , it is comely.   | <i>glorieux</i> , glorious.            |
| <i>il est indécent</i> , it is unseemly.  | <i>gracieux</i> , graceful, agreeable. |
| <i>il est convenable</i> , it is expedient, suitable.   | <i>heureux</i> , happy, lucky.         |
| <i>il est</i> , with these other adjectives:  | <i>honteux</i> , shameful.             |
| <i>agréable</i> , agreeable, pleasant.  | <i>impossible</i> , impossible.        |
| <i>aisé</i> , easy.   | <i>indifférent</i> , indifferent.      |
| <i>affligeant</i> , afflicting.   | <i>mortifiant</i> , mortifying.        |
|   | <i>possible</i> , possible.            |
|   | <i>plaisant</i> , odd, droll.          |
|   | <i>sensible</i> , sensible.            |
|   | <i>surprenant</i> , surprising.        |
|   | <i>triste</i> , sad.                   |
|   | <i>vilain</i> , ugly.                  |
|   | <i>juste</i> , just, fair.             |
|   | <i>injuste</i> , unjust, unfair.       |
|   | <i>malheureux</i> , unlucky.           |
|   | <i>malaisé</i> , difficult.            |

But observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, That *il est* with these adjectives may be turned into *c'est une chose*. 2<sup>dly</sup>, That the same verbs impersonal, except *il y a*, and *il faut*, which latter requires no preposition, govern the infinitive with *de*, when they don't the subjunctive with *que*; which usually happens when they are attended by a pronoun.

XXVI. The following verbs impersonal govern the indicative with *que* :



|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>il semble</i> , it seems.            | <i>on croit</i> , it is thought.      |
| <i>il paroît</i> , it appears.          | <i>on croiroit</i> , one would think, |
| <i>il y a apparence</i> , it is likely. | and all other impersonals             |
| <i>il est</i> , it is, with these ad-   | formed with <i>on</i> .               |
| jectives :                              | <i>indubitable</i> , unquestionable.  |
| <i>avéré</i> , averred or evidenced.    | <i>manifeste</i> , manifest.          |
| <i>clair</i> , clear.                   | <i>palpable</i> , palpable.           |
| <i>évident</i> , evident.               | <i>sensible</i> , plain, sensible.    |
| <i>constant</i> , constant.             | <i>sûr</i> , sure.                    |
| <i>on dit</i> , they say.               | <i>visible</i> , obvious.             |

As likewise all verbs impersonal, denoting a positive certainty of something; but when the same impersonals cease to denote a positive certainty of the thing, which happens when they are used interrogatively, or with a negative, or with the particle conditional *si*, if, whether, they then govern the subjunctive.

XXVII. When the impersonal *il semble* meets with a noun, or pronoun, governed either as object or end, the following verb must not be in the subjunctive, but in the indicative with *que*, or in the infinitive without any particle at all; whereas, without a pronoun before the impersonal, or a noun after it, the subjunctive mood must be used.

XXVIII. The subjunctive is used after the relative *qui*, when it comes after a superlative, or negative, and generally after any relation of that relative, between two verbs, so it denotes *desire*, *wish*, *want*, or *necessity*; but when the relative *qui* denotes no *desire*, *wish*, &c. the next verb must be put in the indicative.

It is true that Miss A. is to have a large fortune, but she is  
*il vrai Mademoiselle (a) gros bien, m.*  
 also exceedingly ugly. No matter, it is astonishing that nobody  
*aussi richement laid n'importe étonnant*  
 has asked her in marriage | as yet. | It is fitting that somebody  
*demandeur en mariage encore bien seyant*  
 should enjoy her fortune with her. It is a shameful thing  
*jouir, 2d ft. bien, m. avec honteux*  
 that tis otherwise. [*autrement.*]

I appears that she is not inclined to marry.

*paroître porté se marier.*

(a) *Is* is only the sign of the future of the next verb.

It is grievous (or) 'tis a sad thing for a young lady, that a man  
*douloureux* *fâcheux* pour jeune demoiselle, f.  
 courts her for the sake of her fortune. However, it is not  
*faire l'amour*, 3d ft. *pour amour bien*, m. *cependant*  
 impossible that such a sweetheart should make a good husband.  
*impossible* *galant*, m. *faire bon mari*, m.

On the contrary, it is very possible for her to be happy with him.  
*au contraire* *très possible* (a) *heureux avec*.  
 It concerns the state that industrious people should be  
*il importe* 3d ft. *état* *industrieux gens*, m.  
 encouraged. [*encouragé*.]

It is unjust that a man who deserves well of the public should  
*injuste* *mériter bien* *public*, m.  
 not be rewarded. [*recompensé*.]

It is proper for you to take your precautions.

*à propos* (b) *prendre précaution*, f.

It is no wonder if I don't look so young.

*surprenant* *paraître jeune*.

It is very indifferent whether a man can dance or not; but  
*fort indifférent* *savoir danser ou non*  
 there is an absolute necessity that his mind should be formed.  
 (c) *absolu nécessité*, f. *esprit*, m. *formé*.

It is obvious that most people are of a contrary opinion; it  
*visible* *homme* *contraire opinion*, f.  
 seems to them that dancing, gaming, hunting, and the ordinary  
*sembler* *danse*, f. *jeu*, m. *chasse*, f. *ordinaire*  
 pleasures of life are what constitute happiness; and 'tis certain  
*plaisir*, m. *vie*, f. *constituer bonheur*, m. *certain*  
 that they have not a true notion of things.  
*vrai idée*, f. *chose*, f.

If it is true that they have false notions of things, in what then  
*se vrai* *faux idée*, f. *chose*, f. *en* *donc*  
 does happiness consist? It is very certain that we can make  
*bonheur*, m. *consister* *bien certain* *pouvoir faire*  
 our happiness, and that it is within ourselves.  
*bonheur*, m. *au dedans de*.

It is not true that we can make it entirely ourselves, and 'tis  
*vrai* *pouvoir faire entièrement*  
 surprising that the Stoicks | have thought | (if they ever be-  
*surprenant* *Stoïcien*, m. *se persuader* *jamais*  
 lieved any thing so ridiculous) that one could be happy under  
*croire quelque chose*, (d) *ridicule* *pouvoir* *heureux avec*

(a) Turn, that she may be.

(b) Turn, that you should take.

(c) Turn, it is of.

(d) De is used after quelque chose.



the most sharp pains of the gout. Health and riches are not in  
*aigu douleur, f. goute, f. santé, f. richesses, f. en*  
 our power, but it seems that these outward goods are the least  
*pouvoir, m. sembler extérieur bien, m.*  
 ingredients of happiness. [*ingrédient, m.*]

It is unquestionable that it is so.

*indubitable ainsi.*

It is necessary for him to go there.

*nécessaire (a) aller.*

It is no wonder if I don't write as well as you.

*surprenant écrire bien.*

I wondered that he had done that.

*être surpris faire.*

He is the most agreeable man I know, and the least prepossessed  
*agréable connoître prévenu*

that I've ever seen.

*jamais voir.*

It seems that you know nothing, and that you have seen no-

*sembler savoir rien.*  
 body.

It seems to a | blind man | that | every thing | is dark.

*aveugle tout, m.*

I want a wife that is | tolerably well | as to | her person; but

*chercher femme, f. passable par rapport à personne, f.*

that has besides some common sense, and a little fortune.

*de plus commun sens, m. un peu bien, m.*

I see nobody but agrees that he is rash.

*convenir téméraire.*

You can do nothing that is more advantageous to you, nor

*rien, m. avantageux ni*

will turn more to your credit. (b)

He has said nothing that ought to | make you angry. |

*dire rien, m. devoir mettre en colère.*

Do you assure me that he expects I will come?

*affirmer s'attendre venir.*

Nobody that I know of has told her of it.

*savoir dire.*

Tell him reasons that can convince him.

*dire raison pouvoir convaincre.*

There is nothing of which I have a greater mind, &c.

*il n'y a rien plus envie.*

That is not a thing of which they ought to speak to him in

*chose, f. on devoir parler dans*

(a) Turn, that he should go.

(b) Turn, will do you more honour (*faire honneur.*)

the condition wherein he is.

*état, m. ou.*

I pity people who don't know how to employ their time.

*plaindre gens savoir (a) employer tems, m.*

Chuse a friend whom you esteem, and who is able and willing

*choisir ami, m. estimer pouvoir vouloir*

to serve you in need,

*servir au besoin.*

Do'st thou think thou can'st find any woman that is with-

*s'imaginer pouvoir trouver femme, f. sans*

out fault? [*défaut.*]

I wonder that you could doubt one moment that 'tis she

*s'étonner pouvoir douter moment*

has troubled your mind.

*mettre trouble, m. ame, f.*

Do you imagine | that I am no longer fit to think of a wife? |

*vous semble-t-il plus propre songer, 3d ft. femme, f.*

Is there a man of thirty that appears more fresh and vigorous than

*trente ans paroître frais vigoureux.*

you see me? Does any body see me want either coach or chair

*voir avoir besoin carrosse chaise*

to carry me? Don't I eat my four meals a-day heartily? and

*(b) faire repas, m. jour vigoureusement*

can you find a stomach that has more strength than mine?

*voir estomac, m. force, f.*

## Upon the Government of VERBS.

XXIX. All French verbs active govern the accusative, as *il aime la vertu*, he loves virtue; and some govern also the dative, as *donnez cet argent à mon fils*, give this money to my son.

XXX. When a verb passive expresses an outward action, it commonly governs the accusative with the preposition *par*, as *il a été tué par son propre frère*, he has been killed by his own brother. When it expresses some inward action of the mind, it commonly governs the genitive and ablative, as *il est estimé de ses compatriotes*, he is esteemed by his countrymen: *il est haï de tout le monde*, he is hated by every body. And when it expresses an action both of the mind and body, it also commonly governs the

(a) How is not expressed in French.

(b) This must be made here in French by *cheminer*.



accusative with the preposition *par*; as, *ce poëme fut composé par Milton*, that poem was written by Milton.

XXXI. The verb *être*, to be, governs the nominative; as, *c'est un grand homme*, he is a great man.

XXXII. The absolute government of several verbs neuter is the nominative, as *il devient paresseux*, he grows lazy; and their respective regimen is the dative, as *cette maison appartient à mon père*, this house belongs to my father. As to the other verbs neuter, and especially most of those which are at the same time reflected, they govern the genitive and ablative, as *s'acquitter de son devoir*, to perform one's duty.

XXXIII. The verbs impersonal, *il s'agit*, *il y va*, *il s'ensuit*, govern the genitive: *il convient*, *il importe*, *il paroît*, *il plaît*, *il suffit*, govern the dative; and such of the others as have a regimen govern the nominative.

XXXIV. Verbs and adjectives signifying *fulness*, *emptiness*, *plenty*, or *want*, govern the genitive or ablative.

Her groans could not | move him to pity. |

*gémissement pouvoir attendrir.*

He does not approve of your scheme.

*approuver plan, m.*

I use my pencil. | She traduces every body. |

*se servir crayon, m. médire.*

We begg'd of her sister to tell nothing of it.

*supplier sœur, f. dire.*

I will abuse your patience no longer.

*abuser patience, f. long tems.*

They have agreed to their terms.

*convenir condition, f.*

She constantly scolds at him.

*toujours gronder.*

He does not disown what he has said. [*disconvenir.*]

If you have lost your book, look for it.

*perdre livre, m. chercher.*

Why don't you seek for your book?

*pourquoi chercher.*

Most rich people don't know how to enjoy life.

*riche gens, m. savoir (a) jouir vie, f.*

Don't you want your books?

*avoir besoin.*

(a) How is not here expressed in French.

They have been threatened with the Prince's resentment.  
*menacer.* Prince *ressentiment, m.*

In that extremity he thought of an expedient.  
*dans extrémité, f.* *s'avis* *expedient, m.*

I want every thing, but you want nothing.  
*manquer tout mais rien.*

He enquires about the freshest news.  
*s'informer.* *frais (a) nouvelle, f.*

Did you not perceive it. [*s'appercevoir.*]

He has also enquired after you,  
*aussi s'informer.*

They say that they care not for her threats.

He boasts of his nobility, and don't mind what is said of him.  
*se vanter noblesse, f.* *s'embarrasser.*

I am sensible that he mistrusts me, but he is diffident of  
*voir bien.* *se méfier* *se désier.*

every body.

We perceived the trick when it was too late.  
*s'appercevoir* *tour, m.* *quand trop tard.*

They wondered at her impudence, and took hold of her.  
*s'étonner* *impudence, f.* *se saisir.*

She made him recant what he had said before.

He pretends to generosity, and she starves her family.  
*faire retracter.* *dire auparavant.*  
*se piquer.* *générosité* *faire mourir de faim famille, f.*

I teach him French, and he learns very well.

*enseigner François, m.* *apprendre fort bien.*

I have returned my friend the money which he lent me  
*rendre* *ami, m.* *argent, m.* *prêter*

some time ago. [*il y a quelque tems.*]

I have no pity on the misery of those who, being young and  
*avoir pitié* *misère, f.* *jeune*

strong, | rather chuse | to beg than to work. But I pity the  
*fort* *aimer mieux* *gueuser* *travailler* *avoir pitié*

blind and the old people who cannot get | a livelihood. |

*aveugle* *vieux gens* *pouvoir gagner leur vie.*

Fools and madmen mock virtue, and ridicule wisdom.

*fol, m.* *fou* *se moquer vertu, f.* *tourner en ridicule sagesse, f.*

Don't laugh at others' misfortunes, instead of pitying them.

*se moquer autre* *malheur, m.* *au lieu de (b) avoir pitié.*

Rejoice with me at the good news I have received.

*se réjouir avec* *bon nouvelle, f.*

(a) This adjective must come after the substantive.

(b) *Au lieu de* governs the infinitive.



He did not remember his promise, but I made him remember  
*se ressouvenir, promesse, f. faire*  
 it——'Tis pleasant to remember past trouble.

*il est doux se ressouvenir passe peine, f.*  
 He rejoices at his wife's death, because he inherits a large  
*se réjouir femme, f. mort, f. parce que hériter, 2d ft. gros*  
 estate, which he is going to enjoy.  
*bien, m. aller jour.*

He abuses Fortune's favour, and don't use his victory with  
*abuser Fortune, f. faveur, f. user victoire, f. avec*  
 moderation. [*modération.*]

Death pities none, neither rich nor poor.

*mort, f. avoir pitié ni riche ni pauvre.*

God doth not love the death of the sinner; but he will have  
*Dieu aimer mort, f. pécheur, m. vouloir*  
 him repent for his sins, and live.

*se repentir péché vivre.*

The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>avoir</i> , to have, and <i>être</i> , to be. | <i>demeurer (à)</i> , } to stay, tarry, |
| to give one a                                    | <i>tarder (à)</i> , } delay to.         |
| <i>admettre (quel-</i> } fair hearing,           | <i>designer</i> , to design for.        |
| <i>qu'un) à se jus-</i> } and suffer             | <i>donner</i> , to give.                |
| <i>tifier,</i> } him to justifi-                 | <i>disposer</i> , to dispose.           |
|  | <i>dresser</i> , to train up.           |
| <i>enhardir</i> , to embolden.                   | <i>éclairer</i> , to light.             |
| <i>apprendre (à)</i> , to learn to.              | <i>employer (quel-</i> } to employ, set |
| <i>consister (à)</i> , to consist in.            | <i>qu'un à)</i> , } one to.             |
| <i>montrer</i> , to shew.                        | <i>encourager</i> , to encourage.       |
| <i>enseigner</i> , to teach.                     | <i>engager</i> , to engage.             |
| <i>apprêter (à)</i> } to afford matter           | <i>exciter</i> , to excite.             |
| <i>rire)</i> , } of laughing.                    | <i>inciter</i> , to incite.             |
| <i>assigner (à com-</i> } to summon, &c.         | <i>exercer</i> , to exercise.           |
| <i>paraître)</i> , } cite, to appear             | <i>exhorter</i> , to exhort.            |
| <i>autoriser</i> , to empower.                   | <i>habituer</i> , to use, accustom one. |
| <i>chercher (à)</i> , { to seek to, to           | <i>incliner</i> , to incline.           |
|  | <i>perdre</i> , to lose.                |
| <i>condamner</i> , to condemn.                   | <i>porter and pousser</i> } to induce,  |
| <i>contribuer</i> , to contribute.               | ( <i>quelqu'un à</i> } excite, spur     |
| <i>convier and inviter</i> , to invite.          | <i>agir,</i> ) } one to do.             |
| <i>dépenser (à)</i> , to spend in.               | <i>présenter</i> , to present.          |

The

The following verbs neuter require the preposition *à* before the next noun or infinitive.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Aboutir</i> , to come to, touch.                | <i>penfer and songer</i> } to think of      |
| <i>adhérer</i> , to adhere.                        | <i>(à faire un chose,)</i> } doing a        |
| <i>applaudir</i> , ( <i>à</i> } to applaud some-   | renoncer, to give over.                     |
| <i>quelqu'un</i> ), } body.                        | <i>resembler</i> , to resemble, be like.    |
| * <i>aider</i> , to help.                          | <i>rester (à rien</i> } to stand idle.      |
| <i>compatir</i> , to compassionate.                | <i>faire,)</i> }                            |
| <i>condescendre</i> , } to condescend,             | <i>subvenir (aux</i> } to relieve the       |
| } to comply with.                                  | <i>nécessiteux,)</i> } needy.               |
| <i>contrevenir</i> ( <i>aux</i> } to act contra-   | <i>insulter (aux</i> } to insult the un-    |
| <i>ordres,)</i> } ry to orders.                    | <i>miserables,)</i> } fortunate.            |
| <i>nuire</i> , ( <i>à autrui,)</i> to hurt others. | <i>survivre (à</i> } to outlive one, to     |
| <i>obéir (à quelqu'un,)</i> to obey one.           | <i>quelqu'un,)</i> } survive him.           |
| <i>désobéir</i> , to disobey.                      | <i>s'abandon-</i> } to indulge, aban-       |
| * <i>plaire (à quel-</i> } to please one.          | <i>ner,</i> } don one's self.               |
| <i>qu'un,)</i> }                                   | <i>s'occuper (à</i> } to be taken with,     |
| <i>déplaire</i> , to displease.                    | <i>passer (son</i> } spend one's time       |
| <i>obvier (à des in-</i> } to obviate dif-         | <i>tems à,)</i> } in.                       |
| <i>convéniens,)</i> } ficulties.                   | <i>s'attacher, se</i> } to give, apply,     |
| * <i>pardonner</i> , to forgive.                   | <i>livrer (à une</i> } addict one's self    |
| <i>parvenir</i> , to arrive to, to get.            | <i>chose,)</i> } to a thing.                |
| <i>persister (à faire</i> } to persist in          | <i>s'adonner</i> , to give one's self.      |
| <i>quelque chose,)</i> } doing some-               | <i>s'appliquer</i> , to apply one's self.   |
| } thing.   | * <i>suffire</i> , to suffice, be enough.   |
| * <i>pourvoir (au</i> } to provide for             | <i>s'accoutumer,</i> } to accustom, or      |
| <i>salut de l'état,)</i> } the safety of           | <i>s'habituer, (à</i> } use one's self to.  |
| } the state.                                       | <i>s'endurcir (à</i> } to inure one's self  |
| <i>procéder (à élire,)</i> } to proceed to         | <i>la fatigue,)</i> } to hardships.         |
| } the election.                                    | <i>s'arrêter, s'amu-</i> } to stand up-     |
| <i>prétendre (à</i> } to aim at, to lay            | <i>ser, (à des baga-</i> } on trifles, to   |
| <i>une chose,)</i> } claim to a thing.             | <i>telles,)</i> } mind them.                |
| <i>tendre, viser</i> } to aim at an end.           | <i>s'attendre (à</i> } to expect to see.    |
| <i>(à un but,)</i> }                               | <i>voir,)</i> }                             |
| <i>travailler</i> , to work.                       | <i>s'engager,</i> } to take upon one's      |
| <i>jouer, (à tout</i> } to venture all, to         | } self.                                     |
| <i>perdre,)</i> } stake all at once.               | <i>se fier (à quelqu'un,)</i> to trust one. |
| <i>se mettre (à faire</i> } to go, fall,           | <i>se déterminer,</i> } to resolve up-      |
| <i>quelque chose,)</i> } set about some            | <i>se résoudre, (à</i> } on.                |
| } thing.   |   |

*s'opposer,*



|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>s'opposer</i> , to oppose.   | <i>s'appreter</i> , { (à faire) to prepare  |
| <i>resister</i> , to resist, withstand.                                 | <i>se préparer</i> , { quelque one's self   |
| <i>s'exposer</i> , to expose one's self.                                | <i>se disposer</i> , { chose; } for doing   |
| <i>se plaire</i> , or <i>prendre plaisir</i> (à) to delight in a thing. |   |
| <i>faire quelque chose</i> , } a pleasure in doing it.                  | <i>s'obstiner</i> , <i>s'opiniâtrer</i> (à faire quelque chose,) } To be obstinately bent, or resolved to do a thing. |

Observe that most of those verbs which require the preposition *à* before them, are commonly, and can always be, rendered into English by a gerund, with the preposition *in*, or *for*: as,

*Aidez moi à faire cela*, Help me to do that, or, in doing that.

*Elle prend plaisir à le faire enlever*.

She takes a pleasure in teasing him.

But \* *aider* and *pouvoir* take indifferently the 3d and 4th state of pronouns: as,

*Aidez-lui*, help him; *Aidez-le à faire*, help him to do that.

Hannibal's advice pleased King Antiochus.

*Annibal avis, m. plaire Roi, m. Antiochus.*

He | is not like | his father at all.

*ressembler père, m. du tout.*

It is a shameful thing for men to hurt their fellow-creatures.

*honteux nuire semblable.*

He applauds every thing he does, and complies with all

*applaudir tout ce que faire condescendre*

her desires. [*desir.*]

They did not know how to obviate those difficulties.

*savoir comment éviter inconvenient, m.*

Let's hurt nobody, and let's forgive our enemies: | these are |

*nuire pardonner ennemi c'est là*

the most effectual means to provide for the quietness of our life.

*efficace moyen, m. pour pouvoir repo, m.*

We do not easily withstand the allurements of pleasure.

*on aisement resister attrait, m. plaisir.*

If he outlives his brother, he is to have his place.

*survivre (a) emploi, m.*

\* *Plaire*, *pardonner*, and *suffire*, require the preposition *de*, and not *à*, before the infinitive; as, *il me plaît de faire cela*, I like or chuse to do that, &c.

(a) *Is* is only the sign of the future in the next verb.

They are so barbarous as to insult the unfortunate.

*barbare de insulter misérable.*

I trust every body till they cheat me.

*se fier jusqu'à ce que on tromper.*

He mistrusts every body, and trusts himself only.

*se méfier se fier ne and que.*

Children, obey not only your parents, but also your governors and masters, if you will obey God's commandments.

*Enfant obéir non seulement père & mère mais aussi gouverneur maître vouloir commandement.*

Far from using her endeavours to please her husband, she displeases him in every thing.

*loin de (a) faire effort pour plaire mari déplaire en.*

He thinks of the measures of the administration.

*penfer mesure, f. gouvernement, m.*

Give that unto Cæsar which is Cæsar's, and to God that

*rendre César appartenir Dieu.*

which is God's.

A little | is enough | for nature; nothing is enough for

*peu, m. suffire nature, f. rien*

covetousness. [*avarice.*]

Obeys the laws, opposes injustice, and resists the wicked.

*obéir loi, f. opposer injustice, f. résister méchant, m.*

Flattery can hurt nobody but him whom it pleases.

*flatterie, f. saurois nuire que plaire.*

*Verbs and Adjectives of wanting, filling, emptying, loading, unloading, investing, rejoicing, enjoying, depriving, spoiling, and a few others, construed in English with the particle with, require in French the particle de before the name of the thing wanted, filled, loaded, spoiled, &c. Verbs of abounding require en.*

Nature wants few things. She is content with little.

*nature, f. avoir besoin peu chose se contenter peu.*

Fill the bottle with wine, and the pot with water.

*emplir bouteille, f. vin, m. pot, m. eau, f.*

He deprived her of that pleasure.

*priver plaisir, m.*

The soldiers returned to the camp loaded with spoil.

*soldat, m. retourner camp, m. chargé butin, m.*

That place | is encompassed | on all sides with craggy rocks,

*place, f. entouré de tout côté escarpé rocher, m.*

[a] *Lien* governs the infinitive.

so



so that it needs no troops to defend it; such is the fruitful-  
*de sorte que avoir besoin troupe pour défendre* *fertilité, f.*  
 ness of the adjacent soil, that it is filled with its own riches:

*voison terroir, m. rempli propre richesses*  
 and such is the plenty of fountains and woods, that it is watered  
*quantité, f. source bois arrosé*  
 with abundance of rivulets; and wants not the diversions of  
*nombre infini ruisseau on n'y manque plaisir*  
 hunting. [*chasse, f.*]

Covetous men are tormented not only with a desire of in-  
*avare tourmenté non seulement désir, m.*  
 creasing what they have, but also with the fear of losing it.  
*augmenter mais encore crainte, f. perdre.*

If Fortune has blessed you with her gifts, if besides you are  
*Fortune, f. favorisé don, m. outre cela.*  
 endued with wit and judgment, don't be puffed up with pride  
*doué esprit jugement s'enfler orgueil*  
 and scornfulness. [*mépris.*]

Tomyris, Queen of the Scythians, ordered Cyrus's head  
*Reine, f. Scythe faire (a) tête, f.*  
 | to be cut off | and thrown into a vessel filled with human  
*trancher jeter dans vaisseau, m. plein humain*  
 blood, | thus upbraiding his cruelty: | "Glut thyself with  
*sang, m. en lui reprochant sa cruauté en ces termes rassasier*  
 blood, | which thou thirstest after, | and of which thou wast |  
*sang être altéré (b)*  
 insatiably desirous." | [*insatiable.*]

The kingdom of Bengal is one of the most fruitful countries  
*royaume, m. fertile pays, m.*  
 in the world for rice, sugar, spices, cotton, flocks, fowls, sheep,  
*monde ris sucre épices coton soie volaille bétail*  
 hogs, fish. But the countries north are much infested with  
*cochon poisson pays, m. au nord fort incommode*  
 elephants, tygers, &c. and the rivers swarm with crocodiles.  
*éléphant tigre rivière fourmiller crocodile.*

(a) The next verb after *faire* to order, is put in the infinitive without a preposition, and the object after the infinitive.

(b) This must be turned into French thus, *since you thirsted after it, and, &c.*

CHAP. XI.

*Upon the Particles De, A, Pour, before Infinitives.*

I. **M**ANY verbs neuter, or active in a neutral sense, or *r* flexed, govern the infinitive with the preposition *de*; and several of these verbs, if not all, are often rendered into English by a participle of the present, either absolutely, or with any of the prepositions, *of, from, with, &c.*

II. The following adjectives, commonly construed with *être*, require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive.

|                |               |                           |   |
|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|---|
| Etre,<br>to be | capable,      | capable.                  | } <i>de faire quelque chose,</i><br><i>to do something.</i> |
|                | incapable,    | incapable.                |   |
|                | content,      | contented, pleased        |   |
|                | mécontent,    | discontent, dissatisfied. |   |
|                | curieux,      | curious, inquisitive.     |   |
|                | digne,        | worthy.                   |   |
|                | indigne,      | unworthy.                 |   |
|                | satisfait,    | satisfied.                |   |
|                | assuré,       | assured.                  |   |
|                | sûr, certain, | sure, certain.            |   |
|                | incertain,    | uncertain.                |   |
|                | avide,        | greedy, covetous.         |   |
|                | joyeux,       | joyful.                   |   |
|                | ravi,         | overjoyed.                |   |
|                | aise, glad;   | bien-aise, very glad.     |   |
|                | fâché,        | sorry.                    |   |
|                | las, tired;   | fatigué, fatigued.        |   |
|                | ennuyé,       | wearry.                   |   |
|                | en état,      | in a state, condition.    |   |
|                | à la veille,  | upon the brink,           |   |
|                | sur le point, | or very near to.          |   |



III. The following substantives, chiefly construed with *avoir* without the article, require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive:

|                   |                 |                                   |  |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Avoir,<br>to have | congé,          | leave.                            | de faire quelque<br>chose, to do some-<br>thing. |
|                   | permission,     | permission.                       |  |
|                   | envie,          | a mind                            |  |
|                   | coutume, or     | } to use, or to be<br>used.       |  |
|                   | être accoutumé, |                                   |  |
|                   | besoin,         | } occasion for, be in need<br>of. |  |
|                   | dessein,        |                                   |  |
|                   | sujet,          | a design, to intend.              |  |
|                   | lieu,           | subject, occasion.                |  |
|                   | raison,         | reason, room.                     |  |
|                   | raison, reason, | to be in the right.               |  |
|                   | soin,           | care, to take care.               |  |
|                   | droit,          | a right.                          |  |
|                   | tort,           | to be in the wrong.               |  |
|                   | affaire,        | } occasion, stand in need<br>of.  |  |
|                   | occasion,       |                                   |  |
|                   |                 | an opportunity.                   |  |

As likewise all substantives construed with other verbs, either with or without an article, so that they do not signify or imply inclination, reluctancy, aptness, fitness, or unfitness: as, *J'ai eu beaucoup de peine à le faire.*

You are mistaken to think so. | I offer you to chuse.

*se tromper croire offrir choisir.*

They deserve to be encouraged who undertake to serve the

*mériter encouragé entreprendre servir*

public. | Tell him to bring it me.

*public dire apporter.*

Do you remember to have told him that?

*se souvenir dire.*

Bid him speak. He talks of going thither.

*dire parler parler aller.*

I desired her | to hold her tongue. |

*prier se taire.*

He cannot forbear gaming. | Try to comfort her.

*saurois s'empêcher jouer essayer consoler.*

He threatens to arrest her, but she does not care for being

*menacer faire arrêter se fâcher*

arrested. | I will endeavour to please him.

*s'efforcer plaire*

Since

Since | you have taken upon yourself | to do that, you will  
*puisque s'ingérer faire*  
 repent for having followed your head.

*se repentir suivre tête, f.*  
 I am glad to have seen her. I fear not to meet him.  
*bien aise voir craindre rencontrer.*

His father has written to him to come.  
*père, m. mander venir.*

He is incapable of using any body ill.  
*incapable traiter mal.*

He requires of you to ask her pardon.  
*exiger demander pardon.*

He is quite discouraged to see her against him.  
*tout à fait découragé contre.*

I tell you | beforehand | to take care of yourself.  
*dire d'avance prendre garde.*

He forewarns you to take your measures.  
*avertir prendre mesure.*

I am tired with writing.  
*las écrire.*

He is sure of succeeding in his undertaking.  
*sur réussir dans entreprise, f.*

I excuse you from seeing her | any longer | if you don't love  
*dispenser voir davantage aimer*  
 her: but I beg of you to tell me your reasons for not loving her.  
*supplier dire raison, f. (a)*

He was accused for not using her well, and I commend him  
*accusé traiter bien louer*  
 for justifying himself. [*justifier.*]

If you defer writing to him, he will be in pain not to hear  
*différer écrire en peine apprendre*  
 of you. [*de vos nouvelles.*]

He won't give me leave to go out. | It is time to rise.  
*vouloir donner permission sortir tems se lever.*

I will convince him of having wronged you, and persuade  
*convaincre faire tort persuader*  
 him to return your money.  
*rendre argent, m.*

When I proposed you to lend him money, I had some reasons  
*grand proposer prêter argent, m. raison*  
 to hope that you would have done him that kindness: and now  
*espérer faire plaisir, m. à présent*  
 I can't help reproaching you with ingratitude.  
*pouvoir s'empêcher reprocher ingratitude, f.*

(a) Turn, the reasons you have not to love her.



I had a mind to advise you not to go there, but I feared to  
*avoir envie conseiller aller appréhender*  
 displease you. [*déplaire.*]

I have no time to play. | He was obliged to do it.  
*tems, m. jouer obligé.*

I intend to make him pay me, but I should be sorry to trou-  
*avoir dessein faire payer (a) fâché mettre dans l'embarras*  
 ble him. Will you | take it upon you | to speak to him?  
*vouloir se charger.*

Since you refuse to oblige me, I will not give you leave to  
*puisque refuser obliger donner permission*  
 go out. [*sortir.*]

You have a fine opportunity to serve your friends.  
*beau occasion, f. servir ami, m.*

Permit me to tell you that you do very wrong to disobey him.  
*permettre dire faire fort mal désobéir.*

Endeavour to please your mother in every thing.  
*s'efforcer plaire mère en.*

Never promise to do a thing, when it is not in your power  
*jamais promettre chose, f. quand pouvoir*  
 to do it.

He presumes to think himself wiser than his betters.  
*avoir la présomption croire éclairé supérieur, m.*

He has forbid you to see her: when will you forbear going  
*défendre voir quand cesser aller*  
 there?

I have no cause to be angry with him: for he is not wont to  
*avoir sujet fâche contre can avoir coutume*  
 be idle.  
*pareilleux.*

When her husband, who had advised her to say nothing,  
*quand mari conseiller rien*  
 thought that she had done speaking, he desired her to withdraw,  
*croire achever parler prier se retirer*  
 which she refused to do. I have resolved, said she, to stay,  
*refuser faire résoudre dire résister*

| to the end. | Since you did not think proper to follow my  
*jusqu'au bout puisque juger à propos suivre*  
 advice, which was to say nothing at all, answered he, as you  
*avis, m. dire rien du tout répondre*  
 had promised me to do, I bid you go to your room again, and  
*promettre dire retourner chambre, f.*

(a) This must be turned thus in French, to make him pay what he owes  
 me; for the two pronouns cannot be construed with payer.

forbid you to stir, till you are called for. Then he blamed her  
*défendre bouger que (a) demander ensuite blâmer*  
 for exposing herself thus before so many people. But she  
*se commettre ainsi devant tant monde*  
 did not cease to represent to him how much it concerned her  
*cesser représenter combien il importer*  
 to maintain her right. Since you hinder me from staying, ad-  
*soutenir droit, m. puisque empêcher rester ajou-*  
 ded she, I recommend to you not to grant any thing that can  
*ter recommander ne accorder rien pouvoir porter*  
 prejudice my children.  
*prejudice enfant.*

IV. Several verbs active, neuter, and reflected, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, and are commonly rendered into English by a participle of the present tense, with the preposition *in* or *for*.

V. The following adjectives, commonly construed with *être*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, as likewise all nouns, both substantives and adjectives, signifying inclination, aptness, fitness, and unfitness.

|                |                      |                     |  |
|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|--|
| Etre,<br>to be | <i>adroit,</i>       | dexterous, skilful. | à faire quelque chose,<br>to do something. |
|                | <i>agréable,</i>     | agreeable.          |  |
|                | <i>agile,</i>        | agile, nimble.      |  |
|                | <i>admirable,</i>    | admirable.          |  |
|                | <i>ardent,</i>       | eager.              |  |
|                | <i>beau,</i>         | handsome, fine.     |  |
|                | <i>bon,</i>          | good.               |  |
|                | <i>diligent,</i>     | diligent.           |  |
|                | <i>doux,</i>         | sweet.              |  |
|                | <i>aisé, facile,</i> | easy.               |  |
|                | <i>enclin,</i>       | inclined, bent.     |  |
|                | <i>exact,</i>        | exact.              |  |
|                | <i>porté,</i>        | apt, addicted.      |  |
|                | <i>penché,</i>       | prone.              |  |
|                | <i>sujet,</i>        | subject, liable.    |  |
|                | <i>propre,</i>       | fit, qualified for. |  |
|                | <i>prêt,</i>         | ready.              |  |
|                | <i>prompt,</i>       | quick.              |  |
|                | <i>habile,</i>       | able, skilful.      |  |

(a) That *que* requires *ne* before the verb, which must be made by the active voice with *en*.



|                |             |   |  |
|----------------|-------------|---|--|
| Etre,<br>to be | lent,       | slow.                                   | à faire quelque chose,<br>to do something. |
|                | charmant,   | charming.                               |  |
|                | assidu,     | assiduous.                              |  |
|                | affreux,    | frightful.                              |  |
|                | effroyable, | dreadful.                               |  |
|                | horrible,   | horrible.                               |  |
|                | terrible,   | terrible.                               |  |
|                | hideux,     | hideous.                                |  |
|                | hardi,      | bold.                                   |  |
|                | honnête,    | honest.                                 |  |
|                | malhonnête, | dishonest.                              |  |
|                | civil,      | civil.                                  |  |
|                | incivil,    | uncivil, rude.                          |  |
|                | le premier, | the first.                              |  |
|                | le second,  | the second.                             |  |
|                | le dernier, | the last; and all adjectives of number. |  |

All mankind are condemned to die.

genre humain, m. condamné mourir.

He spends much money in building.

dépenser beaucoup argent bâtir.

He thinks of going soon to France, and even is preparing to

penfer aller bientôt France même se préparer

set out. [partir.]

That fruit is not good to eat.

fruit, m. bon manger.

That will contribute much to reclaim him from his bad course

contribuer beaucoup retirer mauvais train, m.

of life. [vie.]

They induce him to ask her pardon, but he is not inclined to

porter demander pardon (a) enclin

do it; he has too much pride for that.

trop orgueil pour.

They gave her to understand that he wanted to marry her,

donner entendre chercher épouser

and exhorted her to encourage his visits.

exhorter encourager visite, f.

He delights in doing good. | She is easy of persuasion.

se plaire faire bien facile persuader.

He authorizes her to treat him as | she pleases.

autoriser traiter comme il lui plaît.

(a) Turn, to ask pardon of her.

Help him to lift up that burden.

*aider lever fardeau, m.*

When she saw him she fell a crying.

*quand voir se mettre pleurer.*

He is liable to mistake, he is not infallible.

*sujet se tromper infallible.*

I have a letter to write, and he has nothing to do.

*avoir lettre, f. écrire rien faire.*

She learns to read, | He teaches writing.

*apprendre lire enseigner écrire.*

I engage myself to do it. | Are you ready to go?

*s'engager faire prêt partir.*

He has condemned her to live in the country.

*condamner vivre à campagne, f.*

They are not qualified to teach French.

*propre enseigner François, m.*

That seed is good for sowing.

*graine, f. semer.*

We invited them once to sup with us.

*inviter une fois souper.*

I am used to sup late, and to go to bed an hour after.

*accoutumé souper tard aller coucher heure, f. après.*

I suspect him of loving gaming and drinking.

*souçonner aimer jouer boire.*

The question is difficult to solve. | I begin to breathe.

*question, f. difficile résoudre commencer respirer.*

You have much to fear, and little to hope.

*beaucoup craindre peu espérer.*

There is nothing so easy to learn as mathematics, and nothing

*il y a rien aisé apprendre mathématiques, f.*

so difficult to learn as languages.

*difficile langue, f.*

Men are not only inclined to learn, but also to teach.

*seulement enclin apprendre aussi enseigner.*

Use yourself, when you are young, to practise virtue. It will

*s'accoutumer pendant que jeune pratiquer vertu, f.*

help you to bear patiently the evils that are unavoidable.

*aider souffrir patiemment mal, m.*

'Tis easy to say, and fine to see.

*c'est aisé dire beau voir.*

The praise that is given us, serves at least to fix us in the

*louange, f. donner servir au moins fixer dans*

practice of virtue.

*pratique, f. vertu, f.*

Instead of presuming to make us happy, instruct us only to

*au lieu de présumer rendre heureux enseigner seulement*

be easy. [tranquille.]



VI. The preposition *for* coming before a participle of the present is rendered into French by *pour*.

VII. Whenever the particle *to*, coming before an infinitive, can as well be rendered by *for to*, *in order to*, with the infinitive; or *to the end that*, or only *that*, with the indicative or subjunctive; or *for*, with the participle of the present tense; it is rendered into French by *pour*.

VIII. The verb coming after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*, always require the preposition *pour* before it.

Men are born to labour, and birds to fly.

*né travailler oiseau voler.*

There is a time to act, and a time to rest.

*il y a tems, m. agir se reposer.*

He will do | any thing | to oblige you.

*faire tout obliger.*

He is too wise to behave otherwise.

*trop sage se conduire autrement.*

I called yesterday | at your house | to see you; and your

*passer hier chez vous voir*

man told me that you were gone into the country to buy horses.

*valet dire aller à campagne, f. acheter cheval, m.*

He has not health enough to undertake it.

*santé, f. assez entreprendre.*

I will do all my endeavours to deserve the honour of your

*faire effort, m. mériter honneur, m.*

protection. [*protection, f.*]

She is too proud to marry that man.

*trop fier épouser.*

He has not interest enough to get that place.

*crédit, m. assez obtenir emploi, m.*

I am sorry my wife and daughters were not at home to receive

*fâché femme, f. fille, f. au logis recevoir.*

you.

You understand the world too well, to be guilty of any

*savoir, f. monde, m. trop commettre*

rudeness. [*incivilité, f.*]

I have written to him to desire him to send me an order to

*écrire prier envoyer ordre, m.*

draw upon some merchant for the money he owes me.

*tirer sur marchand, m. (a) argent, m. devoir.*

Men find means to cure madness, but they find none to set.

*on trouver moyen, m. guérir folie, f. redresser*

(2) *For* is not expressed.

*a crois-*

| a cross-grained mind | right again.

*un esprit de travers.*

Having left his son Seleuchus with the land-forces to rebuild

*laissé, fils, m. avec terre troupe, f. rebâtir*

Lymachia, he sailed away with all his fleet, after he had sent

*Lymachie mettre à la voile avec flotte, f. après envoyer*

ambassadors to Quinctius, to treat about an alliance.

*ambassadeur, m. traiter, de alliance, f.*

IX. These following verbs will have no preposition before the next infinitive :

|                     |                       |  |                    |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--|--------------------|
| <i>aimer mieux,</i> | to have rather.       | <i>considérer,</i>                             | to consider.       |
| <i>aller,</i>       | to go.                | <i>espier,</i>                                 | to spy.            |
| <i>envoyer,</i>     | to send.              | <i>reconnoître,</i>                            | to acknowledge.    |
| <i>déclarer,</i>    | to tell.              | <i>paraître,</i>                               | to appear.         |
| <i>assurer,</i>     | to assure.            | <i>sembler,</i>                                | to seem.           |
| <i>publier,</i>     | to give out.          | <i>voir,</i>                                   | to see.            |
| <i>rapporter,</i>   | to report.            | <i>regarder,</i>                               | to look at.        |
| <i>affirmer,</i>    | to affirm, assert.    | <i>s'imaginer,</i>                             | to fancy.          |
| <i>avouer,</i>      | to own.               | <i>faire,</i>                                  | to make, to cause. |
| <i>confesser,</i>   | to confess.           | <i>laisser,</i>                                | to let, to leave.  |
| <i>déposer,</i>     | to depose, say, tell. | <i>daigner,</i>                                | to deign.          |
| <i>soutenir,</i>    | to maintain.          | <i>paraître,</i>                               | to be like.        |
| <i>nier,</i>        | to deny.              | <i>prétendre,</i>                              | to pretend.        |
| <i>croire,</i>      | to think, believe.    | <i>oser,</i>                                   | to dare.           |
| <i>compter,</i>     | to expect, rely.      | <i>dévoir,</i>                                 | to owe, to be.     |
| <i>espérer,</i>     | to hope.              | <i>pourvoir,</i>                               | to be able.        |
| <i>écouter,</i>     | to hear.              | <i>savoir,</i>                                 | to know.           |
| <i>entendre,</i>    |                       | <i>valoir mieux,</i>                           | to be better.      |
| <i>ouïr,</i>        | to perceive.          | <i>vouloir,</i>                                | to be willing.     |
| <i>appercevoir,</i> |                       | <i>il faut, il falloit, il faudra, &amp;c.</i> | must.              |
| <i>observer,</i>    | to observe.           |  |                    |

X. The verbs *dire*, to say or tell; *désirer*, to wish; *souhaiter*, to wish; and *venir*, to come; commonly will have no preposition before the next infinitive; but sometimes the three first take the preposition *de*, and the last the preposition *à*, especially when it is used impersonally.

XI. When the verb *aimer mieux* is followed by *que*, it requires *de* after *que* before the other verb.

You come to beg leave. I cannot walk.

*venir demander permission saurois marcher.*

He



He sent to ask help. I will go and see.  
*envoyer demander secours, m. aller (Turn, and by to) voir*  
 All would learn, but all will not take pains.  
*tout vouloir apprendre prendre peine, f.*  
 If he thinks to manage them, he is mistaken.  
*croire venir à bout et f. se tromper.*  
 He declares to have seen it. She knows how to do that.  
*déclarer voir savoir faire.*  
 She did not vouchsafe to answer me.

*daigner répondre*  
 It is better to get little than nothing.  
*il vaut mieux gagner peu (a) rien.*  
 Do you pretend to become a learned man?  
*prétendre devenir savant.*  
 I dare not speak to her. I let her do as she lists.  
*oser parler laisser faire comme vouloir.*  
 Few people know how to be old.  
*peu gens savoir vieux.*

Send your maid to desire her to come to work with you; or  
*envoyer servante, f. prier venir travailler avec*  
 rather I will go myself, and tell her you want to speak to her.  
*plutôt aller (b) dire vouloir.*  
 I rather chuse to send the maid to her, than give you the  
*aimer mieux servante, f. donner*  
 trouble to go there. [*peine, f.*]

If you are desirous to see him, and are willing to strike a bargain  
*souhaiter voir vouloir faire marché, m.*  
 with him, I can find one who will recommend you to his brother  
*avec pouvoir trouver quelqu'un recommander frère, f.*

### More Exercises upon the Particles De, A, Pour.

It is more necessary to study men than books.  
*il nécessaire étudier livre, m.*  
 Our chief study ought to be to learn how to be able to know  
*principale étude, f. devoir apprendre pouvoir connoître.*  
 men.

The greatest wisdom of a man consists in knowing his follies.  
*grand sagesse, f. consister connoître folie, f.*  
 Men aim more in their studies to make a shew in the  
*chercher dans étude, f. paroître dans*

(a) To get, must be repeated in French, with nothing.

(b) And is not expressed here in French. I will go, is made by I am going  
 to go myself.

world, than to enlighten and cultivate their minds, in order  
*monde, m. éclairer cultiver esprit, m.*

to judge of things rightly.

*juger chose, f. bien.*

He has never ceased to press me to tell my father that I was  
*jamaïs cesser presser dire*  
 ready to obey him. He has advised and conjured me, till at last  
*prêt obéir conseiller conjurer jusqu'à ce qu'enfin*  
 he has obliged me to promise it to him.  
*obliger promettre.*

My mistress has commanded me to desire you to come presently  
*maîtresse, f. commander prier venir tout à l'heure*  
 [to our house,] if you love her. She desires extremely to see  
*chez nous si aimer désirer passionément voir.*  
 you.

She wants to see me only because she has heard that they want  
*demande ne and que, parce que apprendre on vouloir*  
 to marry her. [*marié.*]

To be a great man, one must know how to improve all his  
*grand il faut savoir profiter*  
 good fortune. [*fortune, f.*]

The Prince for virtues which they have not, is abusing  
*louer Prince, m. vertu, f. c'est dire des injures*  
 them with impunity. [*impunément.*]

Oftentimes the desire of being thought capable hinders peo-  
*souvent désir, m. paraître capable empêcher*  
 ple from becoming so, because they are more desirous to shew  
*devenir parce que avoir envie faire*  
 what they know, than to learn what they don't know.  
*voir savoir apprendre savoir.*

Old people love to give good precepts, to comfort themselves  
*vieux gens, f. (a) aimer donner précepte, m. se consoler*  
 for not being able any more to give bad examples.  
*être en état donner mauvais exemple, m.*

They will force me to take another course.  
*obliger prendre autre mesures, f.*  
 They will oblige me if they take another course. (b)  
 I am obliged to tell you that you are mistaken.  
*obliger se tromper.*

My duty obliges me to do it.  
*devoir, m. obliger.*

That man begins to give himself over to dangerous excesses.  
*commencer se porter dangereux excès, m.*

(a) *Gens* is masculine before the adjective, and feminine after it.

(b) If they must be made by the infinitive in French.



The highwayman obliged us to change our way.  
*voleur, m. de grand chemin obliger changer de route.*

I was obliged to see | a great deal of company | yesterday.  
*beaucoup de monde hier*

The intention of never imposing exposes us oftentimes to be  
*intention, f. jamais tromper exposer souvent*  
 imposed upon.

The desire of deserving the praises that are given us strength-  
*désir, m. mériter louange, f. fortifier*  
 ens our virtue; and those that are given to wit, courage and  
*vertu, f. esprit, m. courage, m.*

beauty, contribute to increase them.  
*beauté, f. contribuer augmenter.*

It is difficult to define love. What can be said of it is, that in  
*difficile définir amour, m. pouvoir dans*  
 the soul it is a sympathy; and in the body | it is nothing but  
*ame, f. sympathie, f. corps, m. ce n'est que*  
 | a secret desire of enjoying what one loves.  
*caché envie, f. jouir aimer.*

There are divers sorts of curiosity: one of interest, which  
*il y a divers sorte, f. curiosité, f. intérêt, m.*  
 incites us to desire to learn what can be useful to us; and the  
*porter désirer apprendre pouvoir utile*  
 other of pride, which proceeds from the desire of knowing  
*autre orgueil, m. venir désir, m. savoir*  
 what others are ignorant of. [*ignorer.*]

The love of glory, the fear of shame, the design of making  
*amour, m. gloire, f. crainte, f. honte, f. dessein, m. faire*  
 one's fortune, the desire of making our life comfortable and  
*fortune, f. désir, m. rendre vie, f. doux*  
 pleasant, and that of humbling others, are often the causes of  
*agréable abaisser souvent cause, f.*  
 that valour | so much | celebrated among men.  
*valeur, f. si célébré parmi.*

## •CHAP. XII.

### Upon PARTICIPLES.

I. **T**HE participle of the present tense is always indeclinable.

II. We often express with a conjunction and a tense of the indicative, what is expressed with a participle in other languages, in order to avoid the ambiguity that may arise from the participle being indeclinable. Thus, instead of saying, *Je les rencontrés courant la poste*, I met them riding post; we say, *Je les ai*

*se rencontrés qui couraient la poste*, because *courant* may as well refer to the subject *je*, as to the object *les*.

II. The participle of the present sometimes takes the preposition *en* before it, as in English *in* and *by*. It answers to the gerund of the *Latins*, and can be resolved by the conjunctions *when*, *whilst*, and *as*, with a tense of the indicative.

IV. When the pronoun *en* meets with a participle, it is put after it, and not before, as it should if the participle were resolved by a tense of the indicative, in order to avoid the equivocation that may be occasioned by *en* pronoun and *en* preposition: as, *il le pria d'instruire son fils voulant en faire un savant, comme il en vouloit*, &c.

V. The participle in *ing*, so much used in *English* with the particles *a*, *an*, *the*, or nothing before it, or with *of* after, is rendered into *French* by a noun and a verb, or an infinitive, when it comes after a verb with *a* or *an*: as, *il est allé se promener*.

VI. When the participles of the preterite meet with substantives, they are mere adjectives, and agree with them in number and gender.

VII. The participle of the preterite is declinable, 1<sup>st</sup>, when it comes after the verb *être*, considered only as a verb substantive, or (what is the same) when the participle is an adjective annexed to the subject. 2<sup>dly</sup>, It is declinable, when the tense compound, either of *avoir* or *être*, is preceded by a pronoun relative in the accusative, governed as object, such as *que*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, or by a noun with a pronoun interrogative.

VIII. The participle of the preterite is indeclinable, 1<sup>st</sup>, after the verb *avoir*, when this verb has no pronoun in the accusative before it. 2<sup>dly</sup>, When its nominative comes after it. 3<sup>dly</sup>, When it governs and is placed before an infinitive, without a preposition between them. 4<sup>thly</sup>, After a verb conjugated in its compounds with the verb *être*, and governing a conjunctive pronoun in the dative. 5<sup>thly</sup>, When, in the same sentence, it is followed by *que* or *qui*. 6<sup>thly</sup>, In the verbs impersonal.

A diligent boy is always learning, not only whilst the *diligent* *écolier*, m. *toujours apprendre non seulement pendant que* master is teaching, but also while the other boys are playing. *notre enseigner encore* *jouer*.

She can't help drinking strong liquors.

*saitrois s'empêcher boire fort* *liqueur*, f.

The learning of languages is very hard.

*étude*, f. *langue*, f. *bien difficile*.

Masters



Masters learn by teaching, as well as scholars by studying.  
*maitre, m. apprendre enseigner      écolier, m. étudier.*

She does wrong to go a visiting her friends instead of staying  
*faire mal    aller visiter    ami, m. au lieu de rester*  
 at home, when her husband is gone abroad.  
*au logis    quand    mari, m. sortir.*

He met them walking a great pace.

*rencontrer    marcher à grands pas.*

Women are changeable. He is busy. She is busy.

*femme    changeant    occupe.*

Alexander being near his death, asked his friends, standing

*Alexandre se trouver près (a) demander ami se tenir*  
 about him, whether they thought they could find a King like  
*autour de    si    croire    trouver Roi, m. comme.*  
 him.

You have chosen a very changeable colour.

*choisir    bien    changeant couleur, f.*

His aunt is more beloved than his mother.

*tante, f.    aimé.*

What names did he call you?

*dire des sottises, f.*

You want to know what names he has called me.

*vouloir    savoir    sottises, f.    dire.*

Bad news are always spread more quickly than good ones.  
*mauvais nouvelle, f. toujours se repandre promptement.*

They have killed one another. [*se tuer.*]

She has made away with herself. [*se defaire.*]

The letter which I have received does not mention it.

*lettre, f.    recevoir faire mention.*

That which I read this morning to you confirms it.

*lire    matin, m.    confirmer.*

None of the letters I have received, say one word of it. [*mot.*]

I have not seen the books you have bought.

*voir    livre, m.    acheter.*

The men I have visited in the prison are in good health, but

*visiter    prison, f.    en bon santé, f.*

those I have seen hang'd, were half dead, and very repenting.

*pendre    à demi mort    repentant.*

What a loss he has had in losing his brother!

*perte, f. faire perdre frère, m.*

The grief that his death has caused me. (b)

*douleur, f. mort, f. causer.*

The trouble this business has given me. (b)

*peine, f. affaire, f.*

(a) Death, must be made in French by its verb (to die) mourir.

(b) The subject may come after the verb in these two instances.

The laws which the ladies of his court had imposed on  
*loi dame, f. cour, f. s'imposer.*  
 themselves, &c.

She has made herself mistress of it.

*se rendre maîtresse, f.*

The nation has made itself mistress of the sea.

*nation, f. se rendre maîtresse, f. mer, f.*

The figures which you have learnt to draw.

*figure, f. apprendre tirer.*

I have rendered you all the services I could.

*rendre service, m. pouvoir.*

What services have you done me?

How many men commit the same faults again, which they

*combien or que retomber dans faute, f.*

had resolved to avoid!

*résoudre éviter.*

She found herself in danger of yielding, but calling her

*se trouver en danger succomber rappeler*

virtue to mind, she upbraided herself with her weakness.

*vertu, f. (a) se reprocher foiblesse, f.*

Her husband has left her, and is gone away. Yes, he has

*marri, m. laisser s'en aller oui*

abandoned us, his three daughters and me.

*abandonner fille, f.*

Has Glycerion found her friends? She has not found them.

*trouver parent, m.*

The play I have seen acted, did not take.

*pièce, f. voir représenter être goûté.*

She has given herself the trouble to go there.

*se donner peine, f. aller.*

The men they have obliged to work are gone.

*obliger travailler partir.*

I have lost the letter which he has wrote to me: but I have

*perdre lettre, f. écrire*

shewed it to you mother, who is very sorry for it.

*montrer mère, f. fâché.*

The faults your brothers have done are irreparable.

*faute, f. frère faire irréparable.*

I have not seen the alterations which she has caused to be made.

*voir changement, m.*

*faire faire.*

His sisters are busy in drawing.

*sœur, f. occupé dessiner.*

My wife has got her picture drawn.

*femme, f. se faire tirer.*

(a) To mind is not expressed in French.

They



They have made themselves masters of the citadel.

*se rendre*                      *maître, m.*                      *citadelle, f.*

This misfortune has almost ruined them, but it has made

*malheur, m.*                      *presque ruiner*                      *malheur*

them wise. [*sage.*]

'Tis a new sort of powder which I have learned to make.

*c'est* (a) *sorte, f.* *poudre, f.*                      *apprendre faire.*

'Tis a consequence which I have always thought they would

*c'est conséquence, f.*                      *toujours croire*

infer. | She is turned a nun.

*tirer*                      *se faire religieuse.*

They have surrendered. The garrison has surrendered.

*se rendre*                      *garnison, f.*

They have surrendered themselves prisoners. [*prisonnier.*]

My sisters went to bed last night very much out of order:

*sœur, f.* *aller se coucher hier au soir fort*                      *indisposé*

but they have found themselves quite well again | when they

*se trouver*                      *tout à fait bien*

waked. [*à leur réveil.*]

All those women have been accused of having robbed: they

*femme, f.*                      *accusé*                      *volé*                      *on*

have been tried: and they have been condemned to die, except

*faire le procès à*                      *condamné*                      *mourir excepté*

one that has been found not guilty.

*se trouver*                      *innocent.*

Have you not a mind to practise the virtues which you have

*avoir*                      *envie*                      *pratiquer*                      *vertu, f.*

heard commended?

*entendre louer.*

What enemies has he not brought upon himself?

*se faire des ennemis.*

Why did you deviate from the road which you had begun

*s'écarter*                      *route, f.*                      *commencer*

to follow? [*suivre.*]

Letters and writing have been invented to represent speech,

*lettre, f.*                      *écriture, f.*                      *inventer*                      *peindre parole, f.*

and to speak to the eyes. [*oeil, m.*]

We ought to spend no day without giving some time to that

*devoir*                      *passer jour, m.* *sans*                      *temps*

science which we have proposed to study.

*science, f.*                      *se proposer étudier.*

The people whom you thought alive.

*personne, f.*                      *croire (b) être en vie.*

(a) New is *nouveau-elle*, and not *neuf-ve*.

(b) This verb must be made by the compound of the present.

The punishment which has been inflicted upon him was not  
*peine, f.* *faire souffrir*  
 great enough for the wicked action which he meant to commit.  
*assez méchant action, f.* *vouloir (a) commettre.*

She has put out her eyes. [*se crever les yeux.*]  
 She has been sure not to speak within the house, but when  
*se bien garder dans maison, f.* *quand*  
 she was without, she began to cry out from the middle of the  
*sortir se mettre (a) crier milieu*  
 street to the people that were within.  
*rue, f.* *gens dedans.*

Perfidious wretch, who can be bound neither by the faith  
*perfide (b) pouvoir retenu ni foi, f.*  
 which he has given her, nor the oaths he has made, nor the  
*donner serment, m.*  
 compassion of seeing near her time the poor unfortunate girl he  
*compassion, f.* *voir près de terme, m.* *pauvre malheureux, f.* (b)  
 had ruined. [*deshonorer.*]

I have received the letters which you had written to me about  
*recevoir lettre, f.* *écrire au sujet*  
 the affair which I had proposed to you; and after reading them  
*de affaire, f.* *proposer après (c)*  
 attentively, I have found that if I had undertaken it, I should  
*avec attention reconnoître entreprendre*  
 have met with obstacles that I had not foreseen.  
*trouver obstacle, m.* *prévoir.*

The Romans | enlarged their country | by the defeat of their  
*Romain, m.* *s'aggrandir (d) par défaite, f.*  
 neighbours. [*voisin, m.*]

Men have built cities for their safety.  
*se bâtir ville, f.* *sûreté, f.*

The Amazons have made themselves famous by their courage  
*mazonnes, f.* *se rendre célèbre par courage*  
 in war. [*dans guerre, f.*]

Lucretia | made away with herself, | not being able to outlive  
*Lucrece se donner la mort (e)* *pouvoir survivre*  
 the affront which she had received from Tarquin. [*affront, m.*]

The remembrance of the pains which we have suffered, and  
*souvenir, m.* *peine, f.* *souffrir*

(a) This verb must be made by the compound of the present.

(b) This substantive is not expressed, and the adjective is used substantively.

(c) Turn, having read.

(d) This verb must be made by the compound of the present tense.

(e) The participle here is indeclinable, because the tense compound does not govern *se*, as its object, but *la mort*; and *se* is only the end, in the derivative (*qui*.)



the dangers | we have run thro' | is pleasant, because, 'tis good  
*danger, m. courir agréable parce que c'est bien, m.*  
 to be delivered from them.  
*que délivré.*

The Cardinal represented the vast pains he had taken, and  
*Cardinal, m. représenter infini peine, f. prendre*  
 the important services he had done to the state, which had only  
*important services, m. rendre état, m. ne and que*  
 created him enemies. [*produire ennemi.*]

## C H A P. • XIII.

### On Impersonal Verbs.

I. **T**HE impersonal *il faut*, always requires after it either the subjunctive with *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition. It denotes the necessity of doing something, and is Englished by *must*, for the present tenses *il faut* and *qu'elle faille*; the imperfect *il falloit*, and the preterite *il fallut*; by *shall*, for the future; and *should*, for the conditional; and sometimes by the verb *to be*, through all its tenses, with one of these words, *necessary, requisite, useful*.

In order, therefore, to put into French any English expressed by *must, shall, or should*, or by *'tis, 'twas necessary, requisite, needful*, one must begin the sentence with a tense of the impersonal *il faut que*; then the pronoun, or noun, coming before *must* or *should*, must become the subject of the French verb that comes after *il faut que*, and is governed in the subjunctive: as, *il faut que les officiers fassent leur devoir*; the officers *must* do their duty.

II. *Il faut* before an infinitive denotes the necessity of doing something in general, without specifying *who must*; then the subject coming before *must*, may be either *I or we, he or she, or any body*, according to the sense of the speech; as, *il faut faire cela*.

III. Sometimes the verb coming after the impersonal is Englished by the passive voice, and as (in sentences expressed with the particle *on*) the noun that follows the verb in French comes before the particle *must* in English; and the French infinitive active is made by the passive: as, *il faut instruire les enfans*, children *must* be instructed.

IV. The

IV. The necessity of having something is also denoted by *il faut*, before the noun of the thing only, without any verb; and *il faut*, thus construed, is Englished by *one must have*, or *something must be had*: as, *il faut de l'argent pour plaider*.

V. When *il faut* is construed with a pronoun personal between *il* and *faut*, it denotes a present want that must be supplied, and the pronoun personal becomes the subject of *must* in English; as, *il lui faut un mari* she must have a husband, &c.

VI. The impersonal *il faut* is used absolutely at the end of a sentence, with the pronoun *ce qui*, or the conjunction *comme*, before it, in which case it denotes duty and decency, and is Englished by *should*, and sometimes *should do*, and *should be*: as, *il ne se conduit pas comme il faut*, He does not behave as he should; *faites cela comme il faut*, Do that as it should be.

Men must love virtue to be happy.

*aimer vertu, f. heureux.*

One must be mad to think that men can be happy without

*fou croire pouvoir sans (a)*

loving virtue. [*aimer.*]

You must do what I bid you.

*faire dire.*

He must have a horse. She must see it.

*cheval, m. voir*

To make war, money must be had.

*faire guerre, f. argent, m.*

Men should learn first the duties belonging to human nature.

*apprendre d'abord devoir, m. appartenir humain nature, f.*

You don't learn as you should. [*comme.*]

A woman must have a great deal of circumspection not to

*grand fond, m. retenue, f.*

speak of herself.

Scipio Nafica | must needs | have been an exceeding honest

*Scipion il falloit extrêmement honnête*

man, since the oracle answered that the mother of the gods

*puisque oracle répondre mère dieu*

would lodge | at his house. |

*vouloir loger chez lui.*

One must not hope that men can be cured of the ill habit they

*espérer pouvoir guérir mauvais habitude, f.*

have of speaking always of themselves, their adventures, and

*parler toujours aventures, f.*

(a) *Sans* governs the infinitive.

K 22

wealth



wealth, than which nothing is more tedious. (*Turn, yet there*  
*richesses, f. cependant il y a*  
 is nothing more tedious than such recitals.) One should impose  
*rien ennuyeux ce récit, m. se faire*  
 a law upon one's self, never to speak of one's self, neither one  
*loi, f. parler*  
 way nor other. (*Turn, neither in good nor in bad.*)  
*ni en bien ni en mal.*

We must not fillily believe those that flatter us: neither must  
*ni aisément croire flatter aussi with ne and pas*  
 we reject rudely the compliments that are paid us, when we  
*rejeter rudement compliment, m. faire quand*  
 think we deserve them. That false modesty is hardly less  
*croire mériter faux modestie, f. guères*  
 shocking than a foolish vanity. Much art and dexterity are requi-  
*rebutant sot vanité, f. art, m. délicatesse, f.*  
 site to season praises well. But there is also a way of receiving  
*assaisonner louange, f. aussi manière, f.*  
 them, when they are lawful, which does not hurt modesty.  
*légitime blesser modestie, f.*  
 Praises are like a sort of tribute that is paid to true merit. We  
*comme sorte, f. tribut, m. rendre vrai mérite, m.*  
 must neither reject them through affectation, nor hanker after  
*ni rejeter par affectation ni rechercher*  
 them too eagerly. [*avec trop d'empressement.*]

VII. The impersonal *il fait* is used with adjectives, and some few substantives, denoting the disposition of the air and weather, and is Englished by *it is*: as,

|   |                |   |
|---|----------------|---|
| <i>Il fait</i> {<br>beau, or beau temps,<br>chaud,<br>froid,<br>vif,<br>croûte,<br>jour,<br>nuît,<br>obscur, sombre,<br>vent, du vent,<br>soleil,<br>clair de lune, | <i>It is</i> { | fair, or fine weather.<br>hot weather.<br>cold.<br>ugly.<br>dirty.<br>daylight.<br>night.<br>dark.<br>windy, the wind blows.<br>the sun shines.<br>the moon shines. |
|---|----------------|---|

VIII. The impersonal *it is*, construed with an adjective, and a participle of the present (in *ing*), or with one of the *adjectives*,  
*lives,*

*ives, good, bad, better, dangerous,* followed by a noun of place, is also rendered into French by *il fait*, followed by an adjective with a verb in the infinitive: as, *il fait dangereux sur mer*, it is dangerous at sea.

How is the weather? [*tems, m.*] Turn, What weather is it?  
It is cold, yet it is not so cold as it was yesterday.

*froid cependant hier.*

There is a mist abroad, or 'tis foggy weather.

*brouillard, m. brouillard.*

The sun does not shine. I think that it is not warm abroad.

*soleil, m. croire chaud dehors.*

It was very cold last year. It will freeze before it is long.

*froid passé année, f. geler avant que (a) long tems.*

I hope it will not be so cold | next week | as it is now.

*espérer froid la semaine qui vient à présent.*

It will rain to-day. It snowed yesterday. It hailed this

*pleuvoir aujourd'hui neiger hier grêler*

morning. [*matin.*]

It is good living in France.

*bon vivre en France.*

It is better living in Holland. [*Hollande.*]

IX. Most ways of speaking beginning with *some*, and the verb *to be*, are expressed in French by the impersonal *il y a*. Sometimes also, the adjective is joined to its substantive with the pronoun *qui*, and the verb *être*: as, *il y a des douleurs qui sont salutaires*.

X. The impersonal *il a y* comes before a substantive, even of the plural number.

XI. That impersonal is besides used to denote a quantity of time, space and number: as, *il y a trente ans qu'il est mort*.

XII. In asking questions, we don't begin with *comment*, or *combien long*, *comment long tems*; but we say, *combien y a-t-il que*, and then comes the noun or pronoun of the subject with its verb. The answer must likewise be made with the impersonal *il y a*, and the noun of time, thus.

*Il y a dix ans*, or only *dix ans*, these ten years. *Il y a vingt ans qu'il fait la même chose*, He has done the same thing these twenty years.

There is a man below asks for you.

*là bas demander.*

(a) This conjunction governs the subjunctive.



Some people fancy that they can learn a language without  
*gens s'imaginer pouvoir apprendre langue, f. sans*  
 studying. [*étudier*]

Is there any difference betwixt those two? There is a great  
*différence, f. entre.*  
 one.

I have been in England these twenty years.

*en Angleterre en.*

Some people are like ballads, that are sung only for a while.

*ressembler vaudeville, m. chanter ne and que (a)*

Is it long since he came back again?

*long tems que revenir.*

How long have you lived here? Is it long since?

*demeurer ici long tems.*

How long is it since you left your country?

*quitter pays, m.*

I went out of France fifteen years ago.

*sortir France en.*

She has been dead these six years. [*mourir.*]

I have been learning English for these ten years.

*apprendre Anglois.*

I have learnt English ten years ago.

How far is Edinburgh from London?

*Edinbourg Londres.*

Windfor is twenty miles distant from London.

*Windfor mille Londres.*

The ship sank, and there was | the matter of | four thousand

*vaisseau, m. couler à fond environ*

men drowned. [*noyé.*]

Faults become some people well; and others are disagreeable

*défaut, m. fier gens, m.*

*disgracieux*

with their good qualities.

*avec qualité, f.*

There is nobody but may reap great helps and advantages

*pouvoir retirer secours, m. avantage, m.*

from sciences; but there are likewise few people but suffer a

*science, f.*

*aussi*

*peu personne*

*recevoir*

great prejudice from the knowledge which they have got by

*prejudice, m.*

*connaissance, f.*

*acquérir*

sciences, if they don't use it as if it was natural to them, and

*se*

*se servir comme*

*naturel*

their own. [*propre.*]

There is a man in the street who says that there was yesterday

*dans rue, f.*

*dire*

*y avoir hier*

(a) A while is un certain tems, and for is not expressed.

a great quarel in the square, where there were three men killed; and he swears that if he had been there, there would have been a great many | more, because he has heard that two friends of his were wounded. They also say that several merchants have been cruelly beaten there; and that | out of | ten soldiers that are in prison, four will be hanged, and six condemned to the gallies. [*galère.*]

*querelle, f. place, f. où tué*  
*jurer*  
*bien davantage parce que favori ami, m.*  
*béffé aussi plusieurs marchand*  
*cruellement battu de soldat, m.*  
*en prison pendu condamné*

XIII. The pronoun *ce*, used impersonally with *être*, denotes either a person or a thing. When that which follows *it* is, or which *it* refers to, is a thing, as the word *chose* is feminine, the pronoun *it* cannot then be construed with *est*, and we say *c'est*, and not *il est*. But when the pronoun coming before *it* is *he* or *she*, it is indifferent to express it in French by *ce*, or the pronouns *il, elle*.

XIV. The impersonal *c'est* is always used (and never *il est*) with the word *chose*, whether it is attended by an adjective or not. On the other hand, when the word *thing* is not expressed in the speech, but is grammatically understood, the adjective must be construed with *il est*; as, *il est bon de se tenir sur ses gardes*.

XV. When the word that comes after any tense of the verb *to be* is an adjective without a substantive, and is annexed to the personal pronouns *he, she, it, they*, which it refers to, the pronoun must be rendered by the personal *il* or *elle*; *ils* or *elles*, and never by *ce*: as, speaking of a man, *il est savant*; of a woman, *elle est malade*; of apples, *elles sont sures*, &c.

XVI. The impersonal *il est*, and not *c'est*, is used before nouns denoting time, or a part of it, as *quelle heure est il?* What's o'clock? *il est deux heures*, it is two o'clock. But if the question is asked with the pronoun *ce*, as *quelle heure est-elle?* What is the clock striking? You must answer with the same pronoun, *c'est une heure*, it strikes one.

XVII. *Il est* is used with adjectives annexed to the pronouns *il, elle*, or with substantives without the article, and *c'est* with an adjective, with which it makes a complete sense, or with substantives construed with the particles *un, du, des*. *C'est* must be used on all other occasions, as before nouns, adjectives and



pronouns; but observe, that the pronoun that comes after it must be a disjunctive: as, *C'est elle qui, c'est moi, c'étoit vous qui, &c.*

XVIII. The pronoun *ce* used impersonally with *être*, is not only construed with all pronouns personal of the singular number, followed by a relative and a verb that agrees with the pronoun personal, but it is also construed with the pronouns personal of the plural, followed by a verb after the same manner; and what is more remarkable, the pronoun *ce* is construed with the third person plural of the verb substantive. Therefore observe that *it is, it was*, followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, is rendered into French after two ways: but when a question is asked, it is always with the third person singular; thus, *Est-ce eux qui on fait cela?*

XIX. In the practice of the impersonal *c'est*, we don't make use of the imperfect or preterite, whenever the second verb is in the preterite, as the English do; but *C'est moi qui le fis*; and never *C'étoit moi qui le fis*, for we only make use of that impersonal in the imperfect, when the second verb is a tense compound of the imperfect; as, *C'étoit moi qui avois fait cela, &c.*

XX. When *c'est* or *c'étoit* is immediately followed by *que*, that *que* stands for *parceque*, because; and when a word comes between the impersonal and *que*, the words *c'est que* or *c'étoit que* are a redundancy: as, *C'est alors que je prends mes mesures, &c.*

XXI. *It is*, followed by *with*, is expressed in French by *il en est* with the genitive of the noun: as, *il en est de la Poésie comme de la Peinture; il en est des femmes, comme des enfans.*

It is barbarous, or, 'tis a barbarous thing, to insult the  
*barbare chose, f. insulter (a)*  
 unfortunate. [*malheureux.*]

This is the end he aims at.

*but, m. tendre.*

It is hard, or 'tis a hard thing to have to do with ungrateful  
*dur chose, f. faire à ingrat, (b)*  
 people. Pride is a monstrous thing.

*orgueil, m. monstrueux.*

'Tis a monstrous thing to be proud. [*orgueilleux.*]

'Tis a great folly to pretend to be | the only | wise.

*folie, f. vouloir tout seul sage.*

(a) *Insulter* governs the first relation, when it is a person, or a pronoun personal, and the third, when it is a thing: as, *insulter quelqu'un, insulter a la misère d'autrui*, though we say, *insulter aux misérables*, to insult the unfortunate.

(b) *Ingrat* is used substantively.

'Tis the truth offend him.

*vérité, f. offenser.*

'Tis madness to forget one's self.

*folie, f. se méconnoître.*

What's the matter in the street? They are people that are taken to the justice's. [*chez commissaire, m.*]

He is not free who is a slave to his passions.

*libre esclave passion, f.*

They are happy who think themselves so.

*heureux croire.*

They overload nature who eat without being hungry;

or, 'Tis overloading nature to eat without being hungry.

*surcharger nature, f. manger sans avoir faim.*

Drunkenness is a frightful passion.

*ivrognerie, f. affreux passion, f.*

Desires will always be torments.

*desir, m. toujours tourment, m.*

'Tis here I wait for him. | 'Twas there she died.

*ici attendre la mourir.*

They are philosophers who say so. | 'Tis easy to say so.

*ce être philosophe dire aisé.*

It is reasonable to serve one's country.

*raisonnable servir patrie, f.*

These are things we must not think of.

*chose, f. penser.*

They are guilty who don't protect innocence.

*coupable protéger innocence, f.*

They are jilts. | That is what I was saying.

*coquette, f. dire.*

'Tis he says so. | 'Tis not what I thought.

And Horace and Virgil, because they are the best Latin

*de Virgile parce que*

poets. | 'Tis fine to look at.

*poète beau regarder.*

He knows not courtiers, who relies on their promises.

*connoître courtisan, m. compter sur promesse, f.*

It is time to rise. | 'Tis not too soon to go.

*temps se lever trop tôt partir.*

It is ten o'clock. I thought it was later.

*dix heures croire tard.*

Friday is the King's birth-day.

*Vendredi naissance jour.*

He is one of the best friends I have. [*ami, m.*]

She is a woman of honour. They are counsellors.

*honneur, m. avocat, m.*

must be made in the active with the pron. indeterminate.

*'Twas*



'Twas my man committed the blunder.

*valet, m. faire étourderie, f.*

'Tis you have told it. 'Twas we bade him do it.

*dire dire faire.*

'Tis they have won | a great deal. |

*gagner beaucoup.*

'Twas they were playing at cards in the corner.

*jouer aux cartes dans coin, m.*

Were they the grenadiers began the attack?

*grenadier commencer attaque.*

No, they were the dragoons; or, the dragoons did.

It is with a school as with a state, it cannot subsist without

*école, f. état, m. saurois subsister sans*

penal laws. [*pénal loi, f.*]

It appears that he is not guilty.

*paraître coupable.*

It follows from thence, that a man cannot be happy who is

*s'ensuivre de là heureux*

not virtuous. [*vertueux.*]

It becomes not a wise man to follow the multitude.

*convenir sage suivre multitude, f.*

There came a fellow who pretended to have been sent by her,

*venir drole, m. prétendre envoyer*

but he was an impostor. [*fourbe, m.*]

If some accident happened notwithstanding, we are not

*accident, m. arriver malgré cela*

answerable for it. [*responsable.*]

She says that she expects company. Therefore somebody

*attendre compagnie, f. c'est pourquoi*

will come by and by. [*venir tantôt.*]

A woman came this morning who would not tell her name.

*matin, m. vouloir m, m.*

Some good friends are to be found, but they are scarce.

*bon ami, m. se trouver rare.*

Strange things happen in this world.

*étrange chose, f. arriver dans monde, m.*

There arose suddenly a terrible tempest.

*s'élever tout-à coup terrible tempête, f.*

I expect two or three friends, but none comes.

*attendre ou ami, m. mais aucun venir.*

## CHAP. XIV.

## On the Negative Particles and Adverbs.

I. *NE* comes after the subject, and immediately before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the verb, if the tense be simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle of the preterite, if the tense be compound.

II. When the verb is at the present of the infinitive, the two negatives come together before it, after the preposition.

III. *No* is *non*, used at the end of a sentence, or absolutely, as in answer to questions: and *not* is *non pas*, used also absolutely, in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by *que* with the subjunctive.

IV. Although *pas* or *point* may be sometimes indifferently used, yet *point* has a more negative force, it implying *not at all*. But note,

1st, That *point* always requires the particle *de* before nouns: as, *Il n'y a point de raison pour cela*, There is no reason for that; *Il n'en a point de soin*, He has no care of it; and *pas* sometimes takes an article before the noun that comes after it: as, *Il n'en a pas le soin qu'il faut*, He does not take care of it as he should: and sometimes not; as, *Il n'en a pas soin*, He has no care of it: and never *Il n'en a point soin*, or *pas de soin*, or *point le soin qu'il faut*.

2dly, That *pas* is always before these words:

*beaucoup*, much.

*peu*, little.

*meux*, better.

*plus*, more.

*moins*, less.

*souvent*, often.

*toujours*, always.

*si*, so.

*tant*, so much.

*autant*, as much.

*trop*, too much.

*fort*, très, very.

*extrêmement*, extremely; *infinitement*, infinitely; and all adverbs: as,

*Il n'y a pas beaucoup de monde aujourd'hui au Parc.*

There is not much company to-day in the Park.

*Il n'est pas peu difficile de lui plaire.*

It is not a little difficult to please him.

*Il ne la voit pas souvent.* He does not see her often, &c.

3dly, That when a question is asked, *pas* intimates that one supposes



poses the thing concerning which the question is ask'd: whereas *point* intimates a mere doubt, and ignorance of the same thing.

For instance, by this question:

*N'est-il point membre de la Société Royale ?*

Is he not a fellow of the Royal Society?

I want to be informed, whether he be a fellow of the Royal Society or not, being quite ignorant of it. But by this other,

*N'est-il pas membre de la Société Royale ?*

I intimate that I think that he is a fellow of that Society, and wonder that others don't think so too.

V. Besides these negatives (to which add *ni* repeated, *neither*, and *nor*) the following words, which are of themselves negative terms, require moreover the particle *ne* before their verbs, which are then alone, without *pas* or *point*:

First,

*personne*, nobody.

*pas un*, not one.

*aucun*, not any.

*nul*, none.

*nullement*, by no means.

*guères*, but little.

*jamais*, never.

*rien*, nothing.

*mot*, word, and

*goute*; but these

two last require

a negative only

with *dire* and *voir*: as *Je ne vois personne*, I see no body. *Vous ne dites rien*, You say nothing. *Elle n'a aucun amant*, She has no sweetheart.

2dly, The conjunctions *à moins que*, unless; *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, lest, or for fear that, (but not *de peur de*, *de crainte de*, which govern the infinitive) will have after them *ne* before the next verb: as likewise these four verbs, *empêcher*, to hinder, to prevent; *craindre*, to fear; *appréhender*, to apprehend; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; when they are not used in the infinitive.

But 'tis to be observed with respect to the verbs of *fearing* and *apprehending*, that it is only when one speaks of an effect that is not wished for, that the second negative *pas* or *point* is left out after the next verb; for if one wishes that the thing spoken of should happen, then the verb that follows *craindre* and *appréhender* must be attended with the two negatives.

Observe also that *empêcher* takes no negative when the next verb is in the infinitive.

*Nier*, to deny, requires also elegantly *ne* before the next verb in negative sentences.

3dly, We use the negative *ne* before the verb that comes after these five words, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *autre*, and *autrement*.

4thly, We use the negative after *que* and *si*, signifying *before* or *unless*, or *but* in the middle of a compound sentence; the former part whereof is a negative sentence.

5thly,

5thly, We use it before the verb that comes before *ni*, repeated in the sentence, which answers to *neither* or *nor*; and if no verb come before *neither*, this *English* particle is *ne* only, and *nor* is *ni*, *ne*.

When two adjectives meet together in a negative sentence, they are not joined with the particle *ni*, if they be synonymous; or express both the same thing in different words; but only when they signify two different things, or quite contrary. When they are synonymous only, they are joined by the enclitick *et*.

VI. The particle *ne* only is made use of,

1st, With those five verbs used negatively, *oser*, to dare; *cesser*, to cease; *pouvoir*, to be able; *savoir*, to know; and *prendre garde*, to take care. 2dly, After the impersonal *il y a*, followed by a compound of the present tense. But if it be any other tense comes after the impersonal, we use the two negatives. 3dly, When the verb meets with the particle *de*, denoting a space of time. 4thly, When a question is asked with *que*, signifying *pourquoi*. 5thly, With the adverb *plus*, used absolutely. But when *plus* is used comparatively, that is, before an adjective with or without *que*, the two negatives are requisite before *plus*. 6thly, After *si* and *que*, in the sense of *unless*, or *but*. 7thly, *Ne*, followed in the same sentence by *que*, but separated by one or more words, expresses, and is Englished by *but*, or *nothing but*, also in the middle of the sentence, or by *only*. 8thly, *But*, likewise in the middle of a sentence, is rendered into *French* by *que* and *ne*, or the relative *qui* and *ne*, but without *pas* or *point*, and the second verb in the subjunctive.

VII. *Rien* signifies sometimes *something* or *any thing*, and in that sense it is construed without a negative, and in sentences of interrogation and doubt only.

VIII. When *jamais* signifies *ever*, it is construed without a negative.

IX. It is to be observed, 1st, That it is an elegance to use but one negative with *pouvoir*. 2dly, That when *savoir* is used for *pouvoir*, it requires only one negative, and can never be used with two. 3dly, That when that verb is used in its proper signification of *knowing*, it implies an *uncertainty* of the mind, and requires but one negative. 4thly, That when it implies a *full* and *intire* ignorance of the thing, it will have the two negatives. 5thly, That it requires but one negative when it meets.



meets with any of these particles, viz. *ou, comment, combien, quand, quel, quoi, and si.*

*N. Prendre garde* signifies either *to take care, or to take notice, to mind, to consider*; and it is in the first signification only that it requires but one Negative before the next verb! for in the other signification it requires the two.

I never drink wine; not that I don't love it, but because it  
*jamais boire vin, m. aimer mais parce que*

is good for nothing in England. |

*valoir rien en Angleterre.*

I by no means believe what he says.

*nullement croire dire.*

She always comes unseasonably.

*toujours venir mal à propos.*

Nobody does what you do. Nothing can relieve her.

*faire rien pouvoir soulager.*

He has not received any answer yet, or as yet.

*recevoir réponse, f. encore.*

I have not any design to wrong you.

*nul dessein, m. faire tort.*

She has done wrong. She says not one word.

*faire mal dire mot, m.*

None knows the sufferings of lovers, unless he has loved.

*nul savoir souffrance, f. quant si and que aimer.*

I have always loved her very much. [*fort.*]

Is there any thing more wonderful than the virtue of the

*rien admirable vertu, f.*

loadstone? [*aimant, m.*]

To love | but little | in courting | is a sure mean to be loved.

*guères en amour assuré moyen, m.*

I have seen nobody of your sentiment. [*sentiment, m.*]

I will never forgive him if he does not grant me that favour.

*jamais pardonner accorder grâce, f.*

Did ever any body do what you do?

*jamais personne faire.*

Did he ever mention | any thing | of it?

*dire rien.*

We have done nothing that ought to make you angry.

*faire rien devoir fâcher.*

She is exceedingly rich. | I am not a little | puzzled.

*extrêmement riche peu embarrassé.*

I am going there, lest he should come.

*s'en aller de peur que venir.*

I shall

I shall take this, unless you chuse it.

*prendre à moins que choisir.*

I fear that she will scold.

*craindre gronder.*

I tell thee that if henceforth I perceive that thou attemptest to

*dire si dorénavant s'appercevoir*

*entreprendre*

play any trick to hinder me from marrying my son, I will send thee directly to the mill for all thy life.

*faire quelque fourberie empêcher (a) marier*

*envoyer*

*sur le champ moulin, m. pour vie, f.*

We all fear that he will reduce us to that extremity.

*craindre réduire extrémité, f.*

She was afraid he would not have married her.

*avoir peur épouser.*

She is indifferent to me. I neither love nor hate her.

*indifférent aimer haïr.*

He is neither a drinker nor a smoker.

*buveur, m. fumeur, f.*

They behave very prudently.

*se conduire prudemment.*

She can neither read nor write.

*savoir lire écrire.*

You are quite another than I have known you.

*tout autre connoître.*

She has neither relations nor friends.

*parent, m. ami, m.*

He does not deny that he asked her in marriage.

*nier demander en mariage.*

She has more sense than her mother had.

*sens, m. mère, f.*

He writes better than he speaks.

*écrire parler.*

I apprehend, or fear, that some misfortune hath befallen him.

*appréhender malheur, m. arriver.*

He dares not do it, for fear he should be scolded.

*ôser de crainte de br quer gronder.*

In that uncertainty he knows not what he ought to do.

*dans incertitude, f. savoir devoir.*

I will never forgive him, unless he promise to see her.

*pardonner si and ne promettre voir.*

He will never do it before, or unless, he be sure you will get

*faire que sûr obtenir*

good conditions for him. [condition, f.]

She is so ill, that she can take nothing but she throws

*mal saurois prendre que rendre*

it up again presently. [sur le champ.]

(a) This verb may be made both ways, viz. by the infinitive and subjunctive.



He was afraid lest he should have overheard him.

*craindre*

*entendre.*

She will not hear any more of her sweetheart.

*vouloir entendre parler*

*galant, m.*

I will not take a purge before the winter be quite over.

*prendre médecine que*

*hiver, m. tout à fait passé.*

He takes care that she does not go abroad, and sees nobody.

*prendre garde*

*sortir*

*voir.*

Why does not he tell her his reasons?

*pourquoi or que*

*dire*

*raison, f.*

He knows not where to meet her, 'Tis what I do not know.

*savoir*

*où*

*rencontrer*

*savoir.*

I will not teach him French any more, if he does not pay

*vouloir enseigner François, m.*

*payer.*

me what he owes me. [*dévoir.*]

I ask nothing but what is just. I cannot pay others if I be

*demander*

*juste*

*saurois payer*

*si*

not paid what is due to me.

*payer*

*dévoir.*

Adversity neither troubles, nor casts them down; prosperity

*adversité, f.*

*troubler*

*abattre*

*prosperité, f.*

neither makes them proud, nor swells them up.

*énorgueillir*

*enfler.*

## CHAP. XV.

### Upon the CONJUNCTIONS.

I. **O**F conjunctions, some govern, that is, will have the next verb in the indicative mood; some the subjunctive, and some the infinitive.

II. The French use the conjunction *que* in the second part of a compound sentence instead of repeating the following conjunctions, expressed in the first:

*si, if.*

*quand,*

*lorsque,*

} when.

*pourquoi, why.*

*comme, as.*

*peut-être, perhaps.*

*parceque, because.*

*quoique, although.*

*afin que, that, and*

others composed of *que*. Which particle always governs the subjunctive, when it stands for *si*, *quoique*, and *afin que*, and therefore causes the verb, governed in the indicative in the first

part

part of the sentence, to be changed into the subjunctive in the second part; but the verb continues in the same mood, when *que* stands for *quand*, *lorsque*, *comme*, &c.

III. *Afin* may be attended in the same sentence both by *que* and *de*, governing each its respective mood, viz. *que* the subjunctive, and *de* the infinitive.

IV. *When* is both *lorsque* and *quand*, indifferently used for one another, except that *quand* denotes time in a more positive and determinate manner.

When a question is asked, we always do it with *quand*; and never with *lorsque*. *Quand*, being construed with the conditional, has the signification of *though* or *although*; and *même* or *bien même*, is sometimes added to *quand*, to give more weight to what one says. Sometimes also *though* may be left out in French; the French preposition *quand* or *quand même* may be suppressed in the sentence: and the pronoun, expressing the subject of the verb, comes after the verb, which is made by the subjunctive.

V. *Si* is never construed with the conditional, as in *English*; therefore that tense with *if* is made by the imperfect in *French*.

VI. *D'où vient que* (a conjunction interrogative) requires immediately after it the pronoun or noun, that expresses the subject of the verb of the question; whereas, with the other conjunctions interrogative, it comes after the verb.

VII. *Pourtant* always comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle, if the tense be compound, and assures more positively than *cependant*. The last word may indifferently begin the sentence or come after the verb; and they both make a contrast with these two other conjunctions *quoique* and *bien que*.

VIII. *C'est pourquoi* always begins the sentence; and *donc* never does, but always comes the second or third word; except, however, when the case is to draw a consequence of premises.

IX. These conjunctions *either* and *or*, used in the same sentence before nouns and verbs, are rendered into *French*, either by *soit*, before the first noun or verb; and *ou* before the other, or others: or by *soit* before each noun or verb; which last way is more emphatical.

X. When the same conjunctions disjunctive serve to distinguish two things, or two parts of a sentence, they are also rendered into *French* by *soit* repeated, or by *ou* likewise repeated; or by *soit* before the first noun, and *ou* before the second.

XI. These conjunctions *whether* and *or*, are rendered into *French*, either by *soit que* repeated, or by *soit que* before the first part of the sentence, and *ou que* before the other.



XII. *Or else*, is rendered into French by *qu bien*, or *ou only*, or *sinon*.

When I punish you for your faults, you think I hate you;  
*punir pour faute, f. croire haïr*  
 whereas, 'tis only because I love you I take that trouble,

*ni and que aimer prendre peine, f.*  
 Whilst you are young, accustom yourselves to virtue.  
*jeune s'accoutumer vertu, f.*

Your brother came to see me yesterday as soon as you were  
*frère venir voir hier*  
 gone.—I am sleepy after eating.  
*partir endormi manger.*

I will see her before she dies. [*mourir.*]

Provided that he do his duty. [*devoir.*]

Although I have no money, I cannot resolve to borrow any  
*argent, m. se résoudre emprunter*  
 of my friends.—Obey, or else you shall be whipt,  
*ami, m. obéir avoir le fouet.*

If he come, be so good as to tell him that I have waited for  
*avoir la bonté dire attendre*  
 him 'till now. [*jusqu' à présent.*]

If men were wise, and would seriously think of the sovereign  
*sage vouloir sérieusement penser souverain*  
 good.—Avoid gaming, for fear of addicting yourself to it.  
*bien, m. éviter jeu, m. s'adonner.*

Tho' | I used my utmost endeavours, | and neglected no-  
*faire tout son possible négliger*  
 thing to please him, yet he was constantly scolding at me.  
*plaire néanmoins sans cesse quereller.*

That Andrian, whether she be Pamphilus's wife, or whether  
*Andrienne Pamphille femme, f.*  
 she be but his mistress, | is with child. |  
*maîtresse, f. se trouver grosse.*

People forgive as long as they love.  
*on pardonner aimer.*

She pleases every body, both men and women.  
*plaire tout le monde.*

Either through taste or reason, or caprice, she has married him.  
*par gout raison caprice épouser.*

Wars are not so bloody since gun-powder is used.  
*guerre, f. sanglant poudre à canon se servir.*

He went away without my seeing him.  
*partir voir.*

I have nothing more to say to you, except to obey. [*obéir.*]

Unless a book be instructive, or entertaining, I don't care to  
*livre, m. instructif divertissant se soucier.*  
 read it.

As I knew the thing, and nobody suspected it, &c.

*savoir* *se douter.*  
He was hardly come, but she scolded at him.

He has neither friends nor enemies, neither vice nor virtue.  
ami, m.      ennemi, m.      vice, m.      vertu, f.

Whether she be writing or reading, she will have her par-  
*écrire lire*

rot with her. [*perroquet, m.*]

Because he came, and I was not at home, he would not stay.  
venir au logis vouloir attendre.

Though he asked me, I would not tell him.

Would to God the affair might succeed. [*affaire réussir.*]

Since you have forbidden him, he does it no more. [*défendre*]

If he should call at my house, and I should not be at home,  
*passer chez moi*

my people would tell him where I am.

gens dire où.  
Whether he win or lose, he is always the same.

gagner perdre toujours même.  
He will not do it, since that is forbidden him.

*faire* *defendu.*  
I will not go thither unless you go along with me.

*vouloir aller*                      •                      *venir avec.*

You must not play before you | can say | your lesson. Why

don't you learn it then, instead of losing your time?  
apprendre perdre tems, m.

He is so far from being forward, that he knows nothing at all.

Far from following his advice, she does not mind what he says.

I will rather consent to lose all, than to give up my right.  
*plutôt consentir perdre renoncer droit.*

Let us suppose that the case is so, I run no risk to write to

him | about it. | [*supposer cas ainsi cou-  
touchant cette affaire.*]

I would marry you though I were a King.  
épouser                      Roi, m.

Tho' you were a King, I would not marry you.

Tell me whether you come to-morrow or not, that I mayn't  
dire si venir demain

wait for you. [*attendre.*]

Would to God I were under his tuition still, and my fa-  
*fous* *conduite, f. encore*

ther had never removed me from his school.



It avails nothing to a girl to be young, without being handsome, nor to be handsome without being young.

After you have done your exercise, you must read it over two or three times, to correct the faults you may have done in it.

You will learn well, so you take pains. This I tell you to the end you may take courage and apply yourself to study. But remember what I have told you several times, that you will never be able to speak or write French, unless you are master of your rules. [régle, f.]

I will take so much pains that I hope I shall speak it before it is long, tho' I am convinced that the French tongue is very difficult. [difficile.]

You will not find it so hard if you learn well your principles.

Why does the loadstone attract iron? And how comes it to pass that liquors ascend and descend in barometers and thermometers. [thermomètre, m.]

The narrowness of the mind, ignorance, and presumption, make stubbornness; because obstinate people will believe nothing but what they apprehend, and they apprehend but very few things. [peu chose.]

As soon as the great Cham of Tartary has dined, a Herald cries out that all the other Princes of the earth may go and eat their dinner. [diner.]

## CHAP. XVI.

### Upon PREPOSITIONS.

I. à, or rather au, à la, aux, at, to, in, on, &c. denotes 1<sup>st</sup>, the place where one is; and that whether one is going; as

(a) Or, is *ni* in French.

likewise

likewise the *Aim*, and *End* of a thing. 2dly, It denotes *Time*, and *Order of Time*, or the *Order* in which things are done. 3dly, It denotes the *way of being*, or of *doing* of people; as also their *Posture*, *Gesture*, or *Action*. 4thly, *à* between two nouns, denotes the *Manner* or *Form* of the thing signified by the first noun: as likewise the *use* which it is designed for: and the second noun has no article. 5thly, It denotes the *Quality*, *Price*, *Weight*, and *Measure* of things. 6thly *à*, *à la*, *aux* denote the *Matter*, *Instruments*, and *Tools*, used in working, &c. as likewise the things which one applies one's self to, and the *Games* one plays at. 7thly, *à* denotes what is proper to be done; the *Merit* or *Demerit* of persons and things, their seeming *Capacity*, *Aptitude*, *Fitness* and *Disposition*. 8thly, *à*, between two nouns of number, signifies *between*, sometimes *about*. 9thly, *à*, *au*, &c. signify sometimes *according to*, or *as*; and sometimes *by*; sometimes *for*; sometimes *after*; sometimes *in*; and sometimes *with*. 10thly, *à* is besides used before the infinitive, being governed by a noun, or a verb, denoting *Fitness*, *Disposition*, &c.

II. *De*, or rather *du*, *de*, *la*, *de l'*, *des*, of, from, out of, by which, &c. denote, 1st, the *Place* one comes from. 2dly, *De*, between two nouns, denotes the *Quality* of the person expressed by the first noun, which two nouns so joined with *de* or *à*, are commonly Englished by two nouns likewise, but without a preposition, or rather by a compound word whose first noun (whether substantive or adjective) expresses the *Matter* and *Quality*, *Manner*, *Form*, and *Use* of the other: as, a stone bridge, *un pont de pierre*; a dancing-master, *un maître à danser*. 3dly, *De*, *du*, *des*, are used in *French* after the participles of the preterite with *être* to express the passive state of verbs. 4thly, *De*, *du*, *des*, before nouns of time, signify the *Duration* of the denoted time, and is Englished by several prepositions denoting relations of time, *during*, *for*, *by*, &c. 5thly, *De*; before many nouns of time, sometimes separated by *en*, sometimes not, denotes the irregular interval of the time after which something begins again. And before nouns of place, and adverbs, repeated with *en* between *de*, denotes the passing from one place or condition, to another. 6thly, *De*, after some verbs, signifies sometimes *with*; sometimes *after*, or *in*; and sometimes *in the stead of*. 7thly, *De*, *du*, *des*, are used before the name of the thing which one makes use of, or the *Instrument* one plays upon. 8thly, *De*, and *à*, being each before the noun of a place, denote the distance that is between them, and are Englished, *de* by *from*, and *à* by *to*. Lastly, *De*



is used before an infinitive, and is then governed by some previous noun or verb.

III. *Avant* shews a relation of *time*, of which it denotes *priority*, as also of *order* and *rank*; and is always opposite to *après*, after. *Devant* shews a relation of *place*, and denotes the *local station* or situation of persons and things, as also the *rank*; but is always opposite to *derrière*, behind. It signifies also sometimes *en présence de*, in the presence of. *Avant* governs, with *que*, the subjunctive, and with *que de*, the infinitive. *Devant* is construed with the particle *au* and *de* before it. *Au devant* requires the genitive of that noun that comes after it, and is always preceded by a verb of motion.

IV. *Après*, after, denotes *posterity*, both of *time*, *place*, and *order*. With respect to *time*, it is used in opposition to *avant*: with respect to *place* and *order*, it is said in opposition to *devant*. It is also used with an infinitive, and is made a conjunction with *que* governing the subjunctive.

V. *Dans* and *en*, in, into, to, within, &c. denote a relation both of *time* and *place*. *Dans*, is always used, 1<sup>st</sup>, before nouns denoting the place wherein something is kept. 2<sup>dly</sup>, Before nouns, especially the masculine, having before them an article without elision. 3<sup>dly</sup>, *En* is used only with nouns beginning with a vowel, or *h* not aspirated; having the article with elision, or taking no article at all. 4<sup>thly</sup>, *Dans* is used, and never *en*, before names of cities and authors. 5<sup>thly</sup>, *Dans* is construed with names of kingdoms and provinces, or counties, used with an article, and *en*, when used without, as likewise before pronouns. 6<sup>thly</sup>, *Dans* is used to denote the *motive* and *view* of one's acting; which is usually expressed in *English* by *with*. 7<sup>thly</sup>, *En*, is used to denote the several *ways* and *manners* of being, both of persons and things, and the *condition* they are in, with respect to *Nature* and *Art*; as likewise to the *passions*, *affections*, and *sentiments* of the mind. 8<sup>thly</sup>, *En* is used to denote the several ways of living and dealing, with respect to *conduct*, *behaviour* and *manners*, which are denoted in *English* by *like*, *as*, or by an adverb. 9<sup>thly</sup>, *En* is used to denote the passage from one place to another; likewise the change of condition, or state, both of persons and things. 10<sup>thly</sup>, *En*, before a noun of time, denotes the space of time that slides away in doing something: and *dans*, the space of time after which something is to be done. 11<sup>thly</sup>, *Dans* and *en* must be repeated before each noun governed.

Though

Though it be sometimes indifferent to use either of the prepositions *dans* and *en*, yet that must continue the same before each noun, which was used before the first, when it is the same sense all along the sentence, and the same thread of speech; but if it be not the same thread of speech, and the same sense all thro' the sentence, both prepositions must be used, for the sake of variety.

VI. *Chez* denotes, and is Englished by *somebody's house*, preceded by *at* or *to*, and is construed with all pronouns personal, and proper names of persons. It requires the preposition *de* before it, when the sense implies *coming from*.

VII. *Contre*, against, contrary to, that usually denotes opposition, has the signification of, and is Englished by, *with* or *at*, after verbs signifying *being angry, incensed, irritated, provoked, and exasperated*. Sometimes *tout* comes before *contre*, to express still more the nearness of the thing, and *tout contre* is Englished by *hard by, just by, &c.*

VIII. *Depuis* denotes both *time* and *place*, and *enumeration of things*, and is commonly followed in the sentence by the preposition *jusqu'à*, to; then *depuis* denotes the term *from whence*, and *jusqu'à* that of *hitherto*. Observe here the difference between *depuis* and *jusqu'à de* and *à*, and *de* and *en*, all which prepositions are Englished by *from* and *to*. *De* and *à* before nouns of place, denote simply the *distance* that is between the two places. *Depuis* and *jusqu'à* denote, besides the quality of the distance, its *being great or little*. *De* and *en*, with the same noun repeated, denotes *succession of place*; and *depuis* not being followed by *jusqu'à*, denotes *time* only, and signifies *since*.

IX. *Jusque* or *jusques*, to, as far as, 'till, denotes *place*, and governs the noun in the dative. It is indifferent to spell it with an *s* at the end, or without; and when that preposition comes before a vowel, its final *e* or *es* is left out. *Jusqu'à* and *jusqu'aux* are sometimes used instead of the article before the word of the subject or object; in which construction they denote *excess*, and are rendered into *English* by *even* or *very*. *Jusque* denotes also sometimes *restriction* and *exclusion*. From that preposition is formed the conjunction *jusqu'à quand*, how long. (In declamation pronounce *jusques à quand*, the elision being only of the common way of speaking;) as likewise the conjunction *jusqu'à ce que*, 'till, until, which governs the subjunctive; and *jusqu'à* the infinitive. *Jusqu'ici*, so far, hitherto, to this place; and *jusques là*, so far, to that place.



X. *Hors*, out, except, but, denotes *exclusion* and *exception*. When it comes before a noun of time or place, it governs it in the genitive; otherwise it requires the nominative. It requires besides the particle *de* before the infinitive.

XI. *Hormis* and *excepté*, but, except, denote also *exception* and *exclusion*; but they require the noun in the nominative, tho' they govern the infinitive with *de*; but they besides govern the indicative with *que*.

XII. *A la reserve* is used in the same sense, and Englished after the same manner, but governs the genitive.

XIII. *Loin*, far, a great way off, governs the genitive, and the particle *de* before the infinitive.

XIV. *Malgré* takes the nominative, and *en dépit* the genitive. *Malgré que* is a conjunction governing the subjunctive.

XV. *Par* denotes the efficient *cause* of a thing, as also the *motive* and *means*, or *ways* of doing: in all which significations it is Englished by *through*, *by*, *out of*, *at*, &c. It denotes *place*, after the verbs *passer* and *aller*; and is construed besides with prepositions and adverbs, in order to denote some part of a thing. When construed with nouns, without an article, it denotes most times *distribution of people, time, and place*, or any thing signified by the noun. That distribution is commonly expressed in *English* by *a* or *each*, or *every* before the noun, but without a preposition (at least expressed, for it is likely that *for* is understood.)

*Par* is also used before an infinitive, but only after verbs that signify *beginning* and *ending*: which is rendered into *English* by *with* or *by*, with a participle.

XVI. *Pour*, for, denotes all the same relations as in *English*, to wit, of the *end* or *final cause*, *motive*, and *reason* of acting, and the *use* which a thing is designed for; but *pour* is commonly Englished by *for*, *considering*, or *with respect to*, when it denotes the *suitableness* or *unsuitableness* of a thing.

*For*, before a noun of time, is made in French by *pendant* before the noun of time, or *durant* after it.

*Pour*, before an infinitive, followed by *moins*, and a negative in the latter part of the sentence, or by *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies *although* or *though*; and *moins* with the negative, or *ne laisser pas de*, or *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies, and is Englished by *nevertheless* or *yet*.

*Pour*

*Pour* between two nouns without an article, or between two infinitives without a preposition, denotes the choice which one makes between two things alike in their nature, but different in their circumstances. The two nouns or verbs, thus construed, are rendered into English with a periphrase.

*Pour*, joined with *peu*, and followed by *que*, (*pour, peu, que*,) makes a sort of conjunction governing the subjunctive, and is Englished by *if* with the indicative, followed by *ever* or *never* so little; as, *pour peu que vous en preniez soin*.

*Pour*, followed by *que*, and coming after *assez* and *trop*, makes another conjunction, governing the subjunctive, and very much used in common discourse.

*Pour*, before nouns and pronouns personal, signifies sometimes *as for*. *Quant* is used in the same signification, but governs nouns in the dative.

XVII. *Près, auprès, proche*, near, by, denote proximity of place and time, and govern the noun in the genitive. *Près* is usually construed with *trop, si, assez, plus, bien*: and *trop, si, assez, plus, bien*, are never construed with *auprès*. *Près* is construed with *de* and the infinitive, which is usually Englished with a participle. *Près* is also used in the sense of *save, excepting*: but it takes no particle *de* after it, and always comes after the noun which it governs.

XVIII. *Vis-à-vis, à l'opposite*, over against; and *à côté*, by, denote proximity of place, and govern nouns in the genitive.

*Vis-à-vis* is said both of persons and things, and signifies properly two things, or persons facing one another; but *à l'opposite*, though signifying the same, is said of places and things only.

XIX. *Sans*, without, governs the infinitive, which is rendered into English with the participle. It is also with *que* a conjunction governing the subjunctive.

XX. *Selon* and *suivant*, according to, conformable to, require the nominative, and never the dative, as in English. *Selon* is said of an opinion, and *suivant* of practice. In common conversation, *selon* is used adverbially, and Englished as follows, *C'est selon*, it is according as it happens.

XXI. *Sur*, denoting place and matter, is upon, both in the proper and figurative sense. *Sur*, denoting time, is about, towards, by. *Sur* denotes, besides the superiority of power, or excellency over one, and is rendered by *over*. It signifies also against, by, on account of; and when it comes before *ce que*, it makes



makes a conjunction, governing the indicative, which is Englished by *as* with the indicative, or *on* or *upon* with a participle.

The English particle *on* coming after a verb, of which it denotes the continuation of action, is rendered into French by the verb *continuez*, or the adverb *toujours*: as, *play on, continuez de jouer, or jouez toujours.*

XXII. *Au dessus*, above, over, and *au dessous*, below, under, are two other compound prepositions, denoting superiority and inferiority of age, place, rank, and other physical and moral subjects. They require one of these particles, *de, du, des*, before the next noun.

XXIII. *Vers* is said of places and times, and *envers* of persons.

XXIV. *A l'égard* is used in the same sense as *quant*, but requires one of these particles, *de, du, des*, after it.

XXV. *Au lieu*, instead of, requires also *de, or du, or des*, before the next noun, and *de* before the infinitive. *Au lieu que*, whereas, is a conjunction requiring the indicative.

XXVI. *A rebours*, quite the reverse, which is an adverb, is also used as a preposition, attended by *de, du, des*, before the noun.

XXVII. *A travers*, cross, through, comes immediately before its noun, and *au travers* requires *de* before it.

In some occasions, two prepositions come together before a noun; as in this instance, *Il peint d'après nature*, he draws by the life.

XXVIII. These six prepositions, viz. *de, pour, excepté, hors, jusque, par*, have the right of governing others before the noun.

XXIX. Prepositions always come before the noun which they govern, and never after, as they do sometimes in English.

XXX. These prepositions, *de, contre, sur, sous, sans*, which are seldom, if ever, repeated in English, must always be repeated in French before each noun governed. The prepositions *à, par, pour*, must be also repeated, when the following noun, or nouns, are not synonymous, or pretty near of the same signification.

XXXI. Of the other prepositions, some take the nominative, or are never attended by *de* or *à*: some govern the genitive, or are always attended by one of these particles, *de, du, des*; and some govern the dative, or are always attended by one of these particles, *à, au, aux*.

Where

Where are you going? I am going to Court. And I to  
*où aller Cour, f.*  
 the city. I shall go to-night to the play-house.  
*ville, f. se soir Comédie, f.*

I went to-bed | last night. | at eleven o'clock, and rose this  
*se coucher hier au soir heure se lever*  
 morning at six. [*matin.*]

I set out from London at three o'clock.  
*partir Londres.*

I rather chuse to live in the country than in town, especially  
*aimer mieux demeurer campagne, f. ville, f. surtout*  
 at London. Therefore I intend to go to-morrow into the  
*Londres c'est pourquoi avoir dessein aller demain*  
 country, and will send my son to France, and then to the  
*campagne, f. envoyer fils France ensuite*  
 West Indies. [*Indes Occidentales.*]

You shall sing in your turn, and not before.  
*chanter tour, m.*

That is not after my mind. [*fantasie.*]

She does every thing of, or after, her own head. [*tête, f.*]

Do you answer in this manner?

*répondre manière, f.*

He goes from rank to rank. [*rang, m.*]

I live in St. Paul's-street, near a bookseller's, over against  
*demeurer St. Paul rue, f. libraire, m.*  
 a grocer, at the sign of the King's Head.  
*épicer, m. enseigne, f. Roi, m. Tête, f.*

The best way to go to your house is to pass through the ta-  
*chemin, m. aller passer ta-*  
 vern, since you live behind it.  
*verne, f. demeurer.*

A poor ploughman, who works from morning till night, when  
*faux labourer, m. travailler matin, m. soir, m.*  
 he is well paid for his labour, lives as content as a King.  
*payé labour, m. vivre content Roi, m.*

I design to travel first over all England and Scotland. Then  
*avoir dessein voyager d'abord Angleterre Ecosse*  
 to Holland, from Holland to France, from France to Italy, from  
*Hollandie Hollande France Italie*  
 Italy to Spain, from Spain to Portugal, where I shall embark on  
*Espagne Portugal où s'embarquer*  
 board a ship to return to England.  
*vaisseau, m. revenir.*

My brothers are not at home, they are gone a hunting with  
*frère, m. au logis chasse, f.*

my





I have bought an ivory coffee-mill.

*acheter ivoire café-moulin, m.*

He did it without mine or his master's knowledge.

*à l'insçu, m. maître.*

His library is even with the yard.

*bibliothèque, f. au niveau cour, f.*

They fought with their swords.

*se battre épée, f.*

I have eat nothing all the day.

*manger jour, m.*

My brother is gone to the East Indies, and he will not be back

*Oriental Indes, f.*

again these ten years. [an.]

Drunkard go from ale-house to ale-house.

*ivrogne, m. aller cabaret, m.*

His seat is magnificent. Were you ever there? The walls are

*château, m. magnifique mur, m.*

built with lime and sand. The staircase is painted in oil. All

*chaux, f. sable, m. escalier, m. peint huile*

the furniture is worked with the needle; nothing finer can be

*meuble, m. travaillé aiguille, f.*

seen.

I should be mighty glad to go to that seat. How far is it? Is

*ravi château, m.*

it a good way on? 'Tis twenty leagues off.

*loin d'ici lieu, f.*

You are mistaken. It is about nine or ten leagues.

*se tromper.*

Good education teaches every body to behave well.

*éducation, f. apprendre se comporter.*

The heroes, in time of yore, sacrificed themselves for their

*héros, m. tems, m. passé se sacrifier*

country and their mistress: now-a-days nothing is done but

*pays, m. maîtresse, f. aujourd'hui*

for fortune and pleasure.

*fortune, f. plaisir, m.*

He has drunk up the cup even to the dregs.

*boire calice, m. lie, f.*

A woman can please without beauty and sense, but she can

*pouvoir plaire beauté, f. raison, f.*

hardly do it without wit and agreeableness.

(a) *esprit, m. agrément, m.*

The law of Mahomet allows every thing but wine.

*loi, f. permettre vin, m.*

(a) Turn, it is very difficult for her to do it.

The



The most uneasy situation is to be between fear and hope.  
*inquiétant situation, f. crainte, f. espérance, f.*

Do you know that piazza which is near the market-place, as  
*savoir portique, m. marché, m.*  
 you go down? Yes. Go straight along through that place, as  
*descendre oui tout droit place, f.*

you go up, and when you are there, you will find a small descent  
*monter trouver petit descente, f.*  
 on your left. After that, there is a little chapel, and hard by  
*gauche petit chapelle, f.*

that, a narrow lane. But stay: I'll direct you a shorter way.  
*petit ruelle, f. attendre (a) indiquer court chemin, m.*  
 You know Cratinus's house, don't ye? When you are past that,  
*maison, f. (b) passer*

turn to the left, down the same street, and when you are at the  
*tourner gauche même rue, f.*

Temple of Diana, take to the right before you come to the gate  
*Temple, m. Diane prendre droit venir porte, f.*  
 of the city. Hard by the horse's pond there is a baker's, and right  
*ville, f. abreuvoir, m. boulanger, m.*

over-against that baker's you'll see a joiner's shop. 'Tis there he  
*voir menuisier boutique, f. [is.]*

We fancy that the Antipodes are under us. They must think  
*s'imaginer Antipodes, m. devoir penser*  
 that we are under them. But all are upon the earth; as no part  
*terre, f. partie, f.*  
 of a surface can be put upon the other. [*superficie, f.*]

Mount Cassel is a pleasant city on a hill in French Flanders,  
*agréable ville, f. montagne, f. François Flandre, f.*  
 from which, in clear weather, one may have a prospect of  
*clair tems, m. (c) pouvoir découvrir*  
 30 towns and 400 villages. [*ville, f.*]

*Nouns of the Instrument and Manner, are often rendered by*  
*du or de.*

He was killed with the first thrust, and his brother was shot  
*tué coup d'épée, m. frère tué*  
 with a pistol. [*coup de pistolet, m.*]

She died of old age. [*vieillesse, f.*]

He has hanged himself out of, or through, despair.  
*se pendre désespoir.*

(a) Turn, I am going to direct you.

(b) Don't ye, is n'est-ce pas? in French.

(c) Turn, when the weather is clear.

# More Exercises upon the Prepositions and Nouns of Number.

The first man was Adam, and the first woman Eve.

Two famous astronomers have given out two eclipses, and  
*fameux astronome, m. annoncer éclipse, f.*  
 two experienced politicians have foretold two great events.

*habile politique, m. prédire événement, m.*

The Duke of A. was one of the two plenipotentiaries.  
*Duc, m. plénipotentiaire, m.*

I shall pay him the tenth of next month.  
*payer prochain mois, m.*

Of the four phenomena which were to be seen, I have seen  
*phénomène, m. paroître,*  
 the two last only.

The first dozen commonly costs more than the second.  
*douzaine, f. ordinairement coûter.*

I have got a dozen, and you thirty.

Lewis the Fourteenth was a great man, but much inferior  
*Louis inférieur*  
 to Henry the Fourth, and Francis the First, of France.  
*Henri François.*

Francis the Second succeeded Henry the Second. [*succéder.*]

'Tis the fifth branch of the third race of Kings which is  
*branche, f. race, f.*  
 upon the throne. [*trône, m.*]

We see here a list of the ships which compose the royal fleet  
*voir liste, f. vaisseau, m. composer royal flotte, f.*  
 of Great Britain, with the places where they were, the 12th  
*Gra de Bretagne, f. endroit, m.*

of February 1741, to wit, in England 94 men of war, 7 whereof  
*Février savoir Angleterre vaisseau de guerre*  
 of the first rate, 13 of the second, 22 of the third, 26 of the  
*rang, f.*

fourth, 15 of the fifth, and 11 of the 6th. There are besides  
*outré cela*  
 2 fire-ships, 6 bomb-vessels, 10 provision ships, 13 sloops, 4  
*brûlot, m. galiote bombes, f. provision chaloupe, f.*

yachts, and five small ones. [*yacht, m.*]

In Ireland, 4 ships, 2 of the fourth, and 2 of the sixth rate,  
*Irlande rang*  
 with a yacht. At Leith in Scotland, one of the fifth rate.  
*Leith Ecoffe.*

At Cape Finistère, Lisbon, Oporto, and in Africa, 5 ships, one  
*Cap Finistère, m. Lisbonne Afrique, f.*  
 of the third rate, one of the fourth, and three of the sixth, with  
 two sloops.



In the Mediterranean, and with Admiral Haddock, 15 ships  
*Méditerranée, f. Amiral, m.*  
 3 of the third, 9 of the fourth, and 3 of the fifth, with 4 fire  
 ships.

At the West Indies, 56 ships; to wit, at Jamaica, and with  
*Indes Occidentales, f. savoir Jamaïque, f.*  
 Admiral Vernon, 19 ships. 3 of the third rate, 9 of the fourth,  
 3 of the fifth, and 4 of the sixth, with 5 fire-ships, and one  
 provision ship.

Under Admiral Ogle, 22 ships; 12 of the third, and 10 of  
 the fourth rate, with 6 fire-ships, and 2 hospital ships.

With commodore Anson 5 ships; 3 of the fourth, 1 of the  
*chef d'Escadre, m.*  
 fifth, and 1 of the sixth rate, with a sloop.

At New York, Virginia, South Carolina, Barbadoes, Ba-  
*Nouvelle York, f. Virginie, f. Méridionale Caroline, f. Barbade, f.*  
 hama Islands, and those under the wind, 10 ships, 1 of the 4th,  
*ile, f.*

3 of the fifth, and six of the sixth rate, with 2 sloops.

Convoys 5 ships, 1 of the fourth, 2 of the fifth, and 2 of the  
*Convoi*  
 sixth rate. In Holland one yacht.

Total 180 men of war, 17 fire-ships, 6 bomb vessels, 2 pro-  
 vision ships, 2 hospital ships, 19 sloops, 11 yachts, together  
 237. [*ensemble.*]

Yesterday, Christmas-day, according to the old stile, the King,  
*fête de Noël* *deux stile, m.*  
 attended by the Duke of Cumberland, the Princesses, the  
*accompagné Duc, m. Princesse, f.*  
 Knights of the three Orders, the Garter, Thistle, and Bath,  
*Chevalier, m. Ordre, m. Jarretière, f. Chardon, m. Bain, m.*  
 with their Collars, went to the Royal Chapel, and heard the

(a) *Colier se rendre Chapelle, f. entendre*  
 sermon preached by Dr. A. Bishop of B. After divine service,  
*sermon, m. prononcé Docteur Evêque, m. divine service, m.*  
 his Majesty and their Royal Highnesses received the sacrament  
*Majesté, f. Altesse, f. recevoir communion, m.*

from the hands of the Bishop of London, Dean of the Chapel;  
*main, f. Evêque, m. Londres Doyen, m. Chapelle, f.*  
 assisted by the Bishop of C. Afterwards the King put upon  
*assisté ensuite melle*  
 the altar, as usual, the offering of a wedge of gold.  
*autel selon la coutume offrande, m. lingot, m. d'or, m.*

(2) And in the French invested, before with, (*revêtu*.)

Europe.

Europe, in relation to the other parts of the world, lies  
*Europe, f. autre, partie, f. monde, m. être situé*  
 northward. It is bounded on the east by Asia, and the Euxine  
*au nord borné orient, m. Asie, f. Pont Euxin, m.*  
 or Black sea, which communicates with the Mediterranean by  
*noir mer, f. communiquer Méditerranée, f.*  
 the straits of Constantinople. On the south by Africa and the  
*détroit, m. Constantinople midi, m. Afrique, f.*  
 Mediterranean sea. On the west by the Atlantic ocean, and  
*occident, m. Atlantique océan, m.*  
 on the north by the Arctic Pole, and the great icy sea. Is  
*septentrion, m. Arctique Pole, m. glacial mer, f.*  
 length, taken from Cape St. Vincent, on the south-west of Spain,  
*longueur, f. mesuré Cap, m. Vincent sud-ouest, m. Espagne, f.*  
 to the river Oby on the frontiers of Moscovy, is about 3600  
*rivière Oby, f. frontière, f. Moscovie, f.*  
 English miles: and its breadth, from Sweden to Greece, is about  
*Angleterre mille largeur, f. Suède Grèce.*  
 2200 miles.

France has Spain towards the south, from which Nature has  
*France, f. Espagne, f. midi, m. Nature, f.*  
 divided it by the Pyrenean mountains, which are of a surprising  
*séparer Pyrénées, f. (a) surprenant*  
 height, and extend from the Mediterranean to the great Ocean,  
*hauteur s'étendre Méditerranée, f. Océan, m.*  
 which is a tract of 100 miles. Northwards it has the Channel,  
*(b) étendue de pays, f. au nord la Manche*  
 and the Austrian Netherlands. It is eastwards parted from  
*Autriche en Pays Bas, m. à l'orient séparé*  
 Germany by the Rhine, from the Swiss by the Swiss moun-  
*Allemagne, f. Rhin, m. Suisse, m. mon-*  
 tains, and from Italy by the Alps. Westward it has that part of the  
*tagne, f. Italie, f. Alpes, f. au couchant partie, f.*  
 great Ocean called the Bay of Biscay. It is now computed about  
*Océan, m. appelé Baie, f. Biscaye à présent compter*  
 900 English miles long, including the conquered countries, from  
*mille longueur y compris conquis pays, m.*  
 the most southern parts of the Low-countries to the Mediter-  
*méridional partie, f. Pays Bas, m.*  
 ranean. *[Méditerranée, f.]*

The air of Spain is generally very good, and the soil fertile,  
*air, m. Espagne en général bon terroir, m. fertile*  
 were it but as well cultivated. In the time of the Romans, Spain  
*(c) cultivé tems, m. Romain, m.*

(a) This word is left out in French.

(b) Is, is made by makes.

(c) Turn, if it were.



| was looked upon as | the most plentiful and fruitful country  
*passer pour* | *abondant fertile pays*, m.  
 in the world, and produced every thing that either ambition or  
*monde*, m. *produire* *ambition*, f.  
 necessity required. They sent, in a few years to Italy, 60,000  
*nécessité*, f. (a) *envoyer peu année*  
 weight of unwrought silver; of coarse silver, 40,000 weight; and  
*livre pesant non travaillé argent*, m. *grossier*  
 of gold, 10,000 weight; and besides all this a vast quantity of  
*or*, m. *prodigieuse quantité* or *argent*  
 coin. History tells us that the country abounded in men, horses,  
*monnoyé. Histoire dire* *pays*, m. *abonder* *cheval*, m.  
 and cattle, that it produced corn, wine and oil in abundance,  
*bétail*, m. *produire grain*, m. *vin*, m. *huile*, f. *abondance*  
 and that it was stored with mines of gold and silver, brass, iron,  
*rempli* *mine*, f. *cuivre*, m. *fer*, m.  
 lead, quicksilver, and salt; and that in general the country was  
*plomb*, m. *vif-argent*, m. *sél*, m. *général*  
 very fruitful. [*fertile*.]

In Old Castile is Valladolid, one of the largest and finest cities  
*vieil Castile*, f. *Valladolid* *grand beau ville*, f.  
 in all Spain. In it are 130 churches, 70 convents, a bishopric,  
*Espagne*, f. *église*, f. *couvent*, m. *evêché*, m.  
 and an university. [*université*.]

Seville, the capital of Andalusia, exceeds in largeness, trade,  
*capitale*, f. *Andalousie*, f. *surpasser* *grandeur commerce*  
 riches, and beauty, all the cities in Spain.  
*richesses beauté* *ville*, f. *Espagne*.

Antwerp, about a century and a half ago, was the most flour-  
*Anvers* *siècle*, m. *demi* *florissant*  
 ishing and richest trading city in the whole world. It was splen-  
*riche commerce ville*, f. *univers*, m. *pillé*  
 dered for three days in 1576, by the soldiers of the duke of Alba.  
*jour* *soldat*, m. *duc*, m. *d'Albe*.

The Dutch furnished for the siege of Lille, an artillery 12  
*Hollandois fournir* *siège*, m. *Lille train d'artillerie*, m.  
 miles long, drawn by 36,000 horses, and escorted by 18,000 men.  
*mille longueur tiré* *cheval*, m. *escorté*.

Stockholm is built on six small islands, which are joined to-  
*Stockholm*, m. *bâti* *île*, m. *se joindre*  
 gether by wooden bridges. There are in this city many stately  
*bois pont*, m. *plusieurs superbe*  
 palaces which are covered with copper.  
*palais*, m. *couvert* *cuivre*.

(a) Turn thus, that could satisfy ambition, &c. (*satisfaire*.)

Venice is built on 72 islands, in the midst of the Adriatic  
*Venise milieu Adriatique*  
 sea, also called the Gulf of Venice. It is a large, magnificent,  
*mer, f. aussi appelle Golfe, m.*  
 and wonderful city. There are 450 bridges, among which the  
*surprenant ville, f. pont, m.*

Rialto is the most grand, being built of fine marble, with only  
*Rialto, m. superbe marbre seulement*  
 one arch, under which a ship may pass in full sail. There are  
*arche, f. vaisseau, m. pouvoir passer plien voile, f.*

52 large and little squares, amongst which that of St. Mark's  
*place, f. Marc*

the finest; 150 magnificent palaces; 115 noble steeples; 64  
*magnifique palais, m. superbe clocher, m.*

statues in brass; 20 monuments, or pillars of brass; 70 churches;  
*statue, f. bronze monument, m. colonne, f. eglise, f.*

39 friaries; 28 nunneries; and 17 rich hospitals. Out of the  
*couvent d'hommes, m. couvent de filles, m. riche hospital, m.*

Arsenal 20,000 infantry, and 25,000 cavalry may be immediate-  
*Arsenal homme d'infanterie homme de cavalerie pouvoir sur le champ*  
 ly armed. [but make armed by *drawn to arm (armer)* and to  
 by *dequoi.*]

The Electorate of Bavaria is 120 miles long, and 104 broad,  
*Electorat, m. Baviere mille longueur large-geur*

and contains 30 cities, 94 market towns, 8 bishopricks, 35  
*contenir ville gros bourg, m. evêché, m.*

convents, above 1000 Noblemen's seats, 11,704 villages, and  
*couvent, m. Noblesse château, m. village, m.*

28,709 church

*église.*  
 Denmark, one of the three northern kingdoms, derives its  
*Danemarck, m. nord royaume, m. tirer*

name from its first King Dan, who lived in the time of David,  
*nom, m. vivre tens, m.*

1000 years before the birth of Christ. That kingdom is situated  
*an naissance, f. Jesus Christ royaume, m. situé*

between the North-sea and the Baltick. The communication  
*Nord-mer, f. Baltique, f. communication, f.*

of the one sea with the other is through the straits of the  
*mer, m. autre se faire par detroit, m.*

Sound. Nature has divided it, 1st. into two large islands;  
*Sund, m. Nature, f. diviser grand ilz, f.*

2d, small ones; and 3d, a fruitful Peninsula abounding  
*petit fertile Presqu'île, f. abonder*

with corn, pulse, and fruit; and as there is plenty of good  
*grain légume fruit quantité, f.*



pasture, the country abounds with cattle. The cattle that are  
*pâturage, m. pays, m. abonder bétail*  
 transported yearly from Jutland to Germany, must pass thro'  
*mener tous les ans Jutlande Allemagne passer*  
 Sleswick, where the toll is received, which amounts yearly  
*peage, m. recevoir monter par an*  
 to upwards of 200,000 Crowns. [*Ecu.*]

A girl walking one day from Osterby to Mell-Tundern in  
*filie, f. marcher jour, m. Osterbi*  
 the Duchy of Sleswick, hit her toes against something pointed.  
*Duché, m. heurter pié, m. pointu*  
 She knew not what it was at first, but after digging round it  
*favoir d'abord creuser*  
 with her fingers, she pulled out a horn of the finest gold. It  
*doigt, m. tirer de terre corne, f. pur or*  
 is about 100 ounces weight, and embellished with several hiero-  
*once (a) orné plusieurs hié-*  
 roglyphical figures, | much in the same manner of the Egypt-  
*roglphique figure à peu près comme égypte*  
 tian Pyramids. It is 25 inches long, and 4 wide at the open-  
*Pyramide poce long-gueur couver-*  
 ing. It is to this day preserved in the Royal Treasury, as a  
*ture, f. conserver Royal Trésor, m.*  
 curious piece of antiquity.  
*curieux pièce, f. ancien. (b)*

Prague is one of the largest, finest, and most populous cities  
*Prague grand beau peuple ville, f.*  
 in Europe. It is 12 miles in circumference: in it are above  
*Europe mille tour, m.*  
 100 Churches and as many Palaces. The Moldau flows thro'  
*Eglise autant Palais, m. Moldau, m. passer*  
 the middle of the city, over which is a stately stone bridge.  
*milieu, m. magnifique pierre pont, m.*  
 The Jews, who are reckoned 50,000 in number, have in their  
*Juif compter nombre*  
 quarter 9 Synagogues.  
*quartier Synagogue.*

(a) To be weight is *peser*, or *être du poids de*.

(b) This substantive must be made by its adjective in French.

## I C H A P. XVII.

*Upon the Construction of those Words, wherein chiefly consists the IDIOM of French.*

*Avoir is used instead of être when we speak of being old, &c.*

I. **A VOIR**, *to have*, is used instead of *être*, when we speak of being old, hungry, thirsty, cold, and hot, relating to the weather, as it effects men. But observe, that *chaud* and *froid* are indelible in such phrases; these words being then used adverbially: therefore let not a woman say *J'ai chaude*, and still less *Je suis chaude*.

II. With respect to being hot and cold, the *English* pronouns possessive, conjoined with the nouns of the parts said to be hot, or cold, are made by the pronoun personal, expressing the subject before *avoir*, in *French*, and the noun of the part is put in the dative: as, *J'ai froid aux pieds, aux mains*.

III. It is the same when we speak of any pain, wound, or sore which we have got in any part of our body. We use *avoir* without a pronoun possessive before the noun of the sick or wounded part, which is always put in the dative, and the words *pain* and *sore* are rendered by *mal*: as, *J'ai mal à la tête, aux yeux*.

How old are you? (*Turn. What age have you?*) *âge, m.*

I am sixteen years old. I did not think that you were so old.

*croire*

*âge.*

*Ec.* [my part] I am one-and-thirty. [*moi.*]

Is your mother very old? She is almost ninety.

*mère*

*âge*

*près*

*de.*

Are you colder? On the contrary, I am very warm, but I am

*froid*

*au*

*contraire*

*chaud*

tired. I am very cold and very hungry. |

*las*

*froid*

*faim.*



You are hungry you say; and I am very dry. [*soif,*]

Your sister had got a sore nose last week; now she has sore  
*sœur* (a) *nez, m. passé semaine, f. & présent*  
 lips. I wish she had a sore tongue.  
*lèvre, f. souhaiter* *langue, f.*

My cousin is wounded in his side and in his arms; but the  
*cousin, m. blessé* *côté, m.* | *bras, m.*  
 man who fought with him is wounded in the belly.  
*se battre* *ventre, m.*

My hands are so cold that I cannot write.

*main, f. froid* *saurois écrire.*

I believe your head is always cold; for you seldom pull your

*croire* *tête, f.* *froid car rarement*

hat off. [*ôter chapeau.*]

How old is your sister? She is not fifteen yet. I thought  
 she was twenty.

I was very cold this morning when I came; but I am very  
*matin* *arriver*

warm now. You don't look so.

*chaud à présent* *paraître.*

You eat as if you were not hungry. Excuse me, I eat heartily;

*manger* *faim excuser* *de bon appétit*

for I am very hungry.

I am more dry than hungry. I have been thirsty all the day..

*soif* *altéré* *jour*

I am dry too. [*soif aussi.*]

*The Particles at and upon, with the word playing, &c.*

IV. Jouer, to play, is both neuter and active in French, tho' it be but in very few cases active in English.

V. The particle at, used after the word playing, before the names of games and exercises, is expressed in French by the particles, à, au, à la, aux; and the particle upon, used before the names of instruments by du, de la, des.

Do you never play at cards? I play sometimes at piquet and

*jamais jouer* *carte, f.* *quelquefois piquet, m.*

at quadrille, to oblige the company.

*quadrille, m. obliger* *compagnie, f.*

Let us play for a crown. I never play so high. I don't care

*écu, m.* *gros jeu* *se soucier*

(a) This word is left out in French.

to play for so much money.

*tant argent.*

I don't love to play at games of chance, as at dice, or even  
*aimer jouer jeu, m. hazard, m. comme dé, m. même*  
 at cards; but I like to play sometimes at bowls, at billiards,  
*cartes, f. aimer quelquefois boule, f. billard, m.*

at tennis, or nine-pins. [*paume, f. quilles, f.*]

My cousin and I play at chess | every night. |

*cousin jouer échecs, m. tous les soirs.*

Can you play upon some instrument? I can play a little upon

*savoir jouer instrument, m. un peu*

the German flute. I thought you could play on the fiddle too.

*Allemand flute, f. croire violon, m. aussi*

No. I know that you play upon the bass-viol very well. If

*non savoir basse de viole, f.*

you please to come to our house, we will make a little concert.

*souhaiter venir faire concert, m.*

My sister will play on the harpsichord, you will play on your

*clavicin, m.*

bass-viol, and I shall sing. [*chanter.*]

VI. *MENER PORTER*, to carry, *AMENER* and *APPORTER*, to bring, must be very accurately distinguished, and fitted to the speech.

*Mener*, is said of such creatures, either rational, or irrational, that have by nature the capacity of walking, and are not disabled, either through accident or illness: and *Porter*, is said of things that cannot walk by their nature, and of persons and lame creatures that are disabled from walking on account of lameness or illness, and other infirmities: as, *Mener Monsieur chez cette Dame*, and not *porter Monsieur*, &c. but we say *portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur*, *portez cet enfant à la maison*.

*Amener* and *amener*, *porter* and *apporter*, import a relation of place, answering to the question *where, whither*: *amener* and *apporter* are used with reference to the local adverbs *here, hither*: and *mener* and *porter* to *there, thither*: as, *amenez moi votre ami*, *apportez votre ouvrage ici*.

I never go to see your brother without carrying my Ger-

*aller voir*

man flute along with me. [*flute traversière, f.*]

Carry your work to your sister, and bring me her scissors.

*ouvrage, m.*

*ciseaux, m.*

I will take you along with me into the country, if you learn

*mener*

*campagne, f. apprendre*

*well.*



well. Will you carry me to the assembly? [*assemblée.*]

You cannot walk. I will not carry you.

The next time you come to see me, bring your niece.  
*premier fois, f. nièce, f.*

Bring the horse to me.

VII. *To walk*, a verb neuter, is both *marcher* and *se promener*, with this difference, that *marcher* is said of going out for business, and imports going from one place to another, and *se promener* is said of taking a walk, an airing, or a ride. *Promener* is also used actively.

VIII. *Amitié*, friendship, is often used in the singular for favour, kindness.

IX. *Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un d'une chose*, signifies to take it well or kindly of one.

X. *To know*, is both *savoir* and *connoître*, with this difference, that the former is said of sciences, and things that are properly the object of the intellectual faculties, and have been studied or got by heart, whereas the latter is said of things that are the object of our senses, and imports properly, being acquainted with: as, *Savoir le Latin, connoître un pays.*

XI. *Marier*, and *épouser*, to marry, are active verbs; and *se marier*, is a reciprocal verb; but *marier* is said of the person who gives in marriage, or the priest who performs the ceremony of marriage, and *épouser* is said of the person who is married.

XII. *To be just, to have just*, followed by a participle passive, is expressed in French by *ne faire que de* or *venir de*.

XIII. *To fall*, followed by the particle *a*, and a participle active, is translated into French by *se mettre a*.

XIV. *Nothing but* is expressed in French by *ne que*.

XV. *Aller* and *faire*, are said of things that fit.

XVI. *Aller* and *venir* serve sometimes to denote the possibility there is for the action of the verb following to happen, and is Englished sometimes by *to happen, to chance*, and sometimes by a conditional tense only.

XVII. *Aller, venir, and revenir*, are said of ships bound from one place to another.

XVIII. *Aller*, used impersonally, with the particle *y* before, and a noun in the genitive after it, is usually Englished by *is at stake*: as, *il y alloit de la vie*, life was at stake.

XIX. *Avoir*,

XIX. *Avoir*, with the word *affaire*, signifies *to want*; but with *faire*, preceded by *ne* and *que*, it signifies *not to want, to need not, to have no occasion for*.

XX. *Penser*, in the preterite, either simple or compound, before an infinitive, without a preposition, signifies any thing that was like to have been done, but has not been done, and is Englished by *to be*, or *have like*, and *to be near*, or *ready*.

XXI. *Faire*, before an infinitive, without any preposition, signifies generally *to get, to bid, to cause, to order*, with the noun expressing the object after the verb in the infinitive, and not before, as in English; and when it signifies *to cause*, or *order*, the French infinitive is turned from its active state into the passive: as, *Il le fit mettre à mort*, he ordered him to be put to death.

XXII. *Prendre*, *to take, seize, or lay hold of*, is also used in several other senses; as in these instances:

*Le feu a pris à sa maison*, a fire broke out in his house.

*Prendre les devans*, to get the start of one, to be before-hand with one.

*Se bien prendre à faire une chose, s'y prendre de la bonne manière*, to go the right way to work, to take a right method, or course. *Il s'y prend mal*, he goes the wrong way to work.

*De la manière dont il s'y prend*, as he goes to work, as he manages matters.

*S'en prendre à quelqu'un, or à quelque chose*, to tax one; to lay the fault, or to lay it upon one, or upon a thing.

*Se prendre à quelque chose*, to take hold of something.

*Les gens qui se noient se prennent à tout ce qu'ils trouvent*, people who are drowning, take hold of any thing they meet with.

*Si l'affaire ne réussit pas, je m'en prendrai à vous*, if the affair don't succeed, I'll come upon you, I'll lay the blame upon you.

*S'il y a du mal, prenez-vous en à vous-même*, if any thing be amiss, you may thank yourself for it.

*Prendre parti*, to list one's self.

*Prendre son parti*, to take one's resolution.

Let us walk a little in the garden. I am tired: I have walked  
un peu                      jardin, m.                      las

too much to-day. Well, we shall go upon the river, if you  
trop                      aujourd'hui Eh bien                      rivière, f.

please; and if you don't please, we shall stay at home.

rester                      logis, m.

I am



I am used to walk two hours every day, and he usēs to ride  
*avoir coutume* *heure tous les jours* *monter à cheval*  
 twice a week. [*deux fois semaine, f.*]

You are not complaisant. Why will not you do me that  
*complaisant* *vouloir*  
 friendship? [*amitié, f.*]

If you do me that favour, I will take it kindly of you.  
*en savoir bon gré.*

Take it kindly or unkindly, I can't.

Do you know Mr. A. has married Miss B?

They were married last week. [*la semaine passée.*]

I am going to-night\* where you know. [*\*ce soir.*]

He left off † just now. [*† finir.*]

When you speak to her, she falls a laughing.  
*parler* *se mettre à rire.*

She does nothing but laugh. (a)

Does not that fit me well? Pag. 168. XV.

If they should happen to quarrel, let me know of it.  
*se quereller.*

We were bound from Jamaica to Bristol. They were home-

Pag. 168. XVII. *Jamaïque, f. Bristol*  
 ward bound too. [*aussi.*]

Your dinner is at stake. [*diner, Pag. 168. XVIII.*]

I will not lend you my knife. I don't want it. I can do  
*vouloir prêter* *couteau, m.* *Pag. 169.* *pouvoir*  
 without it. [*s'en passer.*]

He had like to have fallen. [*tomber, Pag. 169.*]

Do you know the lady who spoke to me this morning?  
*dame* *matin, m.*

I know what you mean. [*vouloir dire.*]

If he call, bid him come again.

*venir* *revenir.*

They have caused him to be beheaded. [*décapiter, Pag. 169.*]

Make that child | eat his breakfast, | and, if he has not got  
*faire* *enfant, m.* *déjeuner*

enough [*assez*] give him some more. [*d'avantage.*]

Yesterday morning a fire broke out at that house which was  
*hier* *matin* *feu, m.* *prendre* *maison, f.*

building, and it was consumed in two hours. They say that  
*bâtir* *consumé* *heure, f.*

the joiner's men made a fire with chips to warm themselves,  
*garçons menuisiers, m.* *copeau, m.* *chauffer se*

and that set the house on fire. [*mettre le feu à.*]

(a) To do nothing but, is *Ne faire que*, with an infinitive without a preposition.

Have, after the particles *might, could, would, and ought to*, which is liable to be mistaken for the sign of the compound tense to the participle passive following, belongs to, and is part of these particles, which are then Verbs and not Signs; (though it is sometimes the same when they are signs,) and the participle is turned into the infinitive.

He will have his wife like what he does.

*vouloir femme aimer.*

She should do it in spite of him. (a)

Children should never hear such things.

*enfant jamais entendre tel chose, f.*

They might have attacked the enemy.

*pouvoir attaquer ennemi, m.*

I could never have bestowed my pains better.

*pouvoir employer peine, f.*

There could have been no living at all without arts.

*ou pouvoir vivre du tout art, m.*

The fortifications might have been destroyed.

*fortification, f. pouvoir détruire.*

I could not do better. He could have done better. (b)

I would have you do that. (a) I would have had you done it.

I wish you had done it. [*souhaiter.*]

You never could come more seasonably. [*à propos.*]

He would not have taken arms. [*armes.*]

If I would have employed my pains in that.

*vouloir employer peine à.*

He ought to have been sent. [*devoir envoyer.*]

Cities could not have been built without an assembly of men.

*ville bâtir société, f.*

There could have been neither navigation nor agriculture

*pouvoir navigation agriculture*

without the assistance of men. [*industrie.*]

What would you have had me do for you?

Most people think that if he would have pursued the enemy

*ou croire vouloir poursuivre ennemi*

briskly, he might have ended the war that day.

*vigoureusement pouvoir finir guerre, f. jour.*

(a) This may be the *Imperfect, Perfect, or Compound of the Present and Conditional*, according to the sense of the sentence, which must be determined.

But these sentences must be rendered all possible ways.

(b) The *Compound of the Conditional*.



## CHAP. XVIII.

*Upon the Irregular Constructions of the Pronouns Personal and Possessive.*

I. THE pronouns *il, ils, elle, elles, le, la, les*, either governing or being governed of a verb, are indifferently used for all sorts of objects, rational and irrational, animate or inanimate; but when the same pronouns attend the verb *to be*, the pronouns supplying indeclinable *le* must be used in speaking of irrational and inanimate things: as, *Est-ce là votre livre, ou ce l'est*, and never *c'est lui*.

II. *Il, ils, elle, elles*, are used through all their cases, when the objects are personified, and one attributes to them what is attributed to persons; which the French frequently do in speaking of virtues and vices: as, *L'amour propre est capiteux: c'est lui qui nous séduit*.

III. Use has consecrated *lui, leur, de lui, à elle, &c.* to such odd ways of construction, as are impossible to be reduced to rules. Thus, speaking of inanimate things, we must sometimes use *lui* and *leur*, and sometimes we must not, though we be speaking of the same things. Thus we say of a sword, *Je lui dois la vie*; and we do not say, *Je lui fis mettre une garde*, but *j'y fis mettre*.

IV. The conjunctives *lui* and *leur*, are generally said of animate things; but *lui* and *leur*, governed by a preposition, can never be said at all of irrational and inanimate creatures.—Therefore when *lui, elle, leur, &c.* relating to irrational and inanimate creatures, are governed by a preposition, one must make use of an adverb whose signification comprehends and answers to that of both the preposition and pronoun: as, *Prenez ce cheval et montez dessus*, and not *prenez ce cheval et montez sur lui*; ouvrez ce cabinet et mettez vous *dedans*; and not *ouvrez ce cabinet et mettez vous dans lui*.

If truth shewed itself to men in all its beauty, they would  
*visible, f. montrer* *beauté, f.*

love

love nothing else. • They would burn with love for it.

*aimer* (a) • *brûler* • *amour*.

Self-love is our *primum mobile*. 'Tis it rules our passions;

• *amour propre*, m. *grand mobile*, m. • *régler* • *passion*, f.

and to it men are indebted for most of the services which they

*redevable la plupart* • *service*, m.

reciprocally render one another. [*reciproquement rendre*.]

Glory makes the whole ambition of heroes. They gape

*gloire*, f. • *tout ambition*, f. • *héros* • *respirer*

after nothing else; they seek for nothing else. They apply to it

(a) • *chercher* • *s'adresse*.

alone: 'tis for it alone they make vows. [*vœu*.]

Most men worship love: to it they sacrifice their finest days,

• *adorer amour*, m. • *sacrifier* • *beau jour*, m.

and from it they expect their greatest happiness.

• *attendre* • *grand félicité*, f.

You have got fine birds; buy a fine cage for them.

• *oiseau*, m. • *acheter cage*, f.

My lady | is exceedingly fond of | her parrot: she has it

*dame* • *aimer à la folie* • *perroquet*, m.

constantly with her. [*toujours*.]

Is that the tree of which you were speaking? Yes, that's it.

• *arbre*, m. • *parler* • *oui*.

It looks very fine, but its fruit | is good for nothing. |

• *paraître bien* • *fruit*, m. • *ne valoir rien*.

This, on the contrary, has no appearance. 'Tis a peach tree,

• *au contraire* • *apparence*, f. • *pêcher*, m.

and its peaches are | charmingly good. | [*pêche*, f. *délicieux*.]

The door was shut, and the mob stood before it, in expect-

*porte*, f. • *fermé* • *populace*, f. • *se tenir* • *attendre*

tation that somebody would go out of the house; but there

• *sortir*

was nobody in it.

Take care of my birds; give them food. This is dry, give

• *prendre* • *oiseau*, m. • *mangeaille*, f. • *seif*

him water. [*eau*.]

When he saw himself pursued so close, he reached the river,

• *voir* • *poursuivi de si près* • *gagner fleuve*, m.

and threw himself in it | on horseback | with a design to cross it

• *jette* • *à cheval* • *à dessein traverser*

over, tho' it was so rapid. When he came to the stream, for all

• *rapide* • (b) • *courant*, m. *quelque*

(a) Nothing else is made in French by it alone; and alone, ne and que.

(b) Turn, when he was arrived.



that he did to resist it, he could not conquer it. He then re-  
*faire résister*      *se rendre maître*      *donc ré-*  
 solved to go down with it, and let himself be carried away by  
*soudre*      *suivre*      *laisser*      *emporter*  
 it: but his horse was too tired to be able to swim long; and

*cheval, m. trop fatigué pouvoir nager long tems*  
 he endeavoured to quit the stream, his horse, that had lost  
*s'efforcer*      *quitter* *st. de l'eau, m.*      *perdre*

his strength, fell under him. He expected it, and therefore  
*force, f.*      *s'abattre*      *s'attendre*      *par consequent*

did not wonder at it. He still swam for a while with the stream  
*être surpris*      *encore nager quelque tems*      *courant,*

but not being able to leave it, he was drowned in it.  
*pouvoir quitter*      *se noyer.*

The water which you have recommended him to drink  
*eau, f.*      *recommander*      *boire*

is not fit for him. I know all its qualities, and will never  
*propre*      *qualité, f.*

commend it in such a case. [*pareil cas.*]

Of these two rivers, one has its spring in the Alps, and the  
*fleuve, m.*      *source, f.*      *Alpes*

other has it in the Pyreneans. [*Pyrenées.*]

I have bought a new sword; the hilt of it is silver, but  
*acheter neuf épée, f.*      *garde, f.*      *argent*

don't like its shell. I will not part with the old one. It has  
*aimer plaque, f.*      *se défaire*      *vieux*

done me too much service. I have owed twice my life to  
*rendre trop grand service, m.*      *devoir deux fois vie, f.*

Only I will get it cleaned, and put a new hilt to it, and it will  
*seulement*      *faire nettoyer*      *mettre*      *garde, f.*

be of service still to me by night.

*servir*      *de nuit.*

If you sit in that easy chair | take care not to hurt your  
*s'asseoir*      *fauteuil, m.*      *prendre garde se faire du mal*

self, for the back and elbows are broke.

*dos, m.*      *bras, m.*      *rompu.*

The table is greasy; don't go near it.

*table, f.*      *gras*      *s'appuyer.*

Keep from the wall; don't go near it.

*se tenir loin*      *mur, m.*      *approcher.*

His house is fine. I like its situation, but the rooms are not  
*maison, f.*      *aimer situation, f.*      *chambre, f.*

well contrived. He has spent a great deal of money upon it. He  
*ménagé*      *faire de grandes dépenses*

has altered the roof, and made a stately stair-case. It costs him  
*faire changer toit, m.*      (a) *superbe escalier, m.*      *couter*

(a) Turn, he caused to be made.

much, but | upon the whole | he owes his health to it. He lives  
*après tout devoir santé, f. demeurer*  
 there all the year. [*année, f.*]

This horse had eaten his oats, though the other had not eaten  
*cheval, m. manger avoine, f.*

half of his: then he broke his halter, and got loose.  
*moitié, après cela rompre licou, m. s'échaper.*

He has got his bit between his teeth.

*prendre le mors aux dents.*

Take this cushion, and lean upon it.

*prendre coussin, m. s'appuyer.*

I love my seat: the gardens are very fine. I have altered  
*château, m. jardin, m. changer*

the flower-gardens, and added groves and water-spouts. There  
*parterre, m. ajouter bosquet, m. jet d'eau, m.*  
 are fine meadows round it. [*prairie, f.*]

I likewise design to make alterations to my garden. I will  
*aussi avoir dessein changement, m. jardin, m.*  
 make a terras-walk, and a grotto under it.  
*terrasse, f. grotte, f.*

## CHAP. XIX.

### Upon the Pronouns, en, y, le, &c.

I. THE pronouns *en* and *y* are used both for things and  
 persons, and are indeclinable.

II. *Le* is also used for things and persons, and is declinable;  
 1<sup>st</sup>, whenever it relates to a substantive. 2<sup>dly</sup>, It is declinable,  
 but in the singular only, in the sentences wherein a woman  
 speaks of herself. In all other cases, that is, when it relates  
 to an adjective, or many adjectives together, it is indeclinable.

Is Miss married? No, I am not. She is not.

*Mademoiselle mariée non.*

Are you sick, sister? Yes, I am sick, and I am afraid to be  
*malade sœur oui craindre*

so long. [*long temps.*]

Are you that lady's daughter? Yes, I am.

*dame fille.*

Is that your notion? Yes, it is. She says that that is her

*idée, f.*

*dire*

notion, do you think that it is? [*croire.*]

That



That is not your thought: yet it ought to be so.

*pensée, f. cependant devoir.*

Is that your wife? Yes, 'tis she.

Is not that your boy? [*garçon.*] Yes, 'tis he.

Is that your horse? Yes, it is.

Are those ladies arrived? [*arrivé.*] Yes, they are.

Are they out of order? [*indisposé.*] They are so.

We have been sick, [*malade*] and are so still. [*encore.*]

Are these your sisters? Yes, they are.

Is that your house? [*maison, f.*] Yes, that is it.

Are these his houses? Yes, they are.

These are not my gloves? [*gand.*] Yes, they are.

That is not your fine snuff-box? Is it? Yes, it is. [*tabatière.*]

### More Exercises upon Interrogations.

In what does true religion consist?

*vrai religion, f. consister.*

Who subdued the greatest part of the world in 12 years time?

*conquérir grand partie, f. monde, m. ans*

Alexander, King of Macedon.

*Alexandre Roi Macédoine.*

To whom do the Azores islands belong, what number is there of them, and how do they lie?

*Azores ile, f. appartenir (Turn, How many*

*of them are there?) être situé.*

Of what extent is the country of Brasil, and by whom was it discovered? [*découvert.*]

How is that country divided, and what is the produce of it?

*divisé produit, m.*

Are the inhabitants divided into several nations?

*habitant, m. divisé différent nation, f.*

What is | worthy of notice | in that country? Is there no-

*remarquable pays, m.*

thing worthy of notice?

Are there any European colonies in that country?

*Européen colonie.*

From whence had America its name? From Americo Vesputio,

*d'où Amérique, f. nom, m. Americ Vespuce*

a Florentine, in 1497, tho' Columbus was the first who discovered it. [*découvrir.*]

Which are the principal places on the coast?

*principal endroit, m. côte, f.*

What sort of people are the Arabs? And what is their government? [*gouvernement, m.*]

How large is that country?

*grand pays, m.*

# EXERCISES

UPON THE

## FRENCH TONGUE.

### PART III.

**I**T is certain<sup>a</sup> that in French<sup>b</sup>, as well as in English<sup>c</sup>, *Are you a Prince?* has a sense<sup>d</sup> very different<sup>e</sup> from *Are you the Prince?* because in the last<sup>f</sup> sentence<sup>g</sup> the article<sup>h</sup> denotes<sup>i</sup> a singularity<sup>k</sup> which is not in the first. Nevertheless<sup>l</sup> these two sentences cannot be exprest<sup>m</sup> but in this way<sup>n</sup> in Latin<sup>o</sup>, *Esne Princeps?* Therefore the Latins, for want of articles, were obliged to confound<sup>p</sup>, and imply<sup>q</sup> in<sup>r</sup> the same terms<sup>s</sup>, very different ideas<sup>t</sup>, and to leave<sup>v</sup> to the reader<sup>x</sup> or hearer<sup>w</sup> the care<sup>x</sup> of distinguishing<sup>y</sup> them at the risque<sup>z</sup> of often mistaking<sup>a</sup> them.

Proper<sup>b</sup> names<sup>c</sup> take no article, because they individually<sup>d</sup> and of themselves distinguish the things, and persons which are spoken of. 'Tis | on that account<sup>e</sup> | that no article is put<sup>f</sup> in English before the names of persons and cities, nor those of the divers<sup>g</sup> countries<sup>h</sup>, provinces<sup>i</sup>, rivers<sup>k</sup>, and mountains<sup>l</sup>. Nevertheless<sup>m</sup> use<sup>n</sup> requires<sup>o</sup> one in French before almost<sup>p</sup> all those nouns, except proper names of persons and places<sup>q</sup>; and will have you exprest<sup>r</sup> with articles Europe<sup>s</sup>, Asia<sup>t</sup>, Africa<sup>v</sup>, and America<sup>x</sup>. The rules<sup>w</sup> of the Grammar<sup>x</sup> shew<sup>y</sup> what words<sup>z</sup> take the article, and in what circumstances<sup>a</sup>.

Those rules are founded<sup>b</sup> upon use, which will have you say with different particles, *Persean<sup>c</sup> stuffs<sup>d</sup>, and China<sup>e</sup> stuffs*: to go to England; to arrive in Sweden<sup>f</sup>: and to go to Peru<sup>g</sup>; to

<sup>a</sup> certain <sup>b</sup> François <sup>c</sup> Anglios <sup>d</sup> sens <sup>e</sup> différent <sup>f</sup> dernier <sup>g</sup> phrase <sup>h</sup> article  
<sup>i</sup> dénoter <sup>k</sup> singularité <sup>l</sup> cependant <sup>m</sup> s'exprimer <sup>n</sup> manière <sup>o</sup> Latin <sup>p</sup> confondre  
<sup>q</sup> envelopper <sup>r</sup> sous <sup>s</sup> terme <sup>t</sup> idée <sup>v</sup> laisser <sup>x</sup> lecteur <sup>w</sup> auditeur  
<sup>x</sup> loin <sup>y</sup> distinguer <sup>z</sup> hazard <sup>a</sup> s'empêcher <sup>b</sup> propre <sup>c</sup> nom <sup>d</sup> individuellement  
<sup>e</sup> pour cette raison <sup>f</sup> mettre <sup>g</sup> divers <sup>h</sup> pays <sup>i</sup> province <sup>k</sup> rivière <sup>l</sup> montagne  
<sup>m</sup> néanmoins <sup>n</sup> usage <sup>o</sup> demander <sup>p</sup> presque <sup>q</sup> lieu <sup>r</sup> dire <sup>s</sup> Europe <sup>t</sup> Asie  
<sup>v</sup> Afrique <sup>x</sup> Amérique <sup>w</sup> règle <sup>x</sup> grammaire <sup>y</sup> marquer <sup>z</sup> mot <sup>a</sup> cas <sup>b</sup> fondé  
<sup>c</sup> Perse <sup>d</sup> étoffe <sup>e</sup> Chine <sup>f</sup> Suède <sup>g</sup> Pérou.



arrive at Carolina<sup>a</sup>; to return<sup>b</sup> from France, to set out<sup>c</sup> from Italy; and to return from China, to come from Mexico<sup>d</sup>.

'Tis use requires<sup>e</sup> such<sup>f</sup> or such<sup>g</sup> particles before an adjective<sup>h</sup> followed<sup>i</sup> by its substantive<sup>k</sup>; and such and such another<sup>l</sup>, when the substantive comes<sup>m</sup> first; so that<sup>n</sup> it is necessary to know the rules of the French language<sup>o</sup> to express<sup>p</sup> these<sup>q</sup> following<sup>r</sup> sentences<sup>s</sup>.

Glory<sup>t</sup> and infamy<sup>v</sup> are vain<sup>\*</sup> and imaginary<sup>w</sup>, if they be not referred<sup>x</sup> to the real<sup>y</sup> goods<sup>z</sup> and evils<sup>a</sup> which attend<sup>b</sup> them.

The clemency<sup>c</sup> of princes is sometimes<sup>d</sup> but a policy<sup>e</sup> to get<sup>f</sup> the affection of the people<sup>g</sup>. The clemency, of which men make a virtue, is practised<sup>h</sup> sometimes<sup>i</sup> through vanity<sup>k</sup>; sometimes through laziness<sup>l</sup>, sometimes out of fear<sup>m</sup>, and almost always out of the three together<sup>n</sup>.

I never<sup>o</sup> drink<sup>p</sup> water<sup>q</sup> after wine<sup>r</sup>.

Wise<sup>s</sup> people<sup>t</sup> have told me that he loves study<sup>v</sup>, and that he has made great improvements<sup>w</sup> in learning<sup>x</sup> already<sup>y</sup>.

Lucre<sup>z</sup> will never make me do | any thing<sup>a</sup> | dishonest<sup>b</sup>.

The Cathedral<sup>c</sup> church<sup>d</sup> of Salisbury<sup>e</sup> is one of the finest<sup>f</sup> in the kingdom<sup>g</sup>. There are as many gates<sup>h</sup> as months<sup>i</sup> in the year<sup>j</sup>, as many windows<sup>k</sup> as weeks<sup>l</sup>, and as many marble<sup>m</sup> pillars<sup>n</sup> as days<sup>o</sup>.

Covetousness<sup>p</sup> often<sup>q</sup> produces<sup>r</sup> contrary<sup>s</sup> effects<sup>t</sup>. An infinite<sup>v</sup> number<sup>w</sup> of people<sup>x</sup> sacrifice<sup>y</sup> all their substance<sup>z</sup> to doubtful<sup>a</sup> and distant<sup>b</sup> hopes<sup>c</sup>. Others<sup>d</sup> condemn<sup>e</sup> great advantages<sup>f</sup> to come<sup>g</sup> | on account of | small<sup>h</sup> profits<sup>i</sup> for the present<sup>k</sup>.

Are women by their nature<sup>l</sup> as rational<sup>m</sup> as men<sup>n</sup>? and are men less over-ruled<sup>o</sup> by | self-love<sup>p</sup> | than women are?

What wife must one take not to repent<sup>r</sup> it?

The fifth King<sup>s</sup> of Rome<sup>t</sup> was Tarquinius<sup>u</sup> Priscus<sup>v</sup>, the son of Demaratus, a Corinthian<sup>w</sup>. He came<sup>x</sup> to Rome from Tarquinii<sup>y</sup>, a town<sup>z</sup> of Etruria<sup>a</sup>, from whence<sup>b</sup> he was called<sup>c</sup> Lucius Tarquinius.

*a* Caroline *b* revenir *c* partir *d* Mexique *e* vouloir *f* tel *g* particule *h* adjectif *i* suivi *k* substantif *l* autre *m* être *n* de sorte que *o* langue *p* prononce *q* these is made in French by the only *r* suivent *s* phrase *t* gloire *u* infamie *v* vain *w* imaginaire *x* reporter *y* réel *z* bien *a* mal *b* accompagner *c* clemence *d* souvent *e* politique *f* gagner *g* peuple *h* se pratiquer *i* quelquefois *k* vanité *l* paresse *m* crainte *n* ensemble *o* jamais *p* boire *q* eau *r* vin *s* gens *t* étude *u* progrès *w* science *x* déjà *y* gain *z* rien *a* déshabillée *b* cathédrale *c* église *d* Salisbury *e* beau *f* royaume *g* porte *h* mois *i* année *k* fenêtre *l* semaine *m* marbre *n* pilier *o* jour *p* avarice *q* souvent *r* produire *s* contraire *t* effet *u* infini *v* nombre *w* gens *x* sacrifier *y* bien *z* douteux *a* éloigné *b* esperance *c* autre *d* mépriser *e* avantage *f* à venir *g* pour *h* petit *i* profit *k* présent (adj.) *l* essence *m* raisonnable *n* dominé *o* amour propre *p* se repentir *q* Roi *r* Rome *s* Tarquin *t* ancien *u* Corinthien *v* venant *w* Tarquinie *x* ville *y* Etrurie *z* d'où *a* appelé.

An ancient<sup>a</sup> said that the Court<sup>b</sup> is an abode<sup>c</sup> full<sup>d</sup> of smoke<sup>e</sup>, and that oftentimes Courtiers<sup>f</sup> retire<sup>g</sup> with tears<sup>h</sup> in their eyes<sup>i</sup>. Another said that | great people<sup>k</sup> | do their utmost<sup>l</sup> to lose the use<sup>m</sup> of their feet and hands, because they get<sup>n</sup> themselves drest<sup>o</sup> and carried<sup>p</sup> by others.

We have received advice<sup>q</sup> that the Greyhound<sup>r</sup>, a 50 gun<sup>s</sup> ship<sup>t</sup> has taken and carried<sup>v</sup> to Gibraltera Spanish<sup>u</sup> privateer<sup>w</sup>, of 12 guns, and 90 men<sup>x</sup>. On the other hand<sup>y</sup> we hear that the Adventure<sup>z</sup>, bound<sup>a</sup> from Bourdeaux to Dublin, has been taken by the Spaniards<sup>b</sup>, and carried to St. Sebastian<sup>c</sup>.

Most<sup>d</sup> of the trades<sup>e</sup>, professions<sup>f</sup>, and | ways of living<sup>g</sup> | among mankind<sup>h</sup>, take<sup>i</sup> their original<sup>k</sup> either from the love of pleasure<sup>l</sup>, or the fear of want<sup>m</sup>. The former<sup>n</sup>, when it becomes<sup>o</sup> too violent<sup>p</sup>, degenerates<sup>q</sup> into luxury<sup>r</sup>, and the latter<sup>s</sup> into avarice<sup>t</sup>. It is very difficult<sup>u</sup> to make fine pictures<sup>v</sup>, handsome statues<sup>w</sup>, good music<sup>x</sup>, good verses<sup>y</sup>. Therefore<sup>z</sup> the names of those<sup>a</sup> transcending<sup>b</sup> men who have overcome<sup>c</sup> those obstacles<sup>d</sup> that | are met with<sup>e</sup> | in the arts<sup>f</sup> of painting<sup>g</sup>, statuary<sup>h</sup>, music<sup>i</sup>, and poetry<sup>k</sup>, will perhaps<sup>l</sup> last<sup>m</sup> much longer<sup>n</sup> | than the kingdoms<sup>o</sup> where they were born<sup>p</sup>.

Daily<sup>q</sup> absurdities<sup>r</sup> | hang out<sup>s</sup> | upon the sign-posts<sup>t</sup> of this city<sup>u</sup>, to the general scandal<sup>v</sup> of foreigners<sup>w</sup> as well as<sup>x</sup> those of our own country<sup>y</sup>, who are curious<sup>z</sup> spectators<sup>a</sup> of the same<sup>b</sup>. Our streets<sup>c</sup> are filled<sup>d</sup> with blue<sup>e</sup> bears<sup>f</sup>, black swans<sup>g</sup>, and red lions<sup>h</sup>; | not to mention<sup>i</sup> | flying<sup>k</sup> pigs<sup>l</sup>, and hogs<sup>m</sup> in armour<sup>n</sup>, with<sup>o</sup> many<sup>p</sup> other creatures<sup>q</sup> more extraordinary<sup>r</sup> than any<sup>s</sup> in the deserts<sup>t</sup> of Africa.

*a* ancien *b* Cour *c* séjour *d* plein *e* fumée *f* courtisan *g* sortir (add in French out of it) *h* larme (with is left out in French) *i* oeil *k* les Grands (faire tout son possible *m* usage *n* faire *o* habiller *p* porter *q* avis *r* Lévrier *s* pièce de canon *t* vaisseau *u* (See Par. 167. VI.) *\** Espagnol *w* Armateur *x* homme d'équipage *y* côté *z* Avanture *a* (See Par. 168. XVII.) *b* Espagnol *c* St. Sébastien *d* La plupart *e* métier *f* profession *g* moyens qui servent à gagner la vie *h* les hommes *i* tirer *k* origine *l* plaisir *m* misère *n* Turn thus, when these passions become too violent, they degenerate, the one—the other, &c. *o* devenir *p* violent *q* dégénérer *r* mollesse *s* autre *t* avarice *u* difficile *v* tableau *w* statue *x* musique *y* vers *z* aussi *a* those must be made by the in French *b* supérieur *c* vaincre *d* obstacle *e* se rencontrer, fait *g* peinture *h* sculpture *i* musique *k* poésie *l* peut-être *m* durer *n* beaucoup plus *o* royaume *p* nature *q* tous les jours *r* fourde bête *s* se commettre *t* enseigne *u* ville *\** scandale *x* étranger *y* aussi bien que *z* Turn country into countrymen (compatriote) *a* curieux *b* admirateur *c* en *d* rue *e* bleu *f* ours *g* cigne *h* lion *i* pour ne rien dire *k* volant *l* cochon de lait *m* pourceau *n* cuirasse *o* ni *p* quantité *q* animal, *r* monstrueux *s* any in must be made by any of those that haunt (hanter) *t* désert.



Does the forgiving <sup>a</sup> our enemies <sup>b</sup> consist <sup>c</sup> in loving them, or in hurting <sup>d</sup> them neither in their reputation nor their interests?

There is <sup>no</sup> foolish thing <sup>e</sup> | but old people | in love <sup>f</sup> are capable of doing.

Herodotus <sup>g</sup> writes that in cold <sup>h</sup> countries <sup>i</sup> animals <sup>k</sup> seldom <sup>l</sup> have horns <sup>m</sup>; but that in hot <sup>n</sup> countries they have very large <sup>o</sup> ones. One could make a pretty <sup>p</sup> comical <sup>q</sup> application <sup>r</sup> of this remark <sup>s</sup>.

Dionysius <sup>t</sup>, King of Syracuse, having heard <sup>v</sup> that one of his subjects <sup>x</sup> had hid <sup>y</sup> a treasure <sup>z</sup> in his garden, ordered <sup>z</sup> him to bring it to him. The Syracusan <sup>z</sup> gave him but part of it, and kept <sup>a</sup> the rest <sup>b</sup> secretly <sup>c</sup>; then <sup>d</sup> went to another city, where he lived <sup>e</sup> more generously <sup>f</sup> than he did. Dionysius being told <sup>g</sup> of it, returned <sup>h</sup> him the rest of his treasure. Now <sup>i</sup>, said he, since <sup>k</sup> he knows <sup>l</sup> how <sup>m</sup> to use <sup>n</sup> riches <sup>o</sup>, he deserves <sup>p</sup> to enjoy <sup>q</sup> them.

The two most dangerous <sup>r</sup> enemies to life are intemperance <sup>s</sup> and a physician <sup>t</sup>.

Soldiers <sup>v</sup> are often reduced <sup>x</sup> to bad bread and meat.

Othos and Ephialtes, the sons of Alous and Hiphimede, the daughter of Neptune, are said to have been of wonderful <sup>w</sup> bigness <sup>x</sup>. They grew <sup>y</sup> nine inches <sup>z</sup> every <sup>a</sup> month <sup>b</sup>. When they were nine years old, they endeavoured <sup>d</sup> to climb up to <sup>e</sup> Heaven.

The day before yesterday the Commons <sup>f</sup> resolved <sup>g</sup> to grant <sup>h</sup> to the King 184,661l. 10s. 6d. for the ordinary <sup>i</sup> of the navy <sup>k</sup>, 105,225l. 3s. 7d. for the charges <sup>l</sup> of the ordnance <sup>m</sup> for the land <sup>n</sup> service <sup>o</sup>, 76,071l. 1s. 3d. to | make good <sup>p</sup> | the extraordinary <sup>q</sup> expences <sup>r</sup> of the said offices <sup>s</sup>, not provided <sup>t</sup> for by Parliament <sup>v</sup>, 266,512l. 19s. 8d. for maintaining <sup>x</sup> the troops <sup>y</sup> and garrisons <sup>z</sup> in the West Indies <sup>y</sup>, Minorca <sup>z</sup>, and Gibraltar, &c.

a pardon b ennemi c consister d nuire e extravagance f amoureux g Herodote h froid i pays k animal l rarement m corne n chaud o grand p assez q plaisant r application s remarque t Denis v entendre dire \* Sujet w tacher x tresor y ordonnee z Siracusan a retenir b reste c secretelement d puis e vivre f liberalement g apprendre h rendre i a present k que l avoir m how is left out in French n bien user o richesses p meriter q jouir r dangereux s intemperance t Medecin v gens de guerre \* reduit w prodigieux x grandeur y croitre \* z pouce a tout b mois d entreprendre e eutalader f Communes g resoudre h accorder i ordinaire k marine l depense m bureau de l'artillerie n terre o service p defrayer q extraordinaire r depense s bureau t pourvoir v Parlement (Turn besides thus, to which the Parliament has not provided) \* maintenir w force x garnison y Indes Occidentales z Minorque.

\* Deceased after croitre in this place; as, il croit tous les jours d'un pouce.

and

and 4000*l*. for the repairing<sup>a</sup> of Westminster-abbey<sup>b</sup>, all<sup>c</sup> for the service of the year 1741.

The same day it was moved<sup>d</sup> in the House<sup>e</sup> of Lords to appoint<sup>f</sup> a Committee<sup>g</sup> to | take into consideration<sup>h</sup> | the conduct<sup>i</sup> of the present<sup>k</sup> war<sup>l</sup>; but after great debates<sup>m</sup> it<sup>n</sup> was | carried in the negative<sup>o</sup> | by<sup>p</sup> a majority<sup>q</sup> of 68 votes<sup>r</sup> against 43. After which it was ordered<sup>s</sup> to present<sup>t</sup> an address<sup>v</sup> to the King, to desire<sup>x</sup> him to order<sup>w</sup> to be laid<sup>x</sup> before the House copies<sup>y</sup> of the answers<sup>z</sup> made by Admiral<sup>a</sup> Haddock and Sir Chaloner<sup>b</sup> Ogle to the Duke of Newcastle's letters<sup>c</sup> of the 25 February 1739, and 15 April 1740.

There were last<sup>d</sup> year in this city 25,284 burials<sup>e</sup>, 4197 marriages<sup>f</sup>, 18,632 christenings<sup>g</sup>, and 3,150 foundlings<sup>h</sup>. In 1739 there were 19,781 christenings, 4,108 marriages, 21,986 burials, and 3,229 foundlings. So that<sup>i</sup> there was a decrease last year of 1,149 in the christenings, of 91 in the marriages, and of 139 in the foundlings: and an increase of 3,298 in the burials.

The most just comparison<sup>k</sup> that can be made of love is that of a fever<sup>l</sup>. We have no more power<sup>m</sup> over<sup>n</sup> the one than the other, whether | on account of<sup>o</sup> | its violence<sup>p</sup>, or its duration<sup>q</sup>.

Epaminondas refused<sup>r</sup> Darius's presents<sup>s</sup>, and told those who offered them to him from that King: If he desire<sup>t</sup> of me nothing but what is just<sup>v</sup>, there is no occasion<sup>x</sup> | for presents; and if he have other designs<sup>w</sup>, let him know that he is not rich enough<sup>x</sup> to bribe<sup>y</sup> me.

Man are never so happy<sup>z</sup> nor so unhappy<sup>a</sup> as they think<sup>b</sup> themselves.

Few<sup>c</sup> things are necessary to make<sup>d</sup> the wise<sup>e</sup> man happy: nothing can make a fool<sup>f</sup> content<sup>g</sup>. Therefore<sup>h</sup> almost<sup>i</sup> all men are miserable<sup>k</sup>.

*a réparations b Abbaye c le tout d proposer e chambre f établir g Comité h examiner i conduite k présent l guerre, m Débat n Turn it by (that proposition) o rejetté p à q pluralité r voix s ordonné t présenter v adresse w prier x See pag. 169. XXI. x remettre y copie z réponse a Amiral b le Chevalier c lettre d dernier e mort f mariage g batême h enfant trouvé i de sorte que: but there was a decrease, &c.—and an increase, &c. must be turned thus (there have been—christenings—marriages, &c. less in 1740 than in 1739) and the number of the dead of the same year exceeds that of 1739 by 3298 k comparaison l fièvre m pouvoir n sur o pour p violence q durée r refuser s présent t d mander v juste (and leave out what is in French) \* il ne faut point w dessein x assez y corrompre z heureux a malheureux b s'imaginer c peu, but the sentence must begin with il faut, for are necessary d rendre e sage used substantively f lou g content h c'est pour-quoi i presque k miserable.*



Almost all the misfortunes<sup>a</sup> of life proceed<sup>b</sup> from the false<sup>c</sup> notions<sup>d</sup> men have<sup>e</sup> concerning<sup>f</sup> whatever<sup>g</sup> happens<sup>h</sup>.

Nothing<sup>i</sup> is so much conducive<sup>j</sup> to the happiness<sup>k</sup> of life as to know things as they are. That knowledge<sup>l</sup> is got<sup>m</sup> by frequently<sup>n</sup> reflecting<sup>o</sup> upon whatever happens<sup>p</sup> in the world, and very little by books.

We must manage<sup>q</sup> Fortune as health: enjoy<sup>r</sup> it when it is good: take patience when it is bad: and never use<sup>s</sup> great remedies<sup>t</sup> without extreme<sup>v</sup> need<sup>u</sup>.

It is a thing incomprehensible<sup>w</sup>, that so few well matched<sup>x</sup> couples<sup>y</sup> are seen: and that persons endued<sup>z</sup> with so many uncommon<sup>a</sup> accomplishments<sup>b</sup>, who make the joy<sup>c</sup> and pleasure<sup>d</sup> of all companies<sup>e</sup>, live together only to | make one another mad<sup>f</sup>. |

Men are designed<sup>g</sup> to live<sup>h</sup> together. Therefore the first of all sciences is that which shews<sup>i</sup> how to live, that is<sup>k</sup>, how to behave<sup>l</sup> in the world.

Politeness<sup>m</sup> is a summary<sup>n</sup> of all moral<sup>o</sup> virtues. It is a collection<sup>p</sup> of discretion<sup>q</sup>, civility<sup>r</sup>, complaisance<sup>s</sup>, and circumspection<sup>t</sup> to pay<sup>v</sup> every body the duties<sup>w</sup> which they have a right<sup>x</sup> to require<sup>y</sup>: all which<sup>z</sup> must be set off<sup>a</sup> with an agreeable<sup>b</sup> and insinuating<sup>c</sup> air<sup>d</sup>, spread<sup>e</sup> over all that is said and done.

Politeness is not always born<sup>e</sup> with<sup>f</sup> us. Custom<sup>g</sup>, experience<sup>h</sup>, application<sup>i</sup> and study<sup>j</sup> are requisite<sup>k</sup>. It cannot be denied<sup>l</sup> that this virtue is the greatest charm<sup>m</sup> of civil<sup>n</sup> life. It teaches us to compassionate<sup>o</sup> the weaknesses<sup>p</sup> of some<sup>q</sup>; to bear<sup>r</sup> patiently<sup>s</sup> with the whims<sup>t</sup> and caprices<sup>v</sup> of others; to give<sup>w</sup> into their sentiments<sup>x</sup>, in order to bring<sup>y</sup> them to reason<sup>z</sup> by gentle<sup>a</sup> and insinuating<sup>b</sup> means<sup>c</sup>, in accustoming<sup>d</sup> one's self to every body's taste<sup>e</sup>, out of a true<sup>f</sup> desire of pleasing<sup>g</sup>.

*a* Malheur *b* venir *c* faux *d* idée *e* se former *f* sur *g* tout ce qui *h* arriver *i* servir *k* bonheur *l* connoissance *m* s'acquérir *n* fréquenter *o* réflexion *p* se passer *q* gouverner *r* jouir *s* faire *t* remède *u* extrême \* *v* besoin *w* incomprehensible *x* assorti *y* mariage *z* doué *a* rare *b* qualité *c* joir *d* plaisir *e* compagnie *f* se faire enrager *g* fait *h* vivre *i* apprendre *k* c'est-à-dire *l* se conduire *m* politesse *n* précis *o* moral *p* assemblage *q* discrétion *r* civilité *s* complaisance *t* circumspection *u* rendre \* *v* devoir *w* droit *x* exiger *y* all which is made by that *z* revêtu *a* agréable *b* insinuant *c* air *d* se répandre (but this participle must be made by a pronoun relative and a verb) *e* naître *f* usage *g* experience *h* application *i* étude *k* il faut (beginning the sentence) *l* nier *m* charme *n* civile *o* compâtrir *p* foiblesse *q* un *r* supporter *s* patiemment *t* bizarrerie *u* caprice \* *v* entrer *w* sentiment *x* ramener *y* raison *z* doux *a* insinuant *b* voie *c* se faire *d* gout *e* éritable *f* plaire.

I have made you wait <sup>a</sup>, Sir, but you must <sup>b</sup> take it kind <sup>c</sup> of me to find me at home. As I will be seen <sup>d</sup> only by you; I chuse <sup>e</sup> to avoid <sup>f</sup> the importunities of some people, who I think they have a right <sup>g</sup> to speak to me at any time <sup>h</sup>, and whom my servants <sup>i</sup> can't shut out of doors <sup>k</sup>, although I have ordered them <sup>l</sup> above a thousand times to do it.

One is too well repaid <sup>m</sup> for the trouble <sup>n</sup> of waiting, Madam, when one is so happy <sup>o</sup> as to see you one moment: and I will always wait <sup>p</sup> with all my heart <sup>q</sup> when I shall be sure not to wait in vain <sup>r</sup>.

Our expences <sup>s</sup> must be fitted <sup>t</sup> to our condition <sup>u</sup> and circumstances <sup>v</sup>. It is ridiculous <sup>w</sup> for citizens wives <sup>x</sup> to go dress'd like <sup>y</sup> Duchesses <sup>z</sup>.

Nothing is so contagious <sup>a</sup> as example <sup>b</sup>; and we never do great good <sup>c</sup> or evil <sup>d</sup>, but they produce <sup>e</sup> their like <sup>f</sup>. We imitate <sup>g</sup> good actions out of emulation <sup>h</sup>, and bad <sup>i</sup> ones through the malignity <sup>k</sup> of our nature, which shame <sup>l</sup> kept <sup>m</sup> prisoner <sup>n</sup>, and example sets <sup>o</sup> at <sup>p</sup> liberty <sup>q</sup>.

Domitian said, in bantering <sup>r</sup> Metius, I wish <sup>s</sup> I was as handsome as Metius thinks <sup>t</sup> he is.

Demonax seeing a man clothed <sup>u</sup> in purple <sup>v</sup>, who I being proud <sup>w</sup> of his dress <sup>x</sup>, walked with much affectation <sup>y</sup>, said to him to abate <sup>z</sup> his pride <sup>a</sup>: Why so much ostentation <sup>b</sup>? A sheep <sup>c</sup> wore <sup>d</sup> this wool <sup>e</sup> once <sup>f</sup> which you pride in <sup>g</sup>, yet <sup>h</sup> it was but a beast <sup>i</sup>.

Whatever difference <sup>k</sup> appear <sup>l</sup> between fortunes <sup>m</sup>, there is nevertheless <sup>n</sup> a certain compensation <sup>o</sup> of good and evil that makes <sup>p</sup> them equal <sup>q</sup>.

Remember <sup>r</sup> that the richer you are, and the more powerful <sup>s</sup> and happy <sup>t</sup>, the more you are obliged <sup>u</sup> to be just and reasonable <sup>v</sup>, if you I be desirous <sup>w</sup> of passing for honest <sup>x</sup> people. Heigo, says Madam Dacier, gives here a great precept <sup>y</sup>, which

<sup>a</sup> attendre <sup>b</sup> devoir <sup>c</sup> savoir gré <sup>d</sup> y être, and turn by into for <sup>e</sup> être bien aise <sup>f</sup> se dérober <sup>g</sup> le croire en droit <sup>h</sup> heure <sup>i</sup> gens <sup>k</sup> fermer la porte au né <sup>l</sup> commander <sup>m</sup> payer <sup>n</sup> chagrin <sup>o</sup> avoir le bonheur <sup>p</sup> volontiers <sup>q</sup> inutilement <sup>r</sup> dépense <sup>s</sup> proportionné <sup>t</sup> état <sup>u</sup> moyen <sup>v</sup> ridicule <sup>w</sup> bourgeoise <sup>x</sup> vêtu <sup>y</sup> comme <sup>z</sup> Duchesse <sup>a</sup> contagieux <sup>b</sup> exemple <sup>c</sup> bien <sup>d</sup> mal <sup>e</sup> produire <sup>f</sup> semblable <sup>g</sup> imiter <sup>h</sup> émulation <sup>i</sup> mauvais <sup>k</sup> malignité <sup>l</sup> honte <sup>m</sup> retenir <sup>n</sup> prisonnier <sup>o</sup> mettre <sup>p</sup> en <sup>q</sup> liberté <sup>r</sup> railler <sup>s</sup> souhaiter (condit. tense) <sup>t</sup> croire <sup>u</sup> vêtu <sup>v</sup> pourpre <sup>w</sup> fier <sup>x</sup> habillement <sup>y</sup> affectation <sup>z</sup> rabattre <sup>a</sup> orgueil <sup>b</sup> fanfaronnade <sup>c</sup> brebis <sup>d</sup> porter <sup>e</sup> laine <sup>f</sup> autrefois <sup>g</sup> faire parade <sup>h</sup> pourtant <sup>i</sup> bête <sup>k</sup> différence <sup>l</sup> paroître <sup>m</sup> fortune <sup>n</sup> néanmoins <sup>o</sup> compensation <sup>p</sup> rendre <sup>q</sup> égal <sup>r</sup> se souvenir <sup>s</sup> puissant <sup>t</sup> heureux <sup>u</sup> obligé <sup>v</sup> raisonnable <sup>w</sup> vouloir <sup>x</sup> gens de bien <sup>y</sup> précepte.



is now hardly<sup>a</sup> known<sup>b</sup>. Most men<sup>c</sup> now-a-days<sup>d</sup> remember that they are rich, powerful, and happy, only to be more unjust and unreasonable<sup>e</sup>.

Whatever great advantages<sup>f</sup> Nature give, 'tis not she alone<sup>g</sup>, but Fortune with her, makes heroes<sup>h</sup>.

Great souls are not those that have less passions and more virtues than ordinary souls, but those only<sup>i</sup> that have greater designs<sup>k</sup>.

We are very far<sup>l</sup> | from knowing all that our passions cause<sup>m</sup> us to do.

We are prepossessed<sup>n</sup> in our own favour<sup>o</sup> | in such a manner<sup>p</sup> | that what we often mistake<sup>q</sup> for virtues, is indeed<sup>r</sup> nothing else but<sup>s</sup> a number<sup>t</sup> of vices which resemble<sup>v</sup> them, and which our pride and self-love<sup>w</sup> have disguised<sup>x</sup>.

Innocence is very far<sup>y</sup> from finding<sup>z</sup> as much protection<sup>a</sup> as guilt<sup>b</sup>.

It is rather<sup>c</sup> the sign<sup>d</sup> of a foolish<sup>e</sup> pride to love to talk<sup>f</sup> much, than the sign<sup>g</sup> of good sense<sup>h</sup>. 'Tis not those that speak most that make themselves esteemed. Small<sup>i</sup> geniuses<sup>j</sup> are naturally<sup>k</sup> great talkers<sup>l</sup>. They endeavour<sup>m</sup> to indemnify themselves<sup>n</sup> in making others believe that they have much wit<sup>o</sup>; but they deceive<sup>p</sup> none but fools<sup>q</sup> like<sup>r</sup> themselves.

As it is the character<sup>s</sup> of great geniuses to intimate<sup>t</sup> a great many things in few words: so<sup>u</sup> | on the contrary<sup>v</sup> | small geniuses have the gift<sup>w</sup> of talking much and saying nothing.

To love any one, is to do<sup>x</sup> him on occasion all the services we are able<sup>y</sup>, and help<sup>z</sup> him to all the comforts<sup>a</sup> of life which | lie in our power<sup>b</sup>.

The poor has no need<sup>c</sup> of the title<sup>d</sup> of property<sup>e</sup> to have a right to the goods of this world. Bestow<sup>f</sup> some on me, O Lord, that I may impart<sup>g</sup> them to him.

*a Turn thus, (which is known almost no more) b connaître c la plupart des hommes d d'aujourd'hui e déraisonnable f avantage g seul h héros i seulement k dessein l il s'en faut bien que nous m See pag. 169. XXI. n pré-occupé o faveur p de telle sorte que q prendre r en effet s ne and que t nombre v ressembler \* amour propre w déguiser x il s'en faut bien que (beginning the sentence) y trouver z protection a crime b plutôt c marque d lot e parler f sens g petit h génie i naturellement k parler l tâcher m se dédommager n esprit o tromper p lot q comme r caractère s faire entendre t so is left out in French v au contraire \* don w rendre x être capable y procurer z agrément a dépendre (with the pron. pers. of the 1st pers. plur.) b besoin c titre d propriété e donner f faire p*

This

This vast empire<sup>b</sup> has the Great Mogul<sup>c</sup> for its<sup>d</sup> Sovereign<sup>e</sup>. His revenues<sup>f</sup> amount<sup>g</sup> yearly<sup>h</sup> to 250 millions of crowns<sup>i</sup>, besides the treasure<sup>k</sup> left<sup>l</sup> by his predecessors<sup>m</sup>, which is reckoned<sup>n</sup> to amount to no less than 175 millions both in coin<sup>o</sup> and jewels<sup>p</sup>. His expences<sup>q</sup> | on the other hand are<sup>r</sup> | very great. He keeps<sup>s</sup> in constant pay<sup>t</sup> 300,000 horse<sup>v</sup> besides an innumerable<sup>w</sup> army of foot<sup>x</sup>. By a list<sup>y</sup> of his encampments<sup>z</sup> against the Persians<sup>aa</sup> in 1658, it appears<sup>ab</sup>, that the Mogul then<sup>b</sup> had 216,000 cavalry<sup>c</sup>, and 864,000 infantry<sup>d</sup>, besides 50,000 elephants<sup>e</sup>. The great Mogul also has a guard<sup>f</sup> of 100 Tartarian<sup>g</sup> ladies armed<sup>h</sup> with bows<sup>i</sup>, scimitars<sup>k</sup>, and darts<sup>l</sup>, commanded by one of their own sex<sup>m</sup>.

Miltiades<sup>n</sup> had at Marathon but 10,000 men: Cæsar employed<sup>o</sup> but 22,000 at Pharsalia<sup>p</sup>. Epaminondas but 6000 at Leuctra<sup>q</sup>: Themistocles<sup>r</sup> two hundred gallies<sup>s</sup> at Salamis<sup>t</sup>: and Gonsalvus<sup>v</sup> at the passage<sup>w</sup> of Garillan had very few troops<sup>x</sup> against others infinitely<sup>y</sup> more numerous<sup>z</sup>. Those small bodies<sup>a</sup> have nevertheless<sup>b</sup> decided<sup>c</sup> the greatest things.

Xerxes not being<sup>d</sup> able<sup>e</sup> with a great army to force<sup>f</sup> the passage of the Thermopylæ<sup>g</sup>, defended<sup>h</sup> by three hundred Greeks<sup>i</sup> only: How many<sup>k</sup> men accompany<sup>l</sup> me, said he, but how few soldiers<sup>m</sup> I have!

The Empire of China<sup>n</sup> is divided<sup>o</sup> into 15 provinces<sup>p</sup>, containing<sup>q</sup> together<sup>r</sup> 143 large<sup>s</sup> and 1229 small<sup>t</sup> cities. The chief<sup>u</sup> city of Chekiang near the sea is Xancheu, almost as large as Peking. It has 13,000 stone<sup>v</sup> bridges<sup>w</sup>. The inhabitants<sup>x</sup> of China are pretty<sup>y</sup> white, and have black hair<sup>z</sup>. The women are small, but extremely<sup>a</sup> beautiful<sup>b</sup>. The people<sup>c</sup> are in

a grand b empire c Grand Mogol d its is left out in French e souverain f revenu g monter h tous les ans i écu k trésor l laisser m prédécesseur n compter o espèce p pierrerie q dépense r de l'autre côté s entretenir t make this by constantly (constamment) v homme de cavalerie \* innombrable w infanterie x liste y campement z Persien a paroître b alors c homme de cavalerie d homme d'infanterie e éléphant f garde g Tartare h armé i arc k cimetière l dart m sexe n Miltiade o employer p Pharsale q Leuctre r Thémistocle s galère t Salamine v Gonsalve \* passage wroupe z infiniment y nombreux z corps d'armée a néanmoins b décider de c pouvoir d forcer e Thermopyles f défendu (but this participle must be made in French by a pron. relative and a verb) g Grec h v. pag. 31. XV. i accompagner k soldat l Chine m divisé n Province o renfermer (but the participle must be made by a pronoun relative and a verb in French) p en tout q grand petit s principal t pierre v pont \* habitant w assez x cheveux y extremement z beau a peuple.



general<sup>a</sup> very courteous<sup>b</sup> and civil<sup>c</sup> to strangers<sup>d</sup>: but they must either continue<sup>e</sup> there | for life<sup>f</sup> | or depart<sup>g</sup> quickly<sup>h</sup>. It is computed<sup>i</sup> that the number of souls<sup>k</sup> amounts<sup>l</sup> to 70 millions. The emperor<sup>m</sup> governs<sup>n</sup> absolutely<sup>o</sup>. His subjects<sup>p</sup> call<sup>q</sup> him Thienfu, i. e. the son of Heaven. His revenues amount to more than the Great Mogul's. Some say he has 300 millions of crowns besides the contributions of<sup>r</sup> provisions for his Court.

Cairo, or Grand Cairo<sup>s</sup>, is not only the largest city in Egypt, but in the whole known world. It is 48 miles in circumference<sup>t</sup>. It has 24,000 streets, and almost as many mosques<sup>u</sup>. The number of inhabitants is reckoned<sup>v</sup> to be 7 millions, of which one is supposed to consist of Jews<sup>x</sup>.

In the island<sup>y</sup> Ferro<sup>z</sup>, one of the Canary Islands, is a wonderful<sup>a</sup> tree, called<sup>b</sup> Santo, 40 feet high, 12 feet thick, and 120 feet round. It is green<sup>c</sup> | throughout<sup>d</sup> the year, | and bears<sup>e</sup> a sweet<sup>f</sup> fruit like<sup>g</sup> acorns<sup>i</sup>. Upon this tree rests<sup>h</sup> a cloud<sup>j</sup>, which drops<sup>k</sup> daily for two hours the finest and sweetest water, of which the inhabitants may gather<sup>l</sup> 30 barrels<sup>m</sup> a day: and this is all the fresh<sup>n</sup> water they are supplied with<sup>o</sup> in the whole island. In the island Teneriff is Pico<sup>r</sup>, the highest<sup>s</sup> hill<sup>t</sup> in the world. Its height is 20,274 feet. The middle<sup>u</sup> is covered<sup>v</sup> with a cloud, and the top<sup>w</sup> with snow<sup>x</sup>. It may be seen at<sup>y</sup> sea 240 miles off<sup>z</sup>.

The Abyssinians<sup>a</sup> are great lovers<sup>b</sup> of | learned men<sup>c</sup>. | They have two Universities<sup>d</sup>, one at Axum, and another at Embie. At Axum is a fine library<sup>e</sup> belonging<sup>f</sup> to the King, and esteemed<sup>g</sup> a great treasure: and at Embie is another in which, as they say, are manuscripts<sup>h</sup> of Enoch, Abraham, Solomon, and Esdras, written with their own hands.

Macoco, a kingdom of Africa, is directly<sup>i</sup> under the Equator<sup>j</sup>. It is said that the natives<sup>k</sup>, called Africans, are Cannibals, who

<sup>a</sup> général <sup>b</sup> obligeant <sup>c</sup> civil <sup>d</sup> étranger <sup>e</sup> rester <sup>f</sup> tout-à-fait <sup>g</sup> sortir <sup>h</sup> promptement <sup>i</sup> compter <sup>k</sup> habitant <sup>l</sup> monter <sup>m</sup> Empereur <sup>n</sup> gouverner <sup>o</sup> absolument <sup>p</sup> sujet <sup>q</sup> appeler <sup>r</sup> ce'st-à-dire <sup>s</sup> en <sup>t</sup> Grand Caire <sup>u</sup> tour <sup>v</sup> Mosquée <sup>w</sup> compter <sup>x</sup> Juif (*but turns thus*, of which the Jews are thought to make one) <sup>y</sup> île <sup>z</sup> Fer <sup>a</sup> Canaries <sup>b</sup> surprenant <sup>c</sup> appelé <sup>d</sup> verd <sup>e</sup> toute l'année <sup>f</sup> porter <sup>g</sup> doux <sup>h</sup> semblable <sup>i</sup> gland <sup>k</sup> s'arrêter <sup>l</sup> nyée <sup>m</sup> distiller <sup>n</sup> recueillir <sup>o</sup> barril <sup>p</sup> frais <sup>q</sup> Turn thus, which they have <sup>r</sup> Pic <sup>s</sup> haut <sup>t</sup> montagne <sup>u</sup> milieu <sup>v</sup> couvert <sup>w</sup> sommet <sup>x</sup> neige <sup>y</sup> en <sup>z</sup> à 240 miles de là <sup>a</sup> Abissins <sup>b</sup> love very much (fort) <sup>c</sup> savant <sup>d</sup> université <sup>e</sup> bibliothèque <sup>f</sup> appartenir (*made by a relative and a verb*) <sup>g</sup> regarder comme <sup>h</sup> manuscrit <sup>i</sup> tout-à-fait <sup>k</sup> Equateur <sup>l</sup> naturel du pays.

commonly

commonly<sup>a</sup> devour<sup>b</sup> their | first born children<sup>c</sup>, | and kill and eat their parents. Whoever<sup>d</sup> dies a natural<sup>e</sup> or accidental<sup>f</sup> death, is eaten by his kindred<sup>g</sup> and relations<sup>h</sup>; so that in this nation people save<sup>i</sup> the expences<sup>j</sup> of a funeral<sup>k</sup>. The king's residence<sup>m</sup> is Monful, where they sell men's flesh<sup>n</sup> in the open<sup>o</sup> market<sup>p</sup>; and if | the account may be credited<sup>q</sup>, | they kill daily 200 men for the king's table, who are either criminals<sup>r</sup>, prisoners, or slaves<sup>s</sup>; and this is not done | on account of<sup>t</sup> | the scarcity<sup>v</sup> of other meat, of which they have plenty<sup>w</sup>, but because human flesh is | looked upon<sup>x</sup> as | a delicious<sup>y</sup> dish<sup>z</sup>.

There's nothing so dangerous as not to will<sup>z</sup> what young girls will.

If you could, said she, persuade my mother of that maxim<sup>a</sup>, I would be much obliged to you.

A wise man<sup>b</sup> said, that his two best friends were money and philosophy.

The Heavens<sup>c</sup> send down<sup>d</sup> to the earth the influences<sup>e</sup> which render<sup>f</sup> it fruitful<sup>g</sup>, and the earth | sends up again<sup>h</sup> | to Heaven the vapours<sup>i</sup> and exhalations<sup>k</sup> which serve<sup>l</sup> to make<sup>m</sup> the rains<sup>n</sup> and thunder<sup>o</sup> in the middle<sup>p</sup> regions<sup>q</sup> of the air<sup>r</sup>.

The old Prince Maurice of Nassau, during<sup>s</sup> his government<sup>t</sup> in Brasil, having heard<sup>v</sup> of an odd<sup>\*</sup> parrot<sup>w</sup> that spoke and answered questions<sup>x</sup> like a reasonable<sup>y</sup> creature<sup>z</sup>, had so much<sup>a</sup> curiosity<sup>b</sup> as to | send for it<sup>c</sup>, | tho' he believed nothing of it, and | 'twas a good way off<sup>d</sup>. | It was a very large<sup>e</sup> and a very old one. When<sup>f</sup> it came<sup>g</sup> first<sup>h</sup> into<sup>i</sup> the room<sup>k</sup>, where the prince was with a great many Dutchmen<sup>l</sup> about him, it said presently<sup>m</sup>, *What a company of white men are here!* They asked him, *What do you think<sup>o</sup> that man is?* pointing at<sup>p</sup> the Prince. It answered, *Some General or other<sup>q</sup>.* When they | brought it close<sup>r</sup> |

*a Turn, are used to devour, (avoir coutume) b dévorer c premier né d quiconque e naturel f accidentel g proche h parent i épargner k dépense l enterrement m lieu de la résidence n chair o plein p marché q si on peut ajouter foi à ce qu'on en rapporte r criminel s esclave t à cause v dispute \* quantité w trouver x délicieux y manger z vouloir a maxime b personne c le Ciel d vers e influence f rendre g fertile h renvoyer i vapeur k exhalaison l servir m former n pluie o tonnerre p moyen q région r air s pendant t gouvernement v entendre parler \* drôle de w peroquet x répondre aux questions qu'on fait y raisonnable z créature a so much as, is left out in French b curiosité c envoyer querir d Turn, the parrot lived (demeurer) a good way off (bien loin de la) e gros f quand g entre h d'abord i dans k chambre l Hollandois m sur le champ n Que voilà de blancs ! o croire p montrer q or other, is left out in French r approcher.*



to the Prince, he asked it, Whence do you come? It answered, *from Maraguan*. The prince: Whom do you belong to? The Parrot: *to a Portuguese*. The prince: What do you do there? The Parrot: *I look after the chickens*. The Prince laughed, and said, Do you look indeed after the chickens? The Parrot answered, *Yes, I do, and I know how to do it well*; and made four or five times the chuck that those people use to make to the chickens when they call them.

Cato the eldest said, the Public is more concerned in punishing an injury than the private person who has received it.

Interest, pleasure, and glory, are the three great mobilia of our actions and conduct.

There would not be so many disorders seen in the world, if the youth had a good impression given them at first; and if the parents or the masters and governors keeping their places, took care to fill up the minds of children with the maxims of their duty with right notions of things, and sure principles for their conduct in all the circumstances of life. The evil therefore arises from education. Care is not taken to form the mind of children as it should be. They are contented with making them translate a classic, or get some story by heart, without causing them to make such moral reflections as they should infer from it. Such is the method that is generally observed in their learning; and as to conduct and manners they are indulged too much; and when they have once acquired an habit, that authority cannot be reassumed over them which is lost.

It is rightly said, that he who knows not how to dissimulate knows not how to reign. But this maxim, He who knows not

*a être b Portugais c prendre soin d poulet e se mettre à rire f tout de bon g oui, moi h cri i avoir coutume k ancien l public m avoir intérêt n injure o particulier p Turn thus, who is offended by it (offensé) q mobile r begin with on, and voir in the condit. tense s desordre t jeunesse v pli \* dès le commencement w parent x gouverneur y tenir z place a avoir soin b remplir c enfant d maxime e devoir f juste g idée h sur i principe k Turn thus, to conduct themselves (se conduire) l circonstance m donc n venir o éducation p former q on le devroit r se contenter s traduire t auteur v apprendre \* histoire w réflexion x tire y méthode z généralement a tenir b étude c quant à d conduite e mœurs f Turn, one allows them too much liberty (laisser prendre) g prendre h pli i reprendre k avec raison l savoir m how is left out n dissimuler o regner.*

how to tolerate<sup>a</sup> knows not how to live<sup>b</sup>, is no less important<sup>c</sup>. There ever<sup>d</sup> were in the world and the church<sup>e</sup> different<sup>f</sup> opinions<sup>g</sup>, and they must be suffered<sup>h</sup> and tolerated, to preserve<sup>i</sup> peace<sup>k</sup> among men, which<sup>l</sup> is much better<sup>m</sup> than a war<sup>n</sup> which<sup>o</sup> they would be at<sup>p</sup> to no purpose<sup>q</sup> in order to establish<sup>r</sup> among them an uniformity<sup>s</sup> of sentiments<sup>t</sup>, which is impossible. What matters<sup>u</sup> uniformity, so<sup>v</sup> men have learnt to tolerate<sup>w</sup> one another<sup>x</sup> reciprocally<sup>y</sup> concerning<sup>z</sup> the difference<sup>a</sup> of their tastes<sup>b</sup> and opinions<sup>c</sup>? The Author<sup>d</sup> of nature<sup>e</sup> has taken a delight<sup>f</sup> in scattering<sup>g</sup> diversity<sup>h</sup> in his works<sup>i</sup>. There are not two faces alike<sup>j</sup> in nature; so<sup>k</sup> perhaps<sup>l</sup> there are not two constitutions<sup>m</sup>, or two minds alike. Nothing therefore<sup>n</sup> is more<sup>o</sup> consonant with reason<sup>p</sup> than toleration<sup>q</sup> in point<sup>r</sup> of opinions. The same<sup>s</sup> man when old<sup>t</sup>, judges<sup>u</sup> not, tastes<sup>v</sup> not, as he did judge and taste when<sup>w</sup> young<sup>x</sup>. Now<sup>y</sup> shall we blame our children for their not being as old as we? Intolerance<sup>z</sup> is the vice of the two parties<sup>a</sup>: and an unreasonable<sup>b</sup> zeal<sup>c</sup> for one's own opinion and truth, is what constitutes<sup>d</sup> the party-spirit<sup>e</sup>. There are in the different systems<sup>f</sup> of religion<sup>g</sup> incomprehensibilities<sup>h</sup> on all sides<sup>i</sup>. Must then men<sup>j</sup> cut one another's throats<sup>k</sup> without end<sup>l</sup>, because some<sup>m</sup> like<sup>n</sup> one incomprehensibility better, and some another? What can avail<sup>o</sup> truth, if not to be more happy in this life<sup>p</sup> and secure<sup>q</sup> us future<sup>r</sup> happiness<sup>s</sup>? Can ever hatred<sup>t</sup> and mutual<sup>u</sup> persecution<sup>v</sup> be the means<sup>w</sup> of pleasing a God of love and peace?

Men are<sup>a</sup> likewise<sup>b</sup> divided<sup>c</sup> every day<sup>d</sup> concerning the most indifferent things<sup>e</sup>: which happens because all do not consider the same thing in the same manner. The wisest is the most docile<sup>w</sup>.

Such is the nature of our mind<sup>a</sup>: we cannot refuse<sup>b</sup> to<sup>c</sup> pay homage<sup>d</sup> to truth, when it is plainly<sup>e</sup> discovered<sup>f</sup>, nay<sup>g</sup> we

a tolerer b vivre c important d toujours e église f different g opinion  
h laisser i conserver k paix l valoir bien mieux m guerre n se faire o en  
vain p établir q uniformité r sentiment s importer de t pourvu que v se  
\* mutuellement w sur x différence y goût z auteur a se plaire b répandre  
c diversité d ouvrage e semblable f aussi g peut-être h tempérament i donc  
k raisonnable l tolérance m fait n même o vieux p juger q goûter r when  
is left out s jeune t or v intolérance \* parti w déraisonnable x zèle  
y constituer z esprit de parti a système b religion c incompréhensibilité d de  
tous côtés e s'égorger f fin g les uns, as the next it, les autres h s'accommoder  
i servir k si elle ne vous sert l assurer m futur n haine o naturel p persé-  
cution q ne peut se trouver s aussi t partagé v tous les jours \* matière  
w docile x esprit y résister z rendre hommage a clairement b aperçu c même.



are forced to acquiesce<sup>a</sup> therein. Doubting<sup>b</sup> is not | in our power<sup>c</sup>. | But<sup>d</sup> this impossibility of doubting<sup>e</sup> is what is called conviction<sup>f</sup>.

Men don't distinguish<sup>g</sup> enough between a demonstration<sup>h</sup>, a proof<sup>i</sup>, and a probability<sup>k</sup>. A demonstration supposes<sup>l</sup> the contradictory<sup>m</sup> idea<sup>n</sup> impossible. A proof of a fact<sup>o</sup> is when all the reasons incline<sup>p</sup> us to believe, without any pretence<sup>q</sup> of doubting. A probability is when the reasons for believing are stronger<sup>r</sup> than those for doubting.

To demonstrate<sup>s</sup> is not only to prove that a thing is, but besides<sup>t</sup>, the impossibility of its not being. The connection<sup>u</sup> of ideas can be demonstrated, but facts are proved by the testimony<sup>v</sup> of the senses<sup>w</sup> only. To ask for demonstrations when | senses are in question<sup>x</sup>, | to admit<sup>y</sup> senses when<sup>z</sup> demonstrations | are requisite<sup>a</sup>, | is subverting<sup>b</sup> the nature of things; | 'tis as if we wanted<sup>c</sup> to see sounds<sup>d</sup>, and hear colours<sup>e</sup>. When | every thing<sup>f</sup> | inclines<sup>g</sup> us to believe, and nothing obliges<sup>h</sup> us to doubt, the mind<sup>i</sup> ought to yield<sup>k</sup> to that evidence<sup>l</sup>. It is not a geometrical<sup>m</sup> demonstration; | neither is it<sup>n</sup> | a mere<sup>o</sup> probability: but it is a sufficient<sup>p</sup> proof for us to determine<sup>q</sup>.

We must first become<sup>r</sup> men by civil<sup>s</sup> and social<sup>t</sup> virtues: afterwards<sup>u</sup> we must resemble<sup>v</sup> the Gods by that love of excellency<sup>w</sup> which makes us love virtue | for its own sake<sup>x</sup>. | That is, said Pythagoras<sup>y</sup>, the only worship<sup>z</sup> worthy<sup>a</sup> of the Immortals<sup>b</sup>, and that is all my doctrine<sup>c</sup>.

Every thing follows<sup>d</sup> the law of its nature: therefore<sup>e</sup> every rational<sup>f</sup> being<sup>g</sup> ought to act<sup>h</sup> reasonably<sup>i</sup>. To act reasonably is to conform<sup>k</sup> our actions to the nature of things, and to the fitnesses<sup>l</sup> resulting<sup>m</sup> from them, and<sup>n</sup> from all the relations<sup>o</sup> we stand in to the different beings<sup>p</sup>, and from the essential differences of things. There is essentially<sup>q</sup> such a difference in things, as to make one preferable<sup>r</sup>, or fitter to be chosen than

a acquiescer b doute c libre d or e douter f conviction g distinguer h démonstration i preuve k probabilité l supposer m contradictoire n idée o fait p porter q prétexte r fort s démontrer t encore u liaison v témoignage w sens x il s'agit des sentimens y placer z où a il faut b renverser c c'est vouloir d ion e couleur f tout g porter h forcer i esprit k se rendre l évidence m géométrique n ce n'est pas non plus o simple p suffisant q se déterminer r devenir s civil t sociable u ensuite v ressembler w beau x pour elle même y Pythagore z culte a digne b Immortel c doctrine d suivre e par conséquent f raisonnable g être h se conduire i d'une manière raisonnable k conformer l convenance m résulter n and, is to be turned thus; as like wise o those that result o report p Turn, which the different beings have one to another q Turn, 'tis that essential difference of things, which causes us, &c. r préférer another

another<sup>a</sup>: and the perception<sup>b</sup> we have of the reason, and differences of things, and our consciousness<sup>c</sup> of good and evil, right and wrong, shew<sup>d</sup> us what ought to be the rule to govern our actions by<sup>e</sup>, to which<sup>f</sup> the rational agent cannot help<sup>g</sup> conforming, without acting<sup>h</sup> unreasonably<sup>i</sup>, that is, contrary<sup>j</sup> to his nature. Now<sup>k</sup> that behaviour<sup>l</sup> which men are obliged to by their nature, as<sup>m</sup> reasonable beings, is virtue; and vice consists in acting unsuitably<sup>n</sup> to the nature and reason of things. In short<sup>o</sup>, virtue is nothing but the love of order, which is perverted by vice<sup>p</sup>. And 'tis by the practice<sup>q</sup> of virtue in loving order, and acting always agreeably<sup>r</sup> to the law, nature, reason, and difference of things, that reasonable creatures imitate<sup>s</sup> the perfections of their Creator, wherein consist both the excellency<sup>t</sup> of their nature and their happiness.

Socrates seeing the people who were buying<sup>v</sup> | forced hastings\* | very dear, said, These people | to be sure<sup>w</sup> | despair<sup>x</sup> of ever seeing those | things come to maturity<sup>y</sup> | or else<sup>z</sup> they must be mad<sup>a</sup>, since then they would buy them better and | at a lower rate<sup>b</sup>.

Somebody was asking Demonax, if it belonged<sup>c</sup> to a Philosopher<sup>d</sup> to eat dainties<sup>e</sup>, such as<sup>f</sup> luxurious<sup>g</sup> cakes<sup>h</sup>, which were then<sup>i</sup> made with honey<sup>k</sup>? Why not, answered he? Do you think that bees<sup>l</sup> make honey for fools<sup>m</sup> and | ignorant fellows<sup>n</sup> only? |

Tho<sup>r</sup> | the sensual pleasures<sup>o</sup> of the body | be innocent<sup>p</sup> of themselves, and have been given us to serve<sup>q</sup> us as an enticement<sup>r</sup> to the most necessary and most noble actions of life; nevertheless<sup>s</sup> when we pervert<sup>t</sup> the use<sup>v</sup> of them, and do not make them obsequious<sup>w</sup> to reason, they rebel<sup>x</sup> against it: pull<sup>y</sup> it down from its throne<sup>z</sup>, and | cast it down headlong<sup>a</sup> | in the dirt<sup>b</sup> and filth<sup>c</sup>: and then stifle<sup>d</sup> all the seeds<sup>e</sup> of virtue and understanding<sup>f</sup> that are born with<sup>g</sup>.

If a man eat<sup>h</sup> eight pounds<sup>i</sup> of food<sup>j</sup> a day, he will likewise<sup>k</sup> cast out<sup>l</sup> eight pounds of superfluities<sup>m</sup>, if he be<sup>n</sup> well.

*g* Turn, is the cause that we chuse the fittest (convenable) *b* évidence *c* sentiment intérieur *d* montrer *e* Turn, the rule of our actions *f* s'empêcher *g* agir *h* d'une manière déraisonnable *i* contraire *k* or *l* conduite *m* en tant que *n* d'une manière contraire *o* en un mot *p* Turn, vice is the perversion thereof (renversement) *q* pratique *r* conformément *s* imiter *t* excellence *u* acheter \* fruits hâtifs venus par artifice *w* sans doute *x* désespérer *y* en maturité *z* autrement *a* fou *b* meilleur marché *c* être *d* Philosophe *e* friandise *f* comme *g* excellent *h* gâteau *i* alors *k* miel *l* marche à miel *m* sot *n* ignorant *o* volé *p* innocent *q* servir *r* attrait *s* néanmoins *t* pervertir *u* usage \* obéissant *w* se rebeller *x* arracher *y* trône *z* précipiter *a* boue *b* ordure *c* étouffer *d* sémence *e* intelligence *f* prendre *g* livre *h* aliments *i* aussi *k* jeter *l* superfluité *m* se porter.



And indeed<sup>a</sup> | if | he get himself weigh'd<sup>b</sup> | in<sup>c</sup> the morning, before he eats any thing<sup>d</sup>, he will | the next morning<sup>e</sup>, | at the same hour<sup>f</sup>, find himself weighing as much as he did. Yet<sup>g</sup> he has eaten eight pounds of victuals<sup>h</sup>: so much matter<sup>i</sup> must then<sup>j</sup> have been issued out<sup>k</sup> of his body, since the balance<sup>l</sup> finds nothing more of the weight<sup>m</sup> which the food had added to it.

| Not that<sup>n</sup> every thing he takes | is converted<sup>o</sup> | into superfluities: but as much is evaporated<sup>p</sup> out of the substance<sup>q</sup> of the parts<sup>r</sup>, as there is of the food that is changed<sup>s</sup> into them: suppose that he be in | middle age<sup>t</sup>. | So that what comes<sup>u</sup> out of the substance and food, equals<sup>v</sup> the weight of all that he had taken.

Now<sup>w</sup> these superfluities are of two sorts. The one coarse<sup>x</sup> and sensible<sup>y</sup>, as those that are evacuated<sup>z</sup> at the mouth, the belly, and bladder<sup>aa</sup>; the other subtle<sup>ab</sup> and insensible<sup>ac</sup>, that are exhaled<sup>ad</sup> by breathing<sup>ae</sup>, and at the pores<sup>af</sup> of the body. But the weight of these exceeds<sup>ag</sup> by much that of the others: for it has been proved by experiment<sup>ah</sup> that of those eight pounds, that are<sup>ai</sup> daily cast out<sup>aj</sup>, the sensible superfluities weigh but three: so that the insensible must | of necessity<sup>ak</sup> weigh five.

The happiness of the people makes that of the prince: their true<sup>al</sup> interests<sup>am</sup> are necessarily<sup>an</sup> | connected with one another<sup>ao</sup>, | whatever efforts be used<sup>ap</sup> to separate<sup>aq</sup> them. Whosoever<sup>ar</sup> inspire<sup>as</sup> princes with contrary<sup>at</sup> maxims, ought to be looked upon<sup>au</sup> as an enemy<sup>av</sup> to the state<sup>az</sup>.

Demetrius Phalareus was wont<sup>ba</sup> to exhort<sup>bb</sup> King Ptolemy<sup>bc</sup> to | make a collection<sup>bd</sup> | of books, that treat<sup>be</sup> of civil and military<sup>bf</sup> policies<sup>bg</sup>: because, said he, kings find things written in those books, of which their friends dare<sup>bh</sup> not speak to them.

Alphonso of Arragon said sometimes, I wish<sup>bi</sup> that each of my subjects had reigned<sup>bj</sup> for<sup>bk</sup> some days: they would know<sup>bl</sup>

*a en effet b se faire peser c in, is left out in French d rien prendre e le lendemain f à la même heure g cependant h nourriture i matière k donc l sortir m balance n poids o ajouter p ce n'est pas que, and before the next sentence, mais c'est que q se convertir r s'évaporer s substance t partie u se changer \* âge de consistance w sortir x grossier y or z grossier a sensible b s'évacuer c vessie d subtil e insensible f exhaler g respiration h pore i surpasser k expérimenter l tous les jours m sortir n nécessairement o véritable p intérêt q nécessairement r se réunir s faire effort t separer u quelque v inspirer w contraire x regarder y ennemi z Etat a avoir coutume b exhorter c Ptolomée d ramasser e traiter f militaire g politique h ôser i souhaiter k regner l pendant m connoître*

better the plague <sup>a</sup> of Royalty <sup>b</sup>, and would learn to be less troublesome <sup>c</sup>.

The Emperor <sup>d</sup> Julian <sup>e</sup> seeing a man richly <sup>f</sup> clad <sup>g</sup> that came <sup>h</sup> to cut <sup>i</sup> his hair, said pleasantly <sup>k</sup>, I asked for a Barber <sup>l</sup>, and not for a Commissioner of the Exchequer <sup>m</sup>.

Henry the Fourth seeing his Taylor <sup>n</sup> who presented to him a book which he had composed <sup>o</sup> concerning <sup>p</sup> the State, said to one of his officers <sup>q</sup>, Call <sup>r</sup> presently <sup>s</sup> my Chancellor <sup>t</sup> to make me | a suit of cloaths <sup>v</sup>, | since my Taylor chuses <sup>w</sup> to settle <sup>x</sup> the State.

Cyrus was surpris'd <sup>x</sup> to find in Egypt <sup>y</sup> a new kind <sup>z</sup> of beauty, which he had not seen in | Arabia Felix <sup>a</sup>. | There every thing was the effect <sup>b</sup> of plain <sup>c</sup> nature: here art | had brought every thing to perfection <sup>d</sup>.

It seldom rains <sup>e</sup> in Egypt: but the Nile <sup>f</sup> bathes <sup>g</sup> it with its regular <sup>h</sup> overflowings <sup>i</sup>. It is crossed <sup>k</sup> with a vast number of canals <sup>l</sup>, that carry fertility <sup>m</sup> along with the waters every where, unite <sup>n</sup> the cities together, join <sup>o</sup> the greater sea with the Red, and thereby <sup>p</sup> maintain <sup>q</sup> trade <sup>r</sup> | both at home and abroad <sup>s</sup>. |

The cities, rais'd <sup>t</sup> with immense <sup>v</sup> works, look <sup>w</sup> like islands in the middle <sup>x</sup> of the waters, and command <sup>y</sup> the plain <sup>z</sup> overwhelmed <sup>a</sup>, and made <sup>b</sup> fruitful <sup>c</sup> by that beneficial <sup>d</sup> river. When its inundations <sup>e</sup> are too copious <sup>f</sup>, vast <sup>g</sup> reservoirs <sup>h</sup> purposely <sup>i</sup> made receive its overflowed <sup>j</sup> waters, to prevent <sup>k</sup> the devastations <sup>l</sup> they would make. Sluices <sup>m</sup> open or shut these reservoirs according to need <sup>n</sup>. Such is the use of the lake <sup>o</sup> Meris, dug <sup>p</sup> by one of the ancient Kings of Egypt, whose name it bears <sup>q</sup>. Its compass <sup>r</sup> is eighteen hundred fades <sup>s</sup>, or a hundred and fourscore leagues <sup>t</sup>.

*a* embarras *b* Royauté *c* importun *d* Empereur *e* Julien *f* superbement *g* vêtu *h* présenter *i* couper *k* agréablement *l* Barbier *m* intendant des Finances *n* Tailleur *o* composer *p* sur *q* officier *r* faire venir *s* sur le champ *t* Chancelier *u* habit *v* vouloir se mêler *w* regler *x* surpris *y* Egypte *z* espèce *a* Arabie heureuse *b* effet *c* simple *d* perfectionner *e* pleuvir *f* Nile *g* arroser *h* réglé *i* débordement *k* traverse *l* canal *m* condiré *n* unir *o* joindre *p* par là *q* entretenir *r* commerce *s* au dedans & au dehors du Royaume *t* élevé *u* immense *v* paroître *w* milieu *x* dominer sur *y* plaine *z* inondé *a* rendu *b* fertile *c* bienfaisant *d* inondation *e* abondant *f* vaste *g* réservoir *h* exprès *i* débordé *k* empêcher *l* ravage *m* écluse *n* besoin *o* lac *p* creusé *q* porter *r* tour *s* stade *t* lieue.



The cities of Egypt are numerous<sup>a</sup>, large<sup>b</sup>, populous<sup>c</sup>, full of magnificent<sup>d</sup> temples, and stately<sup>e</sup> palaces<sup>f</sup>, adorned<sup>g</sup> with statues<sup>h</sup> and columns<sup>i</sup>.

Cyrus surveyed<sup>k</sup> with pleasure all those fine things, and afterwards went to see the famous<sup>l</sup> labyrinth<sup>m</sup> built by the twelve Nomarks<sup>n</sup>. It is not one single<sup>o</sup> palace, but a stately pile<sup>p</sup> of twelve palaces | set in a regular order<sup>q</sup>. | Three thousand rooms having communication<sup>r</sup> by terraces<sup>s</sup>, are set<sup>t</sup> round<sup>v</sup> twelve halls<sup>x</sup>, and let<sup>w</sup> no | way out<sup>x</sup> | to those who venture in<sup>y</sup> without a guide<sup>z</sup>. There are as many buildings<sup>a</sup> underground<sup>b</sup> | as above<sup>c</sup>. These | subterraneous places<sup>d</sup> | are designed<sup>e</sup> for the | burying-places<sup>f</sup> of the Kings.

Babylon<sup>g</sup>, the seat<sup>h</sup> of the Empire of the Kings of Assyria<sup>i</sup>, | was founded<sup>k</sup> by Semiramis; but Nebuchodonosor gave it its chief<sup>l</sup> beauties. This conqueror<sup>m</sup>, after | having brought to an end<sup>n</sup> long<sup>o</sup> and difficult<sup>p</sup> wars<sup>q</sup>, seeing himself in a full tranquillity<sup>r</sup>, applied himself<sup>s</sup> to make<sup>t</sup> his Metropolis<sup>v</sup> one of the wonders<sup>x</sup> of the world.

It was situated<sup>w</sup> in a vast<sup>x</sup> plain, watered<sup>y</sup> by the Euphrates<sup>z</sup>: the canals, cut<sup>a</sup> out of that river, made the fruitfulness<sup>b</sup> of the soil<sup>c</sup> so great, that it yielded<sup>d</sup> as much to the King as half<sup>e</sup> of his Empire.

The walls of the city built with large bricks<sup>f</sup>, fifty cubits<sup>g</sup> thick, and two hundred high, made a perfect<sup>h</sup> square<sup>i</sup> of twenty leagues in compass<sup>k</sup>. One hundred and fifty towers<sup>l</sup> were raised along<sup>m</sup> those inaccessible<sup>n</sup> walls | at equal distances<sup>o</sup>, | and commanded<sup>p</sup> all the neighbouring<sup>q</sup> country.

A hundred gates<sup>r</sup> of brass<sup>s</sup> poured out<sup>t</sup> on all sides an innumerable<sup>v</sup> crowd<sup>x</sup> of people of all nations: fifty large streets crossed<sup>w</sup> the city from one end<sup>x</sup> to the other, and formed<sup>y</sup> | in crossing one another<sup>z</sup> | a great many<sup>a</sup> spacious squares<sup>b</sup>.

*a nombreux b grand c bien peuplé d magnifique e superbe f orné h statue i colonne k parcourir l fameux m labyrinthe n Nomarque o seul p amas q disposé régulièrement r se communiquer s terrasse t s'arranger v autour x salle w laisser x sortie y s'engager z guide a bâtiment b sous terre c dessus d souterrain e destiné f sépulture g Babylone h siège i Assyrie k fondé l principal m conquérant n terminer o long p difficile q guerre r tranquillité s appliquer t add of in French before the next noun v capitale x merveillé w situé x vaste y arrosé z Euphrate a tiré b fertilité c terroir d rapporter e moitié f brique g coudée e parfait i quarré k circuit l tour m regner n inaccessible o de distance, en distance p commander q voisin r porte s airain t s'ouvrir v innombrable x foule w traverser bout y former z se croiser a plusieurs b quarré.*

containing <sup>a</sup> stately palaces, magnificent places, and delightful <sup>b</sup> gardens.

The Euphrates ran <sup>c</sup> | through the midst <sup>d</sup> of Babylon. A bridge, built <sup>e</sup> upon the river with wonderful <sup>f</sup> art, joined <sup>g</sup> the two parts <sup>h</sup> of the city. At both ends <sup>i</sup> of that bridge were seen two palaces: the old palace at the east <sup>k</sup> and the new one westward <sup>l</sup>. Near the old palace was the temple of Belus. From the centre <sup>m</sup> of this building sprung out <sup>n</sup> a Pyramid six hundred feet high, and composed <sup>p</sup> of eight towers rising <sup>q</sup> upon one another, always tapering <sup>r</sup>. From the top <sup>s</sup> of the Pyramid the Babylonians <sup>t</sup> observed <sup>u</sup> the motion <sup>v</sup> of the stars <sup>w</sup>. This was their chief study <sup>x</sup>, and 'tis by it they have made themselves famous <sup>y</sup> among other nations.

At the other end of the bridge the new palace was seen, which was sixty fades, or eight miles round. Its celebrated <sup>a</sup> gardens, encompassed <sup>b</sup> by large terrace walks <sup>c</sup> rose <sup>d</sup> like <sup>e</sup> an Amphitheatre <sup>f</sup> | as high as <sup>g</sup> | the walls of the city. The whole mass <sup>h</sup> was supported <sup>i</sup> by several <sup>k</sup> arches <sup>l</sup>, the vaults <sup>m</sup> whereof being covered with large stones, reeds <sup>n</sup> done over <sup>o</sup> with bitumen <sup>p</sup>, two rows <sup>q</sup> of bricks <sup>r</sup>, and plates <sup>s</sup> of lead <sup>t</sup>, made <sup>v</sup> the whole impenetrable <sup>x</sup> to the rain <sup>w</sup> and dampness <sup>x</sup>. There were seen walks <sup>y</sup> | reaching farther than one could see <sup>z</sup>, | groves <sup>a</sup>, grass-plots <sup>b</sup>, flowers <sup>c</sup> of all sorts, canals, ponds <sup>d</sup>, aqueducts <sup>e</sup>, to water <sup>f</sup> and embellish <sup>g</sup> that delightful <sup>h</sup> place <sup>i</sup>. A marvellous <sup>k</sup> collection <sup>l</sup> of all the beauties of nature and art <sup>l</sup>!

After the victory <sup>m</sup> of Parma <sup>n</sup>, won <sup>o</sup> by Marshal <sup>p</sup> Coigni, the 29th of June 1734 over the Imperialists <sup>q</sup> commanded <sup>r</sup> by Count <sup>s</sup> Merci, who was killed <sup>t</sup> | at the beginning <sup>u</sup> | of the battle <sup>v</sup>, there was found a letter in this General's <sup>w</sup> pocket <sup>x</sup>, which he had received <sup>y</sup> | the day before <sup>z</sup> | from the famous <sup>a</sup> Prince Eugene, the greatest General in his time <sup>b</sup>, in which these words <sup>c</sup> were remarkable <sup>d</sup>. *Endeavour<sup>e</sup>, my dear<sup>d</sup> Count, to beat<sup>e</sup> the French*

a renfermer o défectueux c couler d au milieu e construit f surprenant g joindre h partie i aux deux extrémités k orient l à l'occident m centre n sortir o Piramide p composé q s'élever r en diminuant s sommet t Babilonien u observer \* mouvement w astre x étude y célèbre z tour a fameux b entouré c terrasse d élever e en f amphitheatre g à la hauteur h masse i soutenu k plusieurs l arcade m voute n rosseau o enduit p bitume q rang r brique s plaque t plomb u rendre \* impénétrable w pluie x humidité y allée z à perte de vue a bosquet b gazon c fleur d réservoir e aqueduc f arroser g embellir h delices i lieu k merveilleux l assemblage m victoire n Parme o remporter p Maréchal q Imperial r commandé s Comte t dès le commencement u bataille \* Général w poche x le jour précédent y fameux z tems a parole b remarquable c tâcher d cher e battre.



General: | as to <sup>a</sup> | the soldiers <sup>b</sup> of that nation, never hope <sup>c</sup> to vanquish <sup>d</sup> them.

How can one <sup>e</sup> beat the General without beating the soldiers? These words seem <sup>f</sup> to contradict one another <sup>g</sup>: but 'tis the seeming <sup>h</sup> contradiction <sup>i</sup> of the phrase that makes the wit of it. It discovers <sup>j</sup> to us one of the stratagems <sup>m</sup> of war of that great man, and | at the same time <sup>n</sup> | the opinion he had of the superiority <sup>o</sup> of courage <sup>p</sup> of the French; but that their Generals have not always the superiority in stratagems of war as Mr. De Turenne had. A General can be beaten in battle, when by the bad disposition of his order of battle, half <sup>q</sup> of his forces cannot fight <sup>r</sup>, whilst the other half is attacked <sup>s</sup> by almost all the enemy's army: as it happened at Ramillies <sup>t</sup>, where Marshal Villeroi was soundly <sup>u</sup> beat; and at Hochstet, where Marshal Tallard was defeated <sup>v</sup> and taken <sup>w</sup> prisoner <sup>y</sup>. It can be said, that the French Generals were well beaten, without saying that the French soldiers were vanquished: since the Generals had not the ability <sup>z</sup> to make them fight at an equal <sup>a</sup> number with their enemies.

After the taking <sup>b</sup> of Philipsburgh <sup>c</sup>, where the French made a prodigious <sup>d</sup> number of prisoners, a German <sup>e</sup> Count of the first distinction being fallen <sup>f</sup> into the hands of a Dragoon <sup>g</sup>, offered <sup>h</sup> him his purse <sup>i</sup>, in which there was | a good deal <sup>k</sup> | of money, his gold watch <sup>l</sup>, snuff box <sup>m</sup>, rings <sup>n</sup>, and other things of value <sup>o</sup> he had about him, intreating <sup>p</sup> him to let <sup>q</sup> him go, and | the better to strengthen <sup>r</sup> | his intreaties <sup>s</sup>, offered besides <sup>t</sup> to give him | his note of hand <sup>v</sup> | for any <sup>w</sup> sum <sup>x</sup> he would be pleased <sup>y</sup> to accept of <sup>z</sup>, or to make his fortune, if he would quit <sup>a</sup> the service <sup>b</sup> and go along <sup>c</sup> with him to his estate <sup>d</sup>. But the Dragoon answered him without hesitation <sup>e</sup>, You are not my prisoner; you are the King my master's prisoner, I cannot let you go. The King having been told <sup>f</sup> of that unparalleled <sup>g</sup> piece <sup>h</sup> of generosity <sup>i</sup> from one <sup>j</sup> of that station <sup>k</sup>, gave him

a pour b foldat c espérer d vaincre e can one, as left out in French f sembler g se contredire h apparent i contradiction k sel l découvrir m rule n en même tems o supériorité p courage q mitia r troupe s combattre t attaquer u Ramilly \* bien w défait x fait y prisonnier z habileté a égal b prise c Philipsbourg d prodigieux e Allemand f tomber g Dragon h offrir i bourse k beaucoup l montre m tabatière n diamant o prix p supplier q laisser r pour donner plus de force s instance t outre cela u billet \* tell w somme x plaire y accepter z quitter a service b suivre c terre d marchander e apprendre f sans pareil g trait h générosité i de la part k add man in French l état.

imme-

immediately<sup>a</sup> a Regiment<sup>b</sup>, and made him Knight<sup>c</sup> of St. Lewis<sup>d</sup>. A reward<sup>e</sup> worthy of a King, and rightly<sup>f</sup> deserved. This ribbon<sup>h</sup> being not an empty shew<sup>i</sup> | without profit<sup>k</sup>: every knight of that order, instituted<sup>l</sup> to reward<sup>m</sup> military virtue<sup>n</sup>, having a handsome<sup>o</sup> pension<sup>p</sup> to support<sup>q</sup> his dignity<sup>r</sup>.

That very<sup>s</sup> campaign<sup>t</sup>, which was the first the Prince of Conti made, this Prince did not signalize himself<sup>v</sup> less by his generosity than his courage. | The day after<sup>\*</sup> he had rewarded the soldiers who had distinguished themselves<sup>w</sup> in an action, he saw<sup>x</sup>, as he was walking, a common soldier<sup>y</sup>, whom | he had taken notice of<sup>z</sup> during the action, and forgot<sup>a</sup> to reward. He called<sup>b</sup> him up to him: Friend, said he to him, I am | mighty sorry<sup>c</sup> | I forgot thee. However<sup>d</sup>, there are some *Lewis d'ors*<sup>e</sup> | left<sup>f</sup> in my purse; | here, take it<sup>g</sup> | says he, giving it him, and walked on<sup>h</sup> with the officers that attended<sup>i</sup> him. The fellow<sup>k</sup> a few minutes<sup>l</sup> after ran after him. My Prince, said he, I bring back<sup>m</sup> to your Serene Highness<sup>n</sup> your<sup>o</sup> knee buckles<sup>p</sup>. Your Serene Highness, without doubt<sup>q</sup>, did not know that they were in your purse. (They were diamond<sup>r</sup> buckles of great value<sup>s</sup>.) True<sup>t</sup>, said the Prince, I did not intend<sup>v</sup> to give thee my buckles; but thou deservest them and the others too<sup>\*</sup>. Go to my tent<sup>w</sup> from me, and ask my valet de chambre for them.

Mr. *De Turenne* having taken the command<sup>x</sup> of the army, found the troops in so bad a condition<sup>y</sup> that he sold his plate<sup>z</sup> to clothe<sup>a</sup> the soldiers and remount<sup>b</sup> the cavalry<sup>c</sup>, which he did more than once<sup>d</sup>. Though he had but 40,000 livres a year<sup>e</sup>, that is<sup>f</sup> about 2000 pounds, he would never accept of<sup>g</sup> considerable sums his friends offered him, nor take<sup>h</sup> any thing from tradesmen<sup>i</sup> and shop-keepers<sup>k</sup>, serving his family<sup>l</sup>, without paying for it ready money, lest, said he, if I should

*a* sur le champ *b* Régiment *c* Chevalier *d* St. Louis *e* récompense / bien *g* mérite *h* cordon *i* un vain honneur *k* profit *l* institué *m* récompenser *n* vertus militaires *o* bon *p* pension *q* soutenir *r* dignité *s* même *t* campagne *v* se signaler <sup>\*</sup> le lendemain *w* se distinguer *x* reconnoître *y* simple soldat *z* remarquer *a* oublier *b* appeller *c* bien *d* fâché *e* pourtant *f* Louis d'or *g* encore *h* rien, le voilà *i* continuer sa promenade *j* accompagner *k* soldat *l* quelques minutes *m* rapporter *n* Altesse Sérénissime *o* your is changed into *his* in French through *p* respect <sup>+</sup> *q* boucle de jarretière *r* sans doute *s* diamant *t* prix *u* il est vrai que *v* avoir dessein <sup>\*</sup> aussi *w* tente *x* commandement *y* état *z* vaisselle d'argent *a* habiller *b* remonter *c* cavalerie *d* une fois *e* avoir de rente *f* c'est à dire *g* recevoir *h* take without paying for it ready money, *i* prendre à crédit *j* ouvrier *k* marchand *l* maison.

<sup>+</sup> It is usual in French to speak in the third person to gentry and people of distinction.



chance to be killed, they should lose part of it. They all were ordered<sup>a</sup> to bring their bills<sup>b</sup> before he set out<sup>c</sup> for the campaign, and they were paid<sup>d</sup> regularly<sup>e</sup>.

Whilst he commanded in Germany<sup>f</sup>, a neutral<sup>g</sup> city thinking that the King's army was going their way<sup>h</sup>, offered that General one hundred thousand crowns, to prevail<sup>i</sup> upon him to take another road<sup>k</sup> and make amends<sup>l</sup> for one or two days march<sup>m</sup> that it would have cost<sup>n</sup> the army. *I cannot in conscience accept<sup>o</sup> of that money*, answered M. de Turenne, *because I did not intend<sup>p</sup> to go<sup>q</sup> through that city*.

The action of the great Scipio<sup>r</sup> in Spain, when he added<sup>s</sup> to the fortune<sup>t</sup> of a young Princess he had made prisoner, the money<sup>u</sup> her friends brought him to ransom<sup>v</sup> her, was done him no less honour than his famous<sup>w</sup> conquests<sup>x</sup>.

A like<sup>y</sup> action of Chevalier Bayard deserves no less commendation<sup>z</sup>. When Bresse was taken<sup>aa</sup> by storm<sup>ab</sup> from<sup>b</sup> the Venetians<sup>c</sup>, he saved<sup>d</sup> a house from being plundered<sup>e</sup>, where he retired<sup>f</sup> to get himself cured<sup>g</sup> of a dangerous wound<sup>h</sup> he had received in the siege<sup>i</sup>, and made the Lady of the house secure<sup>k</sup> with her two daughters who were hid<sup>l</sup> therein. At his departure<sup>m</sup>, the Lady, to shew<sup>n</sup> him her gratitude<sup>o</sup>, offered him a box<sup>p</sup> where there were 2,500 Ducats<sup>q</sup>, which he<sup>r</sup> by all means<sup>s</sup> refused. But seeing that she was mightily<sup>t</sup> concerned<sup>u</sup> at his refusal<sup>v</sup>, and being unwilling to leave his landlady<sup>w</sup> displeased<sup>x</sup> with him, he consented<sup>y</sup> to receive her present: and having asked for<sup>z</sup> the two young Ladies<sup>aa</sup> to take his leave<sup>ab</sup> of them, he gave to each a thousand Ducats, as a help<sup>ac</sup> to their portions<sup>ad</sup>, and left the five hundred others to be distributed to colleges<sup>ae</sup>, which had been plundered<sup>af</sup>.

The history of Sabinus and his generous<sup>f</sup> spouse<sup>g</sup>.

Vespasian<sup>h</sup> having taken the title<sup>i</sup> of Emperor, notwithstanding<sup>k</sup> the oath<sup>l</sup> he had made<sup>m</sup> to Vitellius who reigned<sup>n</sup> then,

*a avoir ordre b mémoire c partir d payé e régulièrement f Allemagne g naïtre h de ce côté i engager k route l dédommager m marche n coûter o recevoir p avoir intention q passer r Scipion s ajouter t dot u rançon v racheter w fameux x conquête y semblable z louange a d'assaut b sur c Venitien d sauver e pillage f se retirer g se faire panser h blessure i siège k mettre en sûreté l caché m départ n témoigner o reconnaissance p boîte q Ducat r constamment s très t affligé u refus \* hôtesse w mal content x consentir y faire venir z Demoiselle a dire adieu b pour aider Turn, to marry them d communauté e piller f Généreux g épouse h Vespasien i titre k nonobstant l serment m prêter n régner.*

both

both the Gauls<sup>a</sup> and the Germans<sup>b</sup> attempted<sup>c</sup> to shake<sup>d</sup> off the Roman yoke<sup>e</sup>; these latter under the conduct of Civilis, the former under that of three noble Gauls. Sabinus, one of them, having been defeated<sup>f</sup>, had the weakness<sup>g</sup> to outlive<sup>h</sup> his shame<sup>i</sup>, and preserve<sup>k</sup> a wretched<sup>l</sup> life banished from the society<sup>m</sup> of the living<sup>n</sup>, and the sight<sup>o</sup> of the sun. He had married a most lovely<sup>p</sup> and virtuous wife, named<sup>q</sup> Eponina<sup>r</sup>. | He was so excessively fond of<sup>s</sup> her, that neither being able to take her along<sup>t</sup> with him, to Germany, where he could have saved himself<sup>v</sup>, nor to resolve<sup>w</sup> to part<sup>x</sup> from her, he thought<sup>y</sup> of a resolute<sup>z</sup>ness, which nothing<sup>aa</sup> but love could have suggested<sup>ab</sup> to him. There were at his country house two sorts<sup>b</sup> of rooms, or rather caverns<sup>c</sup>, dug<sup>d</sup> very far<sup>e</sup> in the ground<sup>f</sup>, but which nobody knew but two of his freed men<sup>g</sup>. He resolved to confine<sup>h</sup> himself in that dark<sup>i</sup> abode<sup>k</sup> with these two men only. With<sup>l</sup> that design he dismissed<sup>m</sup> all his servants<sup>n</sup>, making them believe<sup>o</sup> that he was going to secure himself<sup>p</sup> with poison<sup>q</sup> against the persecutions<sup>r</sup> of his enemies; an expedient<sup>s</sup> which was at that time pretty<sup>t</sup> common<sup>v</sup> with the unfortunate<sup>w</sup>; then he went down<sup>x</sup> to those lurking holes<sup>y</sup> with the two freedmen. But first<sup>z</sup> he sent one of them to his wife, to tell<sup>aa</sup> her that he was dead of a poison he had taken, and that his body had been burnt with the house. And indeed, to make the thing more credible<sup>ab</sup>, he caused it to be set on fire<sup>b</sup>; and he wanted<sup>c</sup> to have his wife believe it at first<sup>d</sup>, that her lamentation<sup>e</sup> and cries<sup>f</sup> being unfeigned<sup>g</sup>, might the better serve<sup>h</sup> his dissembling<sup>i</sup>. At this news<sup>k</sup> Eponina threw<sup>l</sup> herself down, <sup>m</sup> tore<sup>n</sup> her hair, and cried<sup>o</sup>, | and for many days together<sup>p</sup> | did nothing but | grieve<sup>r</sup> herself. When he saw<sup>s</sup> that her grief<sup>t</sup> was daily<sup>v</sup> increasing<sup>w</sup>, and that it would soon<sup>x</sup> kill her, if he did not remedy<sup>y</sup> it, he let<sup>z</sup> her

*a* Gaulois *b* Germains *c* entreprendre *d* secouer *e* joug *f* défait *g* foible *h* survivre *i* honte *k* conserver *l* malheureux *m* commerce *n* vivant *o* vûe *p* aimable *q* nommé *r* Eponine *s* aimer éperdument *t* mener *v* se sauver *w* se résoudre *x* se séparer *y* s'imaginer *z* retraite *aa* nulle autre chose *a* enseigner *b* espèce *c* cavernes *d* creusé *e* bien avant *f* en terre *g* affranchi *h* confiner *i* sombre *k* demeure *l* dans *m* congédier *n* domestique *o* accroître *p* délivrer *q* poison *r* recherche *s* expédient *t* assez *v* ordinaire *w* malheureux *x* descendre *y* cachette *z* auparavant *aa* annoncer *a* croyable *b* mettre le feu *c* vouloir *d* d'abord *e* lamentation *f* pleurs *g* véritable *h* servir *i* feinte *k* nouvelle *l* jeter *m* par terre *n* arracher *o* pleurer *p* plusieurs jours durant *q* ne cesser de *r* tourmenter *s* reconnoître *t* douleur *v* toujours *w* croître *x* bientôt *y* remédier *z* faire.



know <sup>a</sup> secretly <sup>b</sup> by the same freed man that he was living <sup>c</sup> still <sup>d</sup>, desiring <sup>e</sup> her to be comforted <sup>f</sup>, and to keep in mourning <sup>g</sup> nevertheless <sup>h</sup>, in order to confirm the belief <sup>i</sup> which people had of his death. Eponina acted <sup>k</sup> her part <sup>l</sup> perfectly well <sup>m</sup>. She appeared all the day crying <sup>n</sup> and sighing <sup>o</sup>, but at night she stole away <sup>p</sup> to go and visit her husband in that place <sup>q</sup> of darkness <sup>r</sup>, doing every day <sup>s</sup> for him what Orpheus <sup>t</sup> did but once for Eurydice <sup>v</sup>.

She lived nine years after that manner with <sup>x</sup> Sabinus, and during that time she brought <sup>y</sup> two children into the world, two sons, of whom she was delivered by her husband <sup>z</sup>, as a lioness <sup>a</sup> in her den <sup>b</sup>, and whom she brought up <sup>c</sup> like <sup>d</sup> fawns <sup>e</sup>. At last <sup>f</sup> that lurking hole <sup>g</sup> being discovered, both the husband and wife were taken and brought to Rome before the Emperor Vespasian. The generous heroine <sup>h</sup> prostrating herself at his feet with her children: *Take pity <sup>i</sup>, Cæsar, said she to him, on these poor creatures that were born <sup>j</sup> in the grave <sup>k</sup>. We have begot <sup>l</sup> them only that there might be more supplicants <sup>m</sup> to implore <sup>n</sup> thy mercy <sup>o</sup>, and that thou mightest grant <sup>p</sup> us a pardon <sup>q</sup> for the sake <sup>r</sup> of these innocent wretches <sup>s</sup> who have not offended thee <sup>t</sup>.* The hearts <sup>v</sup> of all those that were present <sup>w</sup> were moved with pity <sup>x</sup>. Vespasian alone <sup>y</sup> remained <sup>z</sup> inflexible <sup>a</sup>. He sent them all unmercifully <sup>b</sup> to the utmost <sup>c</sup> torments <sup>d</sup>.

That whole <sup>e</sup> reign <sup>f</sup>, says Plutarch <sup>g</sup>, saw nothing so deplorable <sup>h</sup>, nor that raised <sup>i</sup> more horror. And indeed it was an enormous <sup>j</sup> piece <sup>k</sup> of injustice to make the innocent perish <sup>l</sup> with the guilty <sup>m</sup>; and a still <sup>n</sup> more enormous <sup>o</sup> cruelty <sup>p</sup> to put her to death, who deserved rewards from all mankind <sup>q</sup>.

Such is the melancholy <sup>r</sup> case <sup>s</sup> of human affairs <sup>t</sup>: the desire of an unlimited <sup>v</sup> authority in the Prince, and the love of independency <sup>w</sup> in the people, expose all States <sup>x</sup> to unavoidable <sup>y</sup> revolutions <sup>z</sup>. Nothing <sup>a</sup> fixt <sup>b</sup>, nothing is constant <sup>c</sup> among men.

*a savoir b secrètement c vivre d'encore e prier f se consoler g porter le deuil h toujours i croyance k jouer l personnage m parfaitement n en pleurs o soupir p se dérober q lieu r ténèbres s tous les jours t Orphée v Eurydice \* de cette manière w mettre au monde x accoucher y lionne z recevoir a élever b comme c façon d. à la fin e cachette f héroïne g se prosterner h prendre pitié i prendre naissance k tombeau l mettre au monde m suppliant n implorer o miséricorde p donner q grâce and thy is left out r amour s innocent t offenser u cœur \* présent w attendri x seul y demeurer z inflexible a impitoyablement b dernier c supplice d tout e regne f Plutarque g déplorable h faire i énorme k pièce is left out l périr m coupable n encore o énorme p cruauté q genre humain r triste s état t choses humaines u sans bornes \* indépendance w Etat x irrévitable y révolution z fixe a stable.*

Cyrus understood<sup>a</sup> by these words<sup>b</sup> that 'tis not only in the wisdom of the laws, but still more in that of the Sovereign, that the safety<sup>c</sup> and happiness of a State are found. In any country five or six bold, crafty<sup>d</sup>, eloquent men hardly fail<sup>e</sup> to hurry away<sup>f</sup> the Monarch<sup>g</sup> or the Senate<sup>h</sup>. All Governments are good, when the Rulers<sup>i</sup> mind<sup>k</sup> the public good only. But they will always be defective<sup>l</sup>, because men who have the management<sup>m</sup> of them are imperfect.

How unhappy the fate<sup>n</sup> of mortals is! In avoiding<sup>o</sup> the dreadful<sup>p</sup> evils of popular<sup>q</sup> Government, they run the risk<sup>r</sup> of falling into slavery<sup>s</sup>: in eschewing<sup>t</sup> the inconveniencies<sup>v</sup> of Royalty<sup>x</sup>, they by degrees<sup>w</sup> expose themselves to Anarchy<sup>y</sup>. The political<sup>z</sup> road<sup>a</sup> is edged<sup>a</sup> with precipices<sup>b</sup> on all sides<sup>c</sup>. No State can subsist<sup>d</sup> without subordination<sup>e</sup>.

The supreme<sup>f</sup> authority, of what nature soever it be, is a necessary evil, to prevent<sup>g</sup> greater evils.

Cyrus interrupted<sup>h</sup> Solon, and said to him, It seems<sup>i</sup> to me that merit alone<sup>k</sup> distinguishes men. Wit is the least of all merits, because it is always dangerous when alone: but wisdom, virtue, and valour, give a natural right<sup>l</sup> to govern. He alone ought<sup>m</sup> to command others, who has more wisdom to find out what is right<sup>n</sup>, more virtue to pursue<sup>o</sup> it, and more courage to cause it to be executed<sup>p</sup>.

Merit, replied<sup>q</sup> Solon, essentially<sup>r</sup> distinguishes men: it alone should determine<sup>s</sup> their rank<sup>t</sup>: but ignorance and passions oftentimes hinder<sup>v</sup> it to be known. Self-love<sup>x</sup> makes every body challenge<sup>w</sup> it. Those who have most of it, are always modest<sup>y</sup>, and don't desire<sup>z</sup> to rule<sup>a</sup>. In short<sup>a</sup>, what seems<sup>b</sup> to be virtue, is sometimes nothing but a deceitful<sup>c</sup> vizard<sup>d</sup>. Disputes, discords<sup>e</sup>, illusions<sup>f</sup>, would last for ever<sup>g</sup> if there were no surer<sup>h</sup> and less ambiguous<sup>i</sup> means<sup>k</sup> to regulate<sup>l</sup> rank, than merit only.

*a* comprendre *b* discours *c* salut *d* artificieux *e* Turn thus, hurry away almost always *f* entraîner *g* Monarque *h* Sénat *i* ceux qui regnent *k* chercher *l* défectueux *m* présider *n* sort *o* éviter *p* affreux *q* populaire *r* courir *s* risque *t* esclavage *u* fuir *v* inconvenient *w* Royauté *x* peu à peu *y* Anarchie *z* politique *a* bord *b* précipice *c* de tout côté *d* subsister *e* subordination *f* suprême *g* empêcher *h* interrompre *i* sembler *k* seul *l* droit *m* devoir *n* juste *o* suivre *p* exécuter *q* repliquer *r* essentiellement *s* décider *t* rang *u* empêcher *x* amour propre *y* s'attribuer *z* modeste *a* chercher *b* dominer *c* enfin *d* paroître *e* trompeur *f* masque *g* discorde *h* illusion *i* être éternel *k* sûr *l* équivoque *m* moyen *n* régler.



In small Republics<sup>a</sup> ranks are determined<sup>b</sup> by election<sup>c</sup>. In great Monarchies<sup>d</sup> by birth<sup>e</sup>. I own<sup>f</sup> that it is an evil to bestow<sup>g</sup> dignities upon those who have no true merit: but it is another necessary evil; and that necessity is the spring<sup>h</sup> of almost all political establishments. That is the difference between natural and civil right. The former<sup>i</sup> always conformable<sup>k</sup> to the most perfect justice. The other, though often unjust in its<sup>l</sup> consequences, becomes however<sup>m</sup> unavoidable<sup>n</sup>, in order to prevent<sup>o</sup> disorder<sup>p</sup> and confusion.

Ranks and dignities are but the shadow<sup>q</sup> of true greatness<sup>r</sup>. The outward<sup>s</sup> respect and duties<sup>t</sup> that are paid<sup>v</sup> to them, are likewise<sup>u</sup> but the shadow of that esteem which belongs<sup>w</sup> to virtue only. Is it not a great wisdom in the first Law-givers<sup>x</sup> to have preserved<sup>y</sup> the order of society, in enacting<sup>z</sup> laws, by which they, who have but the shadow of virtue, are contented<sup>a</sup> with the shadow of esteem?

I apprehend<sup>b</sup> you, said Cyrus: Sovereignty<sup>c</sup> and ranks are necessary evils | to keep passions within bounds<sup>d</sup>. | The Commonalty<sup>e</sup> ought to be contented to deserve the inward<sup>f</sup> esteem of men by their simple and modest virtue: and the Great ought to be convinced<sup>g</sup> that outward<sup>h</sup> respect<sup>i</sup> only will be paid<sup>k</sup> to them, unless they have true merit. | By these means<sup>l</sup> | the former<sup>m</sup> will not be exasperated<sup>n</sup> at their | low state<sup>o</sup>, | neither will the others pride<sup>p</sup> in their greatness. Men | will be sensible<sup>q</sup> that Kings are necessary: and Kings will not forget that they are men. Every one will keep<sup>r</sup> his own<sup>s</sup> place; and the order of society will not | be broken through<sup>t</sup>. | I comprehend<sup>v</sup> the beauty of that principle. I am mightily impatient<sup>u</sup> to be informed<sup>w</sup> of your other laws.

After the death of the emperor Maximilian<sup>x</sup>, there arose<sup>y</sup> strong<sup>z</sup> intrigues<sup>a</sup> amongst those who put up for<sup>b</sup> the Empire. The two chief candidates<sup>c</sup> were Francis<sup>d</sup> I. and Charles V. The

*a* République *b* se regler *c* election *d* Monarchie *e* naissance *f* àuer  
*g* accorder *h* source *i* un *k* conforme *l* Turn thus, the consequences which  
arise from it (resulter) *m* pourtant *n* inévitable *o* prévenir *p* désordre  
*q* ombre *r* grandeur *s* extérieur *t* hommage *u* rendre *v* aussi *w* appartenir  
*x* Législateur *y* conserver *z* établir *a* se contenter *b* concevoir *c* Souveraineté  
*d* contenir les passions *e* les petits *f* intérieur *g* se persuader *h* extérieur  
*i* respect *k* accorder *l* par la *m* un *n* s'agrir *o* bassesse *p* s'enorgueillir  
*q* sentir *r* se tenir *s* own is left out *t* troublé *u* comprendre *v* avoir  
grande impatience *w* apprendre *x* Maximilien *y* voir naître (used impersonally with on) *z* puissant *a* intrigue *b* ceux qui prétendre à *c* les deux plus  
considérables Concurrents *d* François.

Electors,

Electors<sup>a</sup>, to | put an end<sup>b</sup> | to these contests<sup>c</sup>, resolved to exclude<sup>d</sup> them both<sup>e</sup> as Foreigners<sup>f</sup>, and to put their Imperial Crown upon the head of one of their nation, and of the number of the Electors. They therefore unanimously<sup>g</sup> chose Frederick of Saxe, surnamed<sup>h</sup> the Wise, who desired<sup>i</sup> two days to consider<sup>k</sup>: and the third he with much modesty | excused himself for refusing it<sup>l</sup>; | representing to them that | being old<sup>m</sup>, | he was sensible he was unable<sup>n</sup> | to bear<sup>o</sup> such a great weight<sup>p</sup>. All the remonstrances<sup>q</sup> that were made him not being able to overcome<sup>r</sup> his resolution<sup>s</sup>, the Electors desired<sup>t</sup> him to name the person he thought<sup>u</sup> in conscience<sup>v</sup> the most qualified<sup>w</sup>: assuring him that they would be guided<sup>x</sup> by his advice<sup>y</sup>. Frederick refused for a | considerable time<sup>z</sup> | to do it; but at last<sup>a</sup>, forced by the pressing<sup>b</sup> entreaties<sup>c</sup> of the Electors, he declared himself<sup>d</sup> for the Catholic<sup>e</sup> King.

Towards the end of the eleventh century<sup>f</sup>, about the year 1090, the Scotch<sup>g</sup> having rebelled<sup>h</sup> against their King, Malcolm, he gave the command<sup>i</sup> of his armies to two Captains<sup>k</sup> who made him triumph<sup>l</sup>, and brought<sup>m</sup> all the rebels<sup>n</sup> to reason. The two Captains were Macduff and Walter. Malcolm rewarded<sup>o</sup> their services by giving an estate<sup>p</sup> to Macduff. But as to Walter, whose conduct | did shine still more bright<sup>q</sup>, | since after cutting to pieces<sup>r</sup> all those against whom he commanded, he restored<sup>s</sup> tranquillity to the State, and confirmed<sup>t</sup> the throne<sup>u</sup> and scepter<sup>v</sup> of his master, Malcolm honoured<sup>w</sup> him with the post of Steward, which was nothing more than that of Lieutenant-General of the Kingdom. Which occasioning<sup>x</sup> that great man to love a title<sup>y</sup> that raised<sup>z</sup> him to the first dignity of Scotland<sup>a</sup>, he chose it for the surname<sup>b</sup> which he would have all his family | go by<sup>c</sup>. | In effect this illustrious name has been that of several Kings of Scotland, and lastly<sup>d</sup> of James<sup>e</sup> the first, Charles the first, Charles the second, and James the second of England.

<sup>a</sup> Electeur <sup>b</sup> mettre fin <sup>c</sup> contestation <sup>d</sup> exclure <sup>e</sup> tous deux <sup>f</sup> Etranger <sup>g</sup> d'une commune voix <sup>h</sup> surnommé <sup>i</sup> demande <sup>k</sup> se déterminer <sup>l</sup> remercier les Electeurs (thus. <sup>m</sup> *made in French*) <sup>m</sup> à l'âge où il étoit <sup>n</sup> il ne sentoit pas assez de force <sup>o</sup> soutenir <sup>p</sup> poids <sup>q</sup> remontrance <sup>r</sup> vaincre <sup>s</sup> résistance <sup>t</sup> prier <sup>u</sup> juger <sup>v</sup> en conscience <sup>w</sup> propre <sup>x</sup> s'en rapporter <sup>y</sup> avis <sup>z</sup> long tems <sup>a</sup> enfin <sup>b</sup> vis <sup>c</sup> instance <sup>d</sup> se déclarer <sup>e</sup> Catholique <sup>f</sup> siècle <sup>g</sup> Ecossois <sup>h</sup> se revolter <sup>i</sup> commandement <sup>k</sup> Capitaine <sup>l</sup> triompher <sup>m</sup> ramener <sup>n</sup> Rébelle <sup>o</sup> reconnoître <sup>p</sup> terre <sup>q</sup> avoir encore plus d'éclat <sup>r</sup> tailler en pièces <sup>s</sup> rétablir <sup>t</sup> affermir <sup>u</sup> trône <sup>v</sup> sceptre <sup>w</sup> honorer <sup>x</sup> donner sujet <sup>y</sup> titre <sup>z</sup> élever <sup>a</sup> Ecosse <sup>b</sup> surnom <sup>c</sup> porter <sup>d</sup> en dernier lieu <sup>e</sup> Jaques.



The French Monarchy<sup>a</sup> is one of the most noble, ancient, and powerful existing.

The Franks<sup>b</sup> are a nation | originally come<sup>c</sup> | from the noble countries<sup>d</sup> of Germany, where they found themselves confined<sup>e</sup> | in too narrow a compass<sup>f</sup>: | it does not owe<sup>g</sup> its origin<sup>h</sup> to the decline<sup>i</sup> of the Roman Empire, like<sup>k</sup> some others | now extant<sup>l</sup>, | since in the time of the first Emperors, it was already considerable enough to dare<sup>m</sup> all the forces of the Russian Empire. Its Monarchy dates<sup>n</sup> from the year 417 of the birth of Christ<sup>o</sup>, when the Franks, before they gave battle<sup>p</sup> to their enemies, proclaimed<sup>q</sup> Pharamond their king, who was their Captain General<sup>r</sup>. And<sup>s</sup> few nations can glory<sup>t</sup> in so ancient a nobility<sup>v</sup>, nor urge<sup>\*</sup> titles<sup>w</sup> of so remote<sup>x</sup> an antiquity<sup>y</sup>.

The Roman Empire, such as it is now<sup>z</sup>, owes its origin<sup>a</sup> to Charlemagne, a King of the second race<sup>b</sup> of the Monarchs of France, who left it to one of his sons, after having freed<sup>c</sup> it from the yoke<sup>d</sup> of the Barbarians<sup>e</sup>: Lewis the Meek<sup>f</sup> preferring<sup>g</sup> the Flower de Lucés<sup>h</sup> to the Axes<sup>i</sup> and Fasces<sup>k</sup> of Romulus.

England was inhabited<sup>l</sup> in that century by the Picts<sup>m</sup> and Britons, who were driven away<sup>n</sup> by the Saxons<sup>o</sup>. These last were subdued<sup>p</sup>, and their King dethroned<sup>q</sup> by the Danes<sup>r</sup>, and afterwards the Danes by the Normans. But how many forms<sup>s</sup> of Government, and what series<sup>t</sup> of revolutions, since the Norman conquest<sup>v</sup>.

The two Spains were then groaning<sup>\*</sup> under the domination of the Goths<sup>w</sup> and Sweves<sup>x</sup>, and were not entirely<sup>y</sup> delivered<sup>z</sup> from the slavery<sup>a</sup> of the Moors<sup>b</sup> till the XVth century, under the reign<sup>c</sup> of Ferdinand King of Arragon, and Isabella<sup>d</sup> Queen of Castile. But the French Monarchy has always been enjoyed<sup>e</sup> by an uninterrupted<sup>f</sup> succession of natives<sup>g</sup> kings. It has never borne<sup>h</sup> the yoke of the Barbarians. It has never been altered<sup>i</sup> by the mixture<sup>k</sup> of any heterogeneous<sup>l</sup> people.

*a* Monarchie *b* François *c* originaire *d* contrée *e* logé *f* trop à Pétroit  
*g* devoir *h* naissance *i* décadence *k* comme *l* qui subsistent aujourd'hui *m* braver  
*n* être marqué à *o* Jésus Christ *p* livre bataille *q* proclamer *r* Capitaine  
 Général *s* or *t* se glorifier *v* noblesse *\** faire valoir *w* titre *x* reculé *y* anti-  
 quité *z* aujourd'hui *a* origine *b* race *c* affranchir *d* joug *e* Barbares *f* Débon-  
 naire *g* préférer *h* fleurs de lis *i* hache *k* faisceau *l* habit *m* Pictes *n* chassé  
*o* Saxon *p* subjugué *q* détroné *r* Danois *s* forme *t* suite *v* conquête *w* gé-  
 mir *x* Gothe *y* Suève *z* entièrement *a* affranchi *b* servitude *c* Maures  
*d* regne *e* Isabelle *f* possédé *g* non interrompu *h* originaire *i* porter *k* altéré  
*l* mélange *m* hétérogène.

But

But of all the Monarchies that have lasted<sup>a</sup> the longest<sup>b</sup>, there is none | comes near<sup>c</sup> | the time that the French Monarchy has already been subsisting<sup>d</sup>.

The Empire of Babylon was the most ancient of all, having been founded<sup>e</sup> by Nimrod, who was also called Bel, and was Cham's grandson<sup>f</sup>, 166 years after the Flood<sup>g</sup>. But it was properly<sup>h</sup> Semiramis who was the first Queen of it. Now<sup>i</sup> from her to Meseimordaches, under whom the Empire was reunited<sup>k</sup> to that of Assyria<sup>l</sup>, | it wants very much of<sup>m</sup> | fourteen Ages<sup>n</sup>.

The Roman Empire lasted in the West<sup>o</sup> only to Augustulus, who was the last Emperor, that is to say, about 1100 years from Romulus, and that too under different forms. That of Constantinople in the East<sup>p</sup> subsisted only from Arcadius to Constantine Forphyrogenetes, under whom Mahomet II. took Constantinople; that is to say, from the fifth century to the fifteenth. Whereas<sup>q</sup> there are fourteen ages already the French Monarchy has subsisted in the same form as it is now.

France, formerly<sup>r</sup> Gaul, lies<sup>s</sup> between the 15 and 30 degrees of longitude, and the 42 and 52 of Northern<sup>t</sup> latitude. Its length, taken from west<sup>v</sup> to east<sup>w</sup>, from Coquet, the most western<sup>x</sup> point of Lower<sup>y</sup> Britany, to Strasbourg, near the Rhine, is about 250 leagues: and its breadth, from south<sup>z</sup> to north<sup>a</sup>, measuring<sup>b</sup> from | the most extreme parts<sup>c</sup> | of Roussillon to Dunkirk, is about 200. Its bounds<sup>d</sup> northwards<sup>e</sup> are the Low countries; eastwards<sup>f</sup>, Germany and Swisserland; southwards<sup>g</sup>, Savoy, and Italy, the Mediterranean, and Spain, from which it is separated by the Pyrenees; westwards<sup>h</sup>, the Western<sup>i</sup> or Atlantic<sup>j</sup> Ocean. •

The air is very clear<sup>k</sup> and healthy<sup>l</sup>: and all the blessings<sup>m</sup> of the seasons are enjoyed there, under an extremely temperate<sup>n</sup> Heaven, without feeling<sup>o</sup> their inconveniences<sup>p</sup>, as | in other places<sup>q</sup>. | There is no country in Europe has a situation so charming<sup>r</sup>, and where it is so pleasant to live<sup>s</sup>. It is watered<sup>t</sup>

*a* durer *b* le plus long tems. *c* approcher *d* subsister. *e* fondé *f* petit fils *g* déluge *h* proprement *i* or prouin *l* Assyrie *m* il s'en faut de beaucoup qu'on puisse compter *n* siècle *o* Occident *p* Orient *q* au lieu que *r* autrefois *s* être situé *t* septentrional *v* couchant *w* levant *x* occidental *y* bas *z* sud *a* nord *b* à compter *c* extrémité *d* borne *e* au septentrion *f* à l'orient *g* au midi *h* au couchant *i* occidental *j* Atlantique *k* pur / sain *m* douceur *n* tempéré *o* ressentir *p* incommodité *q* ailleurs *r* beau *s* Turn, thus, and the abode (sejour) so pleasant *t* arrosé.



by the Ocean on one side, and the Mediterranean on the other. A great many rivers | running through<sup>a</sup> | the country, communicate with<sup>b</sup> both seas, and bring<sup>c</sup> a very considerable trade<sup>d</sup>. Every thing that can prompt<sup>e</sup> the delicacies<sup>f</sup> and necessities of life, abounds<sup>g</sup> there: and the fruitfulness<sup>h</sup> of Sicily and Egypt, so much celebrated<sup>i</sup>, is not | to be compared<sup>k</sup> | to that of France; since besides an innumerable multitude<sup>l</sup> of natives<sup>m</sup> she maintains, she has enough<sup>n</sup> largely<sup>o</sup> to supply<sup>p</sup> other nations with | her superfluities<sup>q</sup>. | There is no land to be seen uncultivated<sup>r</sup> or barren<sup>s</sup>. There the fields<sup>t</sup> produce abundance of corn<sup>v</sup> and fruit without almost any help<sup>w</sup> of art or husbandry<sup>x</sup>. The very<sup>y</sup> mountains are covered<sup>z</sup> with them; and the valleys<sup>a</sup> are full<sup>b</sup> of a prodigious quantity<sup>c</sup> of cattle<sup>d</sup>. The game<sup>e</sup> is of an exquisite flavour<sup>f</sup>, and the salt is the best in the world<sup>g</sup>. France makes a very large<sup>h</sup> trade of it, as well as of her wines, and other manufactures. All these advantages makes it sufficiently<sup>i</sup> appear<sup>j</sup> that France in general is the best country in Europe. She | can do without<sup>k</sup> | other nations, but they cannot do without her without great difficulties<sup>l</sup>, either on account of<sup>m</sup> the necessities<sup>n</sup>, or the comforts<sup>o</sup> of life.

They reckon<sup>p</sup> in France 800 cities, whereof 40 are of the first rate<sup>q</sup>, 125 of the second, and about 635 of the third, without taking in or reckoning | a vast many<sup>r</sup> | market towns<sup>s</sup>, and an | exceedingly great<sup>t</sup> | number of villages<sup>u</sup>, and noblemen's seats<sup>v</sup>. | The number of the inhabitants<sup>w</sup> amounts to above 30 millions. Those who know Spain, England, and Germany, have | made it appear<sup>x</sup> | that France is three times more populous<sup>y</sup> than the two former<sup>z</sup>, and near twice as populous<sup>a</sup> as the latter<sup>b</sup>. Very exact calculations<sup>c</sup> allow<sup>d</sup> five millions of souls in Spain, six millions and an half to the three kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, and eighteen millions to Germany. Therefore<sup>e</sup> that kingdom | is looked upon<sup>f</sup> | as the most considerable power<sup>g</sup> in Europe: and | it ought not to be a matter of wonder<sup>h</sup> | that in

*a traverser b Turn thus, serve to the communication of c attirer d commerce e servir f délices g se trouver avec profusion h fertilité i vanté k comparable l quantité m hommes n de quoi o largement p fournir q ce qu'elle a de trop r inculte s stérile t campagne u grain \* secours w culture x même y chargé z vallon a rempli b multitude c bétail d gibier e goût f grand g allez h voir i se passer k Turn this noun by an adverb l pour m besoin n agrément o compter p ordre q quantité r gros bourg s infini t village u château v habitant w vérifier x peuplé y premier z une fois plus a seconde b mémoire c donner d aussi e regarder f puissance g l'on ne doit point être surpris.*

time

time of war she raises<sup>a</sup> 450,000 men, and | keeps a standing army of<sup>b</sup> | 250,000 men in time of peace. The warlike<sup>c</sup> temper<sup>d</sup> of the people, the surprising number of fortified places on her frontiers<sup>e</sup>, the surprising<sup>f</sup> land and sea armaments<sup>g</sup> she keeps<sup>h</sup> at all times, the trade, great finances<sup>i</sup>, and the improvement<sup>k</sup> of Arts and Sciences, | are in a much more flourishing state<sup>l</sup> | than they ever were at Athens and Rome, and make<sup>m</sup> France the first State of Europe. Every thing justly gives her<sup>n</sup> that pre-eminence<sup>o</sup>: and raises<sup>p</sup> her to that high pitch<sup>q</sup> of greatness, which makes her so dreadful<sup>r</sup> to her neighbours. The yearly<sup>s</sup> revenue<sup>t</sup> of the King amounts to about 300,000,000, which makes about 15 millions of pounds sterling; and he | takes place<sup>v</sup> of | all the other Christian Princes, except of the Emperor.

There is<sup>u</sup> study<sup>\*</sup> of Nature which requires<sup>w</sup> almost nothing but eyes, and which on that account<sup>x</sup> is | within the reach<sup>y</sup> | of all sorts of persons, and even<sup>z</sup> of children. It consists in | being mindful<sup>a</sup> | of the objects<sup>b</sup> which Nature offers<sup>c</sup> us, in considering them carefully<sup>d</sup>, and admiring the different beauties of them, but without searching<sup>e</sup> into their hidden<sup>f</sup> causes, which belongs<sup>g</sup> to the Physic<sup>h</sup> of the learned.

I say that even children are capable of it: for they have eyes, and don't want<sup>i</sup> inquisitiveness<sup>k</sup>. They | are desirous<sup>l</sup> | to know: they ask questions<sup>m</sup>. | One need only<sup>n</sup> | quicken<sup>o</sup>, and keep up<sup>p</sup> in them the desire of learning and knowing, which is natural to all men. Besides, that study, if it ought to be called so, far from being painful<sup>q</sup> and tiresome<sup>r</sup>, offers nothing but pleasure and delight<sup>s</sup>. It can serve instead of<sup>t</sup>, and ought commonly<sup>v</sup> to be done by way<sup>\*</sup> of, diversion<sup>w</sup> only.

It is | not to be conceived<sup>x</sup> | how many things children could learn, if one knew how to improve<sup>y</sup> all the opportunities<sup>z</sup> which they themselves afford<sup>a</sup> us. A garden, the fields<sup>b</sup>, a palace, all

*a* mettre sur pié *b* entretenir *c* guerrier *d* humeur *e* Turn that, the places which surround her (environner) *f* prodigieux *g* armement *h* entretenir *i* finances *k* perfection *l* fleurir *m* rendre *n* établir *o* pré-éminence *p* élever *q* point *r* redoutable *s* annuel *t* revenu *u* avoir le pas sur *v* étude *w* demander *x* par cette raison *y* à la portée *z* même *a* se rendre attentif *b* objet *c* présenter *d* avec soin *e* approfondir *f* secret *g* être du ressort *h* Physique *i* manquer *k* curiosité *l* vouloir *m* interroger *n* il ne faut que *o* réveiller *p* entretenir *q* pénible *r* ennuyeux *s* agrément *t* tenir lieu *u* ordinairement *v* en jouant *w* *and* *x* récréation (but this last word must come after tenir lieu, and the sentence end with en jouant) *y* inconcevable *z* occasion *a* fournir *b* une campagne.

these



these are a book open for them: but they must have learnt, and be accustomed to read it. Nothing is more common among us than the use<sup>a</sup> of bread and linen: nothing is more scarce<sup>b</sup> than to find children who know how either the one or the other is prepared: through how many ways<sup>c</sup> and hands wheat<sup>d</sup> and hemp<sup>e</sup> must pass before they | are made<sup>f</sup> | bread and linen. The same must be said of woollens<sup>g</sup> stuffs<sup>h</sup>, which are but little like the fleece<sup>i</sup> of the sheep<sup>k</sup> of which they are made<sup>l</sup>, no more than paper<sup>m</sup> is like those linen-rags<sup>n</sup> that are picked up<sup>o</sup> in the streets. Why are not children acquainted<sup>p</sup> with those marvellous<sup>q</sup> productions<sup>r</sup> of Nature and Art, which they every day make use of, without minding<sup>s</sup> them?

The following examples will serve to shew<sup>t</sup> how we ought to study Nature in all that offers itself<sup>v</sup> to our eyes, and ascend<sup>\*</sup> from<sup>w</sup> her to the Creator. • I shall confine myself<sup>x</sup> to what concerns<sup>y</sup> plants<sup>z</sup> and animals.

The first Preacher<sup>a</sup> that proclaimed<sup>b</sup> the glory of the supreme God is the sky<sup>c</sup>, where the sun, the moon, and the stars<sup>d</sup> shine forth<sup>e</sup> with so much brightness<sup>f</sup>: and that book, written in characters<sup>g</sup> of light<sup>h</sup>, is sufficient<sup>i</sup> to make all men inexcusable<sup>k</sup>. But the divine Wisdom is no less admirable<sup>l</sup> in its least productions<sup>m</sup>, wherein it has been pleased<sup>n</sup>, | if one may say so<sup>o</sup>, | to make itself more accessible<sup>p</sup>, and wherein it seems to invite us to consider it nearer<sup>q</sup>, without fearing to be dazzled<sup>r</sup> by it.

### P L A N T S.

There is in the most seemingly<sup>s</sup> despicable<sup>t</sup> wherewith<sup>v</sup> to astonish<sup>\*</sup> the most sublime<sup>w</sup> minds<sup>x</sup>, which nevertheless<sup>y</sup> cannot see but the most coarse<sup>z</sup> organs<sup>a</sup> of them and to which the whole secret of the life, nourishment<sup>b</sup>, and propagation<sup>c</sup>, remains<sup>d</sup> unknown<sup>e</sup>. Not one leaf<sup>f</sup> is neglected<sup>g</sup> in them. Order and symmetry<sup>h</sup> are obvious<sup>i</sup> in every thing: and that

*a* usage *b* rare *c* façon *d* blé *e* chanvre *f* devenir *g* laine *h* étoffe *i* saison  
*k* brebis *l* former *m* papier *n* chiffon *o* ramasser *p* instruit *q* merveilleux  
*r* ouvrage *s* faire réflexion à *t* montrer *v* se présenter *w* remonter *x* par  
*y* borner *z* regarder *a* plante *b* Predicateur *c* annoncer *d* firmament *e* étoile  
*f* briller *g* éclat *h* caractère *i* lumière *k* il ne faut que (*beginning the sentence*)  
*l* inexcusable *m* admirable *n* ouvrage *o* vouloir *p* pour ainsi dire *q* accessible  
*r* de plus *s* pres *t* ébloui *v* en apparence *w* méprisable *x* de quoi  
*y* étonner *z* sublime *a* esprit *b* néanmoins *c* grossier *d* organe *e* nourriture  
*f* multiplication *g* demeurer *h* inconnu *i* feuille *k* négligé *l* symétrie  
*m* sensible.

with so prodigious<sup>a</sup> a quantity<sup>b</sup> of pinking<sup>c</sup>, ornaments<sup>d</sup>, and beauties, that none is exactly<sup>e</sup> like another.

What is not discovered by the help<sup>f</sup> of microscopes<sup>g</sup> in the smallest seeds<sup>h</sup>! But how much virtue and efficacy<sup>i</sup> has God put in them by one single<sup>k</sup> word, by which he seems to have given plants a sort of immortality! *Let the earth bring forth<sup>l</sup> grass<sup>m</sup>, and the herb<sup>n</sup> yielding<sup>o</sup> seed<sup>p</sup>, &c.*

Is there any thing that deserves<sup>q</sup> more our admiration, than the choice<sup>r</sup> which God has made of the general colour, that beautifies<sup>s</sup> all plants? If he had dyed<sup>t</sup> in white or scarlet<sup>v</sup> all the field<sup>w</sup>, who could have been able to bear<sup>x</sup> either the brightness<sup>y</sup> or harshness<sup>z</sup> of them? If he had darkened<sup>aa</sup> them with more dusky<sup>ab</sup> colours, who | could have taken a delight<sup>b</sup> | in so sad<sup>c</sup> and so melancholy<sup>d</sup> a prospect<sup>e</sup>? A pleasant<sup>f</sup> verdure<sup>g</sup> keeps<sup>h</sup> a medium<sup>i</sup> between these two extremes<sup>k</sup>, and it has such an affinity<sup>l</sup> with the frame<sup>m</sup> of the eye, that it is diverted<sup>n</sup> instead of strained<sup>o</sup> by it, and it is rather<sup>p</sup> sustained<sup>q</sup> and nourished<sup>r</sup> than wasted<sup>s</sup>. But what was thought at first<sup>t</sup> to be but one colour, is such a diversity of hues<sup>v</sup>, as astonishes<sup>w</sup>. 'Tis green every where, but 'tis no where the same. Not one plant is coloured<sup>x</sup> like another: and that surprizing<sup>y</sup> variety, which no art can imitate<sup>z</sup>, is again diversified<sup>aa</sup> in each plant, which is in its origin<sup>ab</sup>, its progress<sup>ac</sup>, and maturity<sup>ad</sup> of a different sort of green.

I transport<sup>e</sup> myself | in thought<sup>c</sup> | into blossomed<sup>f</sup> fields<sup>g</sup>, or into a garden well look'd after<sup>h</sup>. What an enamel<sup>i</sup>? What colours! What riches! But what an harmony<sup>k</sup>, and what sweetness<sup>l</sup> in their mixture<sup>m</sup>, and the shadowing<sup>n</sup> that tempers<sup>o</sup> them! What a picture<sup>p</sup>, and by what a master! But let us pass from this general view<sup>q</sup> to the consideration of any particular flower<sup>r</sup>, and pick up<sup>s</sup>, at random<sup>t</sup>, the first that offers to<sup>v</sup> our hand, without troubling ourselves<sup>w</sup> with choosing<sup>x</sup>.

*a prodigieux b fécondité c découpure d ornement e parfaitement f secours  
g microscope h graine i efficace k seul l produire m son jet n herbe o por-  
ter p sa semence q digne r choix s embellir t teindre v rouge \* campagne  
z soutenir x éclat y dureté z obscurcir a sombre h faire ses délices c triste  
d lugubre e vue agréable g verdure h tenir i milieu k extrémité l rap-  
port m structure n délasser o tendre p plutôt q soutenir r nourir s épuiser  
t d'abord v peinture \* étonner w colore x surprenant y imiter z se diver-  
sifier a origine b progrès c maturité d se transporter e par la pensée f fleur  
g campagne h cultivé i émail k harmonie l douceur m mélange n nuances  
o tempérer p tableau q voir r fleur s cueillir t au hazard • tomber sous  
\* se mettre en peine w choix.*



It is just blown<sup>a</sup>, and has still all its freshness<sup>b</sup>, and brightness<sup>c</sup>. Are there so lively<sup>d</sup>, and at the same time so sweet colours<sup>e</sup> among men? Could ever ~~an~~ invent<sup>f</sup> stuffs as thin<sup>g</sup> and of as smooth<sup>h</sup> and nice<sup>i</sup> a texture<sup>k</sup>? Bring opposite to<sup>l</sup> the leaves which I hold Solomon's purple<sup>n</sup> itself. What a coarse hair-cloth<sup>p</sup> to them<sup>q</sup>? What a ruggedness<sup>r</sup>, what breaking off<sup>s</sup> in the texture, what a difference in the colouring<sup>t</sup>?

## TREES and FRUITS.

So far<sup>v</sup> we have only considered \* the earth as a meadow<sup>w</sup>. Now<sup>x</sup> it shews itself<sup>y</sup> to us like a rich orchard<sup>z</sup>, filled<sup>a</sup> with all sorts of fruit, which succeed<sup>b</sup> one another according to the seasons<sup>c</sup>.

I observed<sup>d</sup> one of those trees, bowing<sup>e</sup> its branches<sup>f</sup> down to the ground<sup>g</sup>, bent<sup>h</sup> under the weight<sup>i</sup> of excellent fruit, whose colour and smell<sup>k</sup> proclaim<sup>l</sup> the taste<sup>m</sup>, and at the quantity<sup>n</sup> whereof I am amazed<sup>o</sup>. Methinks<sup>p</sup> that tree says to me, by the glory<sup>q</sup> it displays<sup>r</sup> to my eyes: Learn of me what is the goodness and magnificence<sup>s</sup> of the God who has made me<sup>t</sup> for you. 'Tis neither for him, nor for myself, I am so rich. He has need of nothing, and I cannot use<sup>v</sup> what he has given me. Bless<sup>w</sup> him, and unload<sup>x</sup> me. Give him thanks; and since he has made me the instrument<sup>y</sup> of your delight<sup>z</sup>, become<sup>a</sup> that of my gratitude<sup>b</sup>.

I think<sup>c</sup> I hear the same invitations<sup>d</sup> from all sides<sup>e</sup>: and as<sup>f</sup> I walk on<sup>g</sup>, I always find out new subjects of praise<sup>h</sup> and wonder<sup>i</sup>, for 'tis a new kind<sup>j</sup> at every step<sup>k</sup>. Here the fruit is hid<sup>l</sup> within<sup>m</sup>, there 'tis the kernel<sup>n</sup> that is in the inside<sup>o</sup>: and a delicate pulp<sup>p</sup> shines<sup>q</sup> outwardly<sup>r</sup> with the most lively colours. This fruit sprang<sup>s</sup> out of a blossom<sup>t</sup>, as almost all do: but this other so delicious was not preceded<sup>v</sup> by the blossom, and it shoots<sup>w</sup> out of the very<sup>x</sup> bark<sup>y</sup> of the tree<sup>z</sup>. The one begins the summer<sup>a</sup>, the other finishes it. If this be not soon<sup>b</sup> ga-

*a* éclore *b* fraîcheur *c* éclat *d* vis *e* teinture *f* inventer *g* cilié *h* uni  
*i* délicat *k* tissu *l* approcher de *m* tenir *n* pourpre *o* grossier *p* cilice *q* en  
 comparaison *r* rudesse *s* interruption *t* coloris *v* jusqu'ici \* regarder *w* pro-  
 prie *x* maintenant *y* se montrer *z* verger *a* rempli *b* succéder *c* saison  
*d* considérer *e* porter *f* branche *g* jusqu'en terre *h* courbé *i* poids *k* odor  
*l* annoncer *m* gout *n* abondance *o* étonner *p* il me semble *q* porce *r* éaler  
*s* magnificence *t* former *u* user \* bénir *w* décharger *x* ministre *y* délices  
*z* devenir *a* reconnaissance *b* il me semble *c* invitation *d* de toutes parts *e* à  
 mesure que *f* s'avancer *g* louange *h* admiration *i* espèce *k* pas *l* caché  
*m* au dedans *n* amande *o* intérieur *p* chair *q* brille *r* au dehors *s* venir  
*t* fleur *v* précède \* naître *w* même *x* écorce *y* arbre *z* été *a* promptement.

thered<sup>a</sup> it | falls down<sup>b</sup> | and withers<sup>c</sup>: if you don't wait<sup>d</sup> for that, it will never ripen<sup>e</sup>. This keeps<sup>f</sup> long<sup>g</sup>: that goes away<sup>h</sup> swiftly<sup>i</sup>. The one refreshes<sup>k</sup>, the other nourishes<sup>l</sup>.

Among<sup>m</sup> fruit trees<sup>n</sup>, some bear<sup>o</sup> fruit in two seasons of the year, and others unite<sup>p</sup> together both the different seasons, and even the years: bearing young<sup>q</sup> blossoms, green fruit, and ripe fruit | at the same time<sup>r</sup>; | to evince<sup>s</sup> the sovereign<sup>t</sup> liberty of the Creator, who in diversifying<sup>v</sup> the laws of Nature, shews<sup>w</sup> that he is the master of it, and can at all times, and with all things, do equally what he pleases<sup>x</sup>.

I observe<sup>y</sup> that weak<sup>z</sup> trees, or of an indifferent<sup>a</sup> pitch<sup>b</sup>, are those that bear the most exquisite<sup>c</sup> fruit. The higher<sup>d</sup> they grow<sup>e</sup>, the less rich they seem<sup>f</sup> to me, and their fruit | is the less fit<sup>g</sup> | for me. The other trees which bear nothing but leaves, or bitter<sup>h</sup> and very small fruit, are nevertheless very useful<sup>i</sup> for building<sup>j</sup> and navigation<sup>k</sup>.

If we had not seen trees of the height and bigness<sup>l</sup> of those that are in some forests, we could not believe that some drops<sup>m</sup> of rain<sup>n</sup> fallen from heaven were capable to nourish them. For | there is need<sup>o</sup> of | a juice<sup>p</sup>, not only very plentiful<sup>q</sup>, but full of spirits<sup>r</sup> and salts<sup>s</sup> of all kinds<sup>t</sup> to give the root<sup>u</sup>, the trunk<sup>v</sup>, and branches<sup>w</sup> the strength and vigour<sup>x</sup> which we admire in them. It is even remarkable<sup>y</sup> that the more neglected those trees are, the handsomer they grow<sup>z</sup>: and that if men applied themselves to cultivate<sup>a</sup> them, as they do the small trees of their gardens, | they would rather hurt<sup>b</sup> them. | You thereby, O Lord, preserve<sup>c</sup> a proof<sup>d</sup> that 'tis you alone have made<sup>e</sup> them: and you teach man that his cares<sup>f</sup> and industry<sup>g</sup> are useless<sup>h</sup> to you; and that if you require<sup>i</sup> them for some shrubs<sup>k</sup>, 'tis to employ<sup>l</sup> him, and warn<sup>m</sup> him of his own weakness<sup>n</sup> in trusting<sup>o</sup> weak things only to his care.

a cueillir b tomber c se flétrir d attendre e avoir de la maturité f se garder g long-tems h passer i avec rapidité k rafraichir l fortifier m entre n fertile o porter p unir q naissant r tout à la fois s montrer t souverain v diversifier u faire voir w plaire x observer y foible z médiocre a taille b exquis plus d s'élever c paroître f convenir g amer h utile i edifices k navigation l grosseur m goutte n pluie o il faut p suc q abondant r esprit s sel t espèce u racine \* tronc w branche x vigueur y remarquable z devenir a cultiver b ils ne feroient que leur nuire c conserver d preuve e former f soin g industrie h inutile i exiger k arbrisseau l occuper m avertir n foiblesse o confier



F I S H E S .<sup>a</sup>

With what a number<sup>b</sup> of fishes of all sizes<sup>c</sup> do the waters teem<sup>d</sup>!

I consider<sup>e</sup> all these creatures, and see, methinks<sup>f</sup>, that they have nothing but a head and a tail<sup>g</sup>. They have neither feet<sup>h</sup> nor arms. Even their head has no free movement<sup>i</sup>: and if I attended only<sup>k</sup> to their figure, I should think<sup>l</sup> them deprived<sup>m</sup> of all that is necessary for the preservation<sup>n</sup> of their life. But with so few exterior<sup>o</sup> organs<sup>p</sup>, they are more nimble<sup>q</sup>, more swift<sup>r</sup>, and more | artful and cunning<sup>s</sup>, | than if they had many hands and feet: and the use they make of their tail and fins<sup>t</sup>, shoots<sup>v</sup> them forward like arrows<sup>u</sup>, and seems to make them fly<sup>w</sup>.

How | comes it to pass<sup>x</sup> | that in the middle<sup>y</sup> of waters, so much impregnated<sup>z</sup> with salt that I cannot bear<sup>a</sup> a drop<sup>b</sup> of them in my mouth, fishes live, and enjoy a perfect strength<sup>c</sup> and health? And how, in the middle of salt, do they keep<sup>d</sup> a flesh that has not the taste of it?

Why do the best, and most fit for the use of man, come near<sup>e</sup> the coasts<sup>f</sup>, to offer themselves, it seems, to him, whilst a great many others, useless<sup>g</sup> to him, affect<sup>h</sup> to keep off<sup>i</sup>?

Why do those that keep<sup>k</sup> in unknown<sup>l</sup> places, whilst they | were propagating<sup>m</sup> | and growing<sup>n</sup> to a certain size<sup>o</sup>, as herrings<sup>p</sup>, mackarel<sup>q</sup>, cods<sup>r</sup>, &c. come in shoals<sup>s</sup> to an appointed<sup>t</sup> time, to invite the fishermen<sup>v</sup>, and throw themselves | as it were<sup>x</sup> | of their own accord<sup>y</sup>, into their nets<sup>z</sup> and boats<sup>a</sup>?

Why are several of them, and of the best kinds<sup>b</sup>, eager<sup>c</sup> to get<sup>d</sup> into the mouth<sup>e</sup> of rivers<sup>f</sup>, and come up<sup>g</sup> to | their fountain-head<sup>h</sup>, | to communicate the benefits<sup>i</sup> of the sea to the countries<sup>j</sup> which are distant<sup>k</sup> from it? And what hand directs<sup>l</sup> them with so much care and bounty for men, but your's, O Lord, although so obvious<sup>m</sup> a Providence<sup>n</sup> seldom<sup>o</sup> engages<sup>p</sup> their gratitude<sup>q</sup>?

*a poisson b foule c grandeur d enfanter e examiner f ce me semble g queue h pié i mouvement k être attentif l croire m privé n conservation o extérieur p organe q agile r prompt s rempli d'artifices t nageoire u pousser \* trait v voler x arriver y milieu z chargé a souffrir b goût c vigueur d conserver e s'approcher f côte g inutile h affecter i s'éloigner k se tenir l inconnu m se multiplier n acquérir o grandeur p hareng q maquereau r morue s foule t marqué u pêcheur \* pour ainsi dire w d'elle mêmes x filet y barque z espèce a to be eager, is s'empreser b entrer c embouchure d fleuve e remonter f source g avantage h éloigné i conduire k visible l Providence m rarement n attirer o reconnoissance.*

BIRDS.

## B I R D S.

We see in several | dumb creatures<sup>b</sup> | an imitation of reason which astonishes; but it appears | no where<sup>c</sup> | in a more sensible manner than in the industry of birds in making their nests<sup>d</sup>.

In the first place<sup>e</sup>, what master has taught them that they had need of any? Who has taken care to forwarn<sup>f</sup> them to get them ready<sup>g</sup> | in time<sup>h</sup> | and not be prevented<sup>i</sup> | by necessity? who has told them how they must be contrived<sup>k</sup>? What Mathematician has given them the plan<sup>l</sup> of them? What Architect<sup>m</sup> has directed<sup>n</sup> them to chuse a firm<sup>o</sup> place, and build upon a solid<sup>p</sup> foundation<sup>q</sup>? What tender<sup>r</sup> mother has advis'd<sup>s</sup> them to line<sup>t</sup> the bottom<sup>v</sup> of them with so soft<sup>u</sup> and nice matter<sup>w</sup> as down<sup>x</sup> and cotton<sup>y</sup>? And when these are wanting, who has suggest'd<sup>z</sup> that ingenious<sup>a</sup> charity which makes them pluck<sup>b</sup> out of their breasts<sup>c</sup>, with their bill<sup>d</sup>, as much down as is requisite to prepare a convenient<sup>e</sup> cradle<sup>f</sup> for their young ones<sup>g</sup>?

In the second place, what wisdom has traced out<sup>h</sup> to each kind<sup>i</sup> a particular<sup>j</sup> way<sup>k</sup> of making their nests, where the same precautions were kept<sup>l</sup>, but in a thousand different ways<sup>m</sup>? who has commanded the swallow<sup>n</sup>, the most industrious<sup>o</sup> of all birds, to come near man, and chuse his house to build<sup>p</sup> her nest before<sup>q</sup> his eyes, without fearing to have him for a witness, and seeming<sup>r</sup> on the contrary to invite him to consider her works<sup>s</sup>? 'Tis not with small sprigs<sup>t</sup> and hay<sup>v</sup> that she builds, as the others do. She uses<sup>w</sup> cement<sup>x</sup> and mortar<sup>y</sup>, and in so solid a manner, that | her work cannot be demolished without some force<sup>z</sup>. | Yet she has no other instrument<sup>a</sup> than her bill. She has nothing wherewith<sup>b</sup> to draw up<sup>c</sup> water. She can only we<sup>d</sup> her breast, in keeping<sup>e</sup> her wings<sup>f</sup> up<sup>g</sup>. And 'tis with the dew<sup>h</sup> which she sprinkles<sup>i</sup> the mortar with, she dilutes<sup>j</sup> and moistens<sup>k</sup> her masonry<sup>l</sup>, which she afterwards disposes<sup>m</sup>, and sets in order<sup>n</sup> with her bill. Reduce<sup>o</sup>, if it be possible, the most ingenious<sup>p</sup> architect to the small compass<sup>q</sup> of this swallow:

*a oiseau b animal c nulle-part d nid e lieu f avertir g préparer h à  
iems i se laisser prévenir k construire l figure m Architecte n enseigner  
o ferme p solide q fondement r tendre s conseiller t couvrir u fond \* mou  
w matière x duvet y coton z suggérer a ingénieux b s'attacher c estomac  
d bec e commode f berceau g petit h marquer i espèce k manière l ob  
serve m façon n hirondelle o adroit p édifier q à r paroître s travail  
t branchage u soin \* employer w ciment x mortier y il faut une espèce  
d'effort pour démolir son ouvrage z instrument a où b puiser c mouiller  
d tenir e aile f élevé g ôlée h faire rejaillir sur i détrempier k hu  
meur l maçonnerie m ordonner n arranger o réduire p habile q volume.*  
with



with all his learning leave him a bill only to work with<sup>a</sup>, and see if he will have the same dexterity<sup>b</sup>, and the same success<sup>c</sup>. In the third place, who has made all the birds understand that they were to hatch<sup>d</sup> their eggs<sup>e</sup> in sitting over<sup>f</sup> them? That this was an indispensable<sup>g</sup> necessity; that both the father and mother could not quit together<sup>h</sup>; and that if one went in quest<sup>i</sup> of food<sup>k</sup>, the other was to stay for<sup>l</sup> his return? Who has set<sup>m</sup> them in the calendar<sup>n</sup> the precise<sup>o</sup> number of the days of this rigorous<sup>p</sup> attendance<sup>q</sup>? Who has told them to help out<sup>r</sup> for the eggs the young ones already formed, by breaking first the shell? And who has so exactly<sup>s</sup> acquainted<sup>t</sup> them with the moment that they never anticipate<sup>u</sup> it.

Lastly<sup>v</sup>, who has made lectures<sup>x</sup> to all birds concerning the care which they were to take of their young ones, till they were brought up<sup>y</sup>, and fit<sup>z</sup> to shift for themselves<sup>a</sup>? Who has taught them that wonderful<sup>b</sup> industry to keep<sup>c</sup> in their throat<sup>d</sup>, either the food<sup>e</sup> or water, without swallowing<sup>f</sup> them, and preserve<sup>g</sup> them for their young ones, to which this first preparation<sup>h</sup> serves<sup>i</sup> instead of milk? Who has made them discern<sup>k</sup> so many things, of which some suit<sup>l</sup> with one kind<sup>m</sup>, but are pernicious to another: and between those which are proper for the old<sup>n</sup>, but would be hurtful<sup>o</sup> to the young? Who has made them discern those which are wholesome<sup>p</sup>? We know the tenderness<sup>q</sup> of mothers among men, and the anxiety<sup>r</sup> of nurses<sup>s</sup>: but I don't know whether we see any thing so perfect.

Is it for birds, O Lord, that thou hast united<sup>t</sup> so many miracles<sup>u</sup>, which they are not sensible of<sup>v</sup>? Is it for curious people<sup>w</sup> who are contented to admire them, without ascending<sup>x</sup> to thee? And is it not obvious<sup>y</sup> that thy design was to call us<sup>z</sup> to thee by such a spectacle<sup>a</sup>; to make us sensible of thy providence and infinite wisdom, and to fill<sup>b</sup> us with trust in thy goodness?

Some of these young ones are<sup>c</sup> exceeding beautiful, and nothing is richer or more diversified<sup>d</sup> than their feathers<sup>e</sup>.

*a* conservez lui toutes les connoissances en ne lui laissant que le bec  
*b* adresse *c* succès *d* faire éclore *e* oeuf *f* couver *g* indispensable *h* en même tems *i* aller chercher *k* nourriture *l* attendre *m* marquer *n* calendrier *o* précis *p* rigoureux *q* assidue *r* aider à sortir *s* coque *t* exactement *u* instruit *v* prévenir *w* enfin *x* leçon *y* élevée *z* en état *a* se servir eux mêmes *b* merveilleux *c* retenir *d* gorge *e* aliment *f* avaler *g* conserver *h* préparation *i* tenir lieu *k* discern *l* convenir *m* espère *n* pères *o* faire tort *p* salutaire *q* tendresse *r* solliciude *s* nourrice *t* unir ensemble *u* miracle *v* connoître *w* des curieux *x* remonter *y* visible *z* rappeler *a* spectacle *b* remplir *c* confiance *d* diversifié *e* plumage.

But

But one must own that all finery<sup>a</sup> must yield<sup>b</sup> to that of the Peacock<sup>c</sup>, on which God | with liberal hand<sup>d</sup> | has poured forth<sup>e</sup> all the riches that embellish<sup>f</sup> the others, and on which he has lavished<sup>g</sup>, with gold and azure<sup>h</sup>, all the shadowing<sup>i</sup> of colour. This bird seems<sup>k</sup> | to be sensible<sup>l</sup> of | its superiority<sup>m</sup>. And 'tis, it seems, to display<sup>n</sup> all its beauties to our eyes, that | it spreads that glorious tail<sup>o</sup>, | which | puts them beyond all dispute<sup>p</sup>. | But this most magnificent of all birds has nothing but a disagreeable<sup>q</sup> voice<sup>r</sup>: and it is a proof that with a very shining<sup>s</sup> outside<sup>t</sup>, one may have nothing but a wicked heart<sup>u</sup>, little gratitude, and much vanity.

It is not necessary to shew how these | physical observations<sup>v</sup>, | and a great many others<sup>w</sup> of the like<sup>x</sup> nature, are capable of adorning<sup>y</sup> and enriching<sup>z</sup> a youth's<sup>a</sup> mind: making him attentive to the effects of nature, which are before our eyes, and offer themselves<sup>b</sup> to us every minute<sup>c</sup> almost, without our taking notice of them<sup>d</sup>: of teaching him a thousand curious things concerning Sciences, Arts, and Trade, as Chemistry<sup>e</sup>, Anatomy<sup>f</sup>, Botany<sup>g</sup>, Drawing<sup>h</sup>, Navigation, Printing<sup>i</sup>, &c. | of giving him a taste<sup>k</sup> | for gardening<sup>l</sup>, for trees, the country, and walking<sup>m</sup>, which is not a thing indifferent: of enabling<sup>n</sup> him | to bear a part agreeably in conversation<sup>o</sup>, | and not to be reduced either | to be silent<sup>p</sup> | or not to know what to speak, but trifles<sup>q</sup>.

'Tis not without reason History has always been looked upon<sup>r</sup> as the light<sup>s</sup> of times, the repository<sup>t</sup> of events<sup>u</sup>, the faithful<sup>v</sup> witness<sup>w</sup> of truth, the source of good counsels and prudence, the rule of conduct and manners<sup>x</sup>. Without it, being confined<sup>y</sup> within the bounds<sup>z</sup> of the age and country wherein we live, contracted<sup>a</sup> in the narrow compass<sup>b</sup> of our particular knowledge<sup>c</sup> and reflections, we always continue<sup>d</sup>, in a sort<sup>e</sup> of infancy<sup>f</sup>, which leaves us<sup>g</sup> strangers<sup>h</sup> to the rest of the universe<sup>i</sup>, and in a deep ignorance of all that has pass<sup>k</sup> before us and surround<sup>l</sup> us. What is that few number of years which make up<sup>m</sup> the longest

*a* parer *b* céder *c* Paon *d* comme à pleines mains *e* verser *f* embellir  
*g* proférer *h* azur *i* nuance *k* paroître *l* sentir *m* avantage *n* étaler  
*o* il fait cette pompeuse roue *p* mettre en évidence *q* désagréable *r* cri *s* brillant  
*t* extérieur *u* fond *v* observation physique *w* infinité *x* pareil *y* orner  
*z* enrichir *a* jeune homme *b* se présenter *c* moment *d* faire réflexion à *e* Chimie  
*f* Anatomie *g* Botanique *h* Peinture *i* Imprimerie *k* donner du goût  
*l* jardinage *m* promenade *n* mettre en état *o* fournir agréablement à la conversation  
*p* garder le silence *q* bagatelle *r* regarder *s* lumière *t* dépositaire  
*u* événement *v* fidèle *w* témoin *x* mœurs *y* renfermer *z* boire *a* resserré  
*b* cercle *c* connoissances *d* demeurer *e* espèce *f* enfance *g* laisser *h* étranger  
*i* univers *k* précéder *l* environner *m* composer.

life?



life? What is the | tract of land<sup>a</sup> | we can inhabit<sup>b</sup> or run o-  
ver<sup>c</sup> upon the earth, but an imperceptible<sup>d</sup> point<sup>e</sup> with respect<sup>f</sup>  
to those vast<sup>g</sup> regions<sup>h</sup> of the universe, and that long series<sup>i</sup> of  
ages which have succeeded one another from the beginning of  
the world? Yet 'tis to that imperceptible point our know-  
ledge is limited<sup>k</sup>, if we don't call to our assistance<sup>l</sup> the study of  
history, which lays all ages and countries open<sup>m</sup> to us: makes  
us enter into a correspondence<sup>n</sup> with all the great men that  
antiquity<sup>o</sup> ever produced<sup>p</sup>: sets<sup>q</sup> all their virtues and vices  
before our eyes: and by the wise reflections it affords<sup>r</sup> us, or  
suggests<sup>s</sup> to us, procures us in a short time, an anticipated<sup>t</sup>  
prudence much superior to the lessons of the ablest<sup>v</sup> masters.

History may be said to be the common school of mankind<sup>u</sup>;  
equally open and useful both to high<sup>w</sup> and low<sup>x</sup>. Princes and  
subjects, and still more necessary to Princes and the great than  
to others.<sup>y</sup> For how, through the crowd<sup>z</sup> of flatterers<sup>a</sup> who  
beset<sup>b</sup> them on all sides<sup>c</sup>, and never cease to praise and admire  
them, that is to say, to corrupt them, and infect<sup>d</sup> their<sup>e</sup> mind  
and heart; how, I say, will timorous<sup>f</sup> truth be able to approach  
them, and raise<sup>g</sup> its weak voice in the midst<sup>h</sup> of that tumult<sup>i</sup>,  
and confused<sup>j</sup> noise<sup>k</sup>? How | will it venture<sup>l</sup> | to shew  
them the duties and slavery<sup>m</sup> of royalty<sup>n</sup>, make them un-  
derstand<sup>o</sup> wherein<sup>p</sup> their true glory consists; represent to  
them that if they | will be pleased<sup>q</sup> | to trace their institution  
back to its origin<sup>r</sup>, they will plainly<sup>s</sup> see that they are for  
the people, and not the people for them; tell them of their  
faults; make them fear the just judgment of posterity, and  
dispel<sup>t</sup> the thick cloud<sup>u</sup> formed round<sup>v</sup> them by the vain  
phantom<sup>w</sup> of their greatness, and the intoxication<sup>x</sup> of their  
fortune.

These so important and so necessary services it cannot render  
them but by the help<sup>y</sup> of history, which alone is in possession  
of the liberty of speaking to them freely<sup>z</sup>, and carries that right  
so far as<sup>a</sup> | to judge | without further appeal<sup>b</sup> | of the affections  
of Kings themselves, as well as fame<sup>c</sup>, which Seneca calls *the worst*

a étendue de pays b occuper c parcourir d imperceptible e point f à l'égard de g vaste h région i suite k se borner l secours m to lay open, ouvrir n commerce o antiquité p produce is made by were in French q mettre r fournir s donner lieu de faire t anticipé u habile \* genre humain w grand x petit y foule z flatteur a assiéger b de toutes parts c empoisonner d timide e faire entendre f au milieu g tumulte h confus i bruit k oser l servitude m Royauté n entendre o en quoi p vouloir bien q remonter jusqu' à l'origine de leur institution r clairement s dissiper t nuage u au tour de \* phantome w enivrement x secours y avec liberté and the liberty, coming before, is left out z jusqu' à a souverainement & sans apel b renommée.

unbiased<sup>a</sup> judge of Princes. In vain<sup>b</sup> are their endowments<sup>c</sup> cried up<sup>d</sup>, their parts<sup>e</sup> and courage admired, their atchievements<sup>f</sup> and conquests<sup>g</sup> extolled<sup>h</sup>: if all be not founded on truth and justice, History secretly | arraigns and condemns<sup>i</sup> | them under borrowed<sup>k</sup> names. It makes them look upon the generality<sup>l</sup> of the most famous Conquerors<sup>m</sup> but as public scourges<sup>n</sup>, enemies to mankind, robbers<sup>o</sup> of nations, who being impelled<sup>p</sup> by a restless and blind ambition, carry desolation from country<sup>q</sup> to country, and, like an inundation or conflagration<sup>r</sup>, lay waste<sup>s</sup> all that they meet with<sup>t</sup>. It sets<sup>u</sup> before their eyes a Caligula, a Nero, a Domitian, loaded<sup>x</sup> with praises during life, become after death the horror<sup>y</sup> and execration of mankind: whereas Titus, Trajan, Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius, are still looked upon as the delight of men, for having used<sup>z</sup> their power only to do them good.

There is no age<sup>a</sup>, or condition, but may reap<sup>b</sup> the same benefits<sup>c</sup> from history: and what I have said of Princes and Conquerors, comprehends also (due<sup>d</sup> proportions being observed<sup>e</sup>) all persons | preferred to honours<sup>f</sup>: | Ministers of State, Generals, Officers, Magistrates, Lieutenants, Prelates, Fathers and Mothers in their family<sup>g</sup>, Masters and Mistresses with their servants<sup>h</sup>, in one word, all those that have authority over others.

Thus<sup>i</sup> History, when it is well taught, proves<sup>k</sup> a school of morality<sup>l</sup> for all men. It cries down<sup>m</sup> vice, unmasks<sup>n</sup> false virtue, removes<sup>o</sup> from vulgar<sup>p</sup> error and prejudice<sup>q</sup>, dispels<sup>r</sup> the enchanting<sup>s</sup> witchcraft<sup>t</sup> of riches, and all that vain splendor<sup>u</sup> which dazzles<sup>v</sup> men, and demonstrates by a thousand instances<sup>x</sup> more persuasive<sup>y</sup> than all arguments<sup>z</sup>, that there is nothing great and commendable<sup>a</sup> but honour and probity. From the esteem and admiration which the most corrupted people cannot refuse to the great and glorious<sup>b</sup> actions which it lays before them<sup>c</sup>, it makes one<sup>d</sup> conclude, that virtue is therefore the true blessing<sup>e</sup> of man, and that it alone makes him truly great and estimable. It teaches us to respect that virtue, and discover<sup>f</sup> its beauty and brightness<sup>g</sup> through the veils<sup>h</sup> of poverty, adversity,

a intérêt b on a beau c talent d faire valoir e esprit f exploit g conquête h vanter i faire le procès k emprunté l la plupart m Conquérant n fléau o brigand p poussé q inquiet r aveugle s contrée t incendie u ravager x rencontrer w mettre x comble y horreur z user a âge b tirer c avantage d juste e garder f constitué en dignité g famille h domestique i ainsi k devenir l morale m décrier n démasquer o détromper p populaire q préjugé r enchanteur s prestiges t éclat u éblouir x exemple y persuasif z raisonnement y louable z beau a présenter b one and us, are left out c bien d us, is left out e démêler f éclat g voile.

obscurity,



obscurity, and even sometimes of discredit<sup>a</sup> and infamy<sup>b</sup>: as on the contrary, it inspires nothing but contempt<sup>c</sup> and horror for vice<sup>d</sup>, | tho' arrayed<sup>e</sup> | with purple, | blazing with light<sup>f</sup>, | and placed upon the throne.

But to confine myself<sup>g</sup> to my design, I look upon History as the first matter that children must have, equally fit to amuse and instruct them, to form their mind and heart, and enrich their memory with an infinite number of facts as agreeable as useful. It | is even very conducive<sup>h</sup>, | by the allurements<sup>i</sup> of pleasure which is inseparable from it, to excite<sup>k</sup> the curiosity of that age, eager<sup>l</sup> to learn, and give them a taste for study. Therefore in point<sup>m</sup> of education, it is a fundamental principle, and observed in all times, that the study of History ought | to go before<sup>n</sup> | all others, and | pave the way<sup>o</sup> | for them. Plutarch tells us that the old Cato, the celebrated<sup>p</sup> Censor<sup>q</sup>, whose name and virtue have done so much honour to the Roman Republic, and who took a particular care to bring up<sup>r</sup> his son himself<sup>s</sup>, without relying<sup>t</sup> upon the care<sup>v</sup> of masters, composed purposely<sup>\*</sup> for him, and wrote with his own hand, in large letters<sup>w</sup>, | entertaining pieces of history<sup>x</sup>; | that, said he, the child from the lowest age, could, without quitting his father's house, get acquainted<sup>y</sup> with the great men of his country, and form himself upon those ancient patterns<sup>z</sup> of probity and virtue.

Our age, and still more our nation, have great occasion to be undeceived<sup>a</sup> of an infinite number of errors, and false prejudices which become every day | more and more<sup>b</sup> | reigning<sup>c</sup>, concerning poverty and riches, modesty and pomp<sup>d</sup>, the simplicity of buildings<sup>e</sup> and furniture<sup>f</sup>, costliness<sup>g</sup>, and magnificence<sup>h</sup>; frugality and the | refined arts<sup>i</sup> | of cookery<sup>k</sup>; in a word, concerning almost every thing that makes the object of the contempt or admiration of men. The public taste herein<sup>l</sup> becomes the rule of young people. They think that valuable<sup>m</sup>, which is valued by all. 'Tis not reason, but custom that guides them. One bad example alone would be capable of corrupting the mind of young people, susceptible of all sorts of impressions: what is not therefore to be feared for them, in a time wherein vices are grown<sup>n</sup> into custom<sup>o</sup>, and sensuality<sup>p</sup> | exerts its utmost endeavours<sup>q</sup> | to extinguish<sup>r</sup> all sentiments of honour and probity.

*a* décri *b* infamie *c* mépris *d* crime *e* fut-il revêtu / tout brillant de lumière *g* se borner *h* pouvoir beaucoup servir *i* attrait *k* piquer *l* avide *m* matière *n* précéder *o* préparer la voie *p* célébré *q* Censeur *r* élever *s* lui même *t* s'en reposer *v* travail *\** exprès *w* caractère *x* de belles histoires *y* faire connoissance *z* modèle *a* dérompé *b* de plus en plus *c* dominant *d* false *e* bâtiment *f* meubles *g* somptuosité *h* magnificence *i* raffinement *k* bonne chère *l* sur cela *m* estimable *n* passé *o* usage *p* cupidité *q* s'efforcer *r* éteindre.

What need have they not of this science, whose chief effect is to dispel the false prejudices which seduce<sup>b</sup> us, because they please us: to cure and | set us free<sup>c</sup> | from the vulgar errors, which | we have sucked in with our mother's milk<sup>d</sup>: to teach us | to discern between<sup>e</sup> | what is true and false<sup>f</sup>, good and bad, between | true greatness<sup>g</sup> | and vain pride<sup>h</sup>: and to hinder the contagion of bad example and vicious customs from tainting the minds of young people, and stifling<sup>k</sup> the happy seeds of virtue, which are observed<sup>l</sup> in them! 'Tis in that science, which consists in judging of things, not by the common opinion, but by truth; not by their outward appearance<sup>m</sup>, but by their intrinsic value<sup>n</sup>, that Socrates placed<sup>o</sup> the whole wisdom of man.

I therefore thought it my duty<sup>p</sup> to begin this treatise<sup>q</sup> on History, with setting down<sup>r</sup> principles and rules to judge soundly<sup>s</sup> of great and good actions, to discern wherein consists solid glory and true greatness, and to distinguish<sup>v</sup> exactly<sup>w</sup> what is worthy of esteem and admiration, and what deserves only indifference and contempt. Without these rules, young people, naturally unguarded<sup>x</sup>, and having no other guides<sup>y</sup> but their own inclinations<sup>z</sup>, or the vulgar opinions, might mistake<sup>a</sup> for a pattern<sup>a</sup> all that is agreeable<sup>b</sup> to those false notions<sup>c</sup>, and imbibe<sup>d</sup> the passions and vices of those of whom History relates<sup>e</sup> celebrated<sup>f</sup> actions, which are not always virtuous or commendable<sup>g</sup>. Whereas they will be convinced by these principles, that those common opinions are contrary to right<sup>h</sup> reason: and that 'tis neither riches, the magnificence of buildings, the sumptuousness<sup>i</sup> of clothes and furniture<sup>k</sup> | luxurious eating<sup>l</sup> | the splendor of dignities or birth, shining<sup>m</sup> actions, such as victories and conquests, nor even the most valuable parts<sup>n</sup>, that make a man truly great and worthy of admiration: but that 'tis by his heart man is whatever he is; and that the more truly great and generous his heart<sup>o</sup> is, the more contempt will he have for what appears great to the rest of men.

a principal b séduire c délivrer d sucer avec le lait e faire le discernement f le vrai & le faux g solide grandeur h enlure i infecter k étouffer l remarquer m Turn thus, by what they appear outwardly n Turn thus, by what they really are (réellement) o mettre p Turn thus, I thought to, ought to begin q traité r établir s sagement t beau v démêler \* précautionnement w peu precautionné x guide y penchant z prendre a modèle b conforme c idée d se remplir de e rapporter f éclatant g estimable h droit i somptuosité k meubles l luxe de la table m brillant n qualité de l'esprit o Turn. thus, the more he will have a heart truly great, &c.



*This day is published,*

NEW FRENCH AND ENGLISH  
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY.

Designed for the Use of Schools, for Merchant's Accounting-Houses, for the English to acquire the True Pronunciation of the French, and for the French to acquire the Standard Pronunciation of the English, without the help of a Master; in large pocket Twelves, Price bound (for general Accommodation) ONLY Four Shillings.

THE  
STANDARD FRENCH AND ENGLISH  
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY:  
IN TWO PARTS.

PART I. | PART II.  
FRENCH AND ENGLISH. | ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

*Containing (not hitherto published)*

The new Words lately coined and sanctioned by the Members of the National and Conventional Assemblies from the Commencement of the French Revolution to the present Time.

ALSO, I I

Many thousand Words not to be met with in any of the Folio or Octavo Dictionaries now extant, and a greater Number of SYNONYMA than are to be found in any Work printed on the same Size.

The Words, besides being properly accented in both Parts, are divided into Syllables, and the various Sounds of the Vowels (not hitherto correctly analysed) and different Powers of the Consonants (by which the true Pronunciation of the Words is ascertained) is pointed out by characteristical Types, illustrated by KEYS to each part in both French and English, adapted to common Capacity, which Keys have reference to the Native Language wherein Similarity of Sounds are represented.

BY WILLIAM PERRY,

AUTHOR OF THE ROYAL STANDARD ENGLISH DICTIONARY,  
THE ORATOR,  
THE ONLY SURE GUIDE TO THE ENGLISH TONGUE,  
&c. &c. &c.

L O N D O N :

PRINTED FOR H. MURRAY, N<sup>o</sup> 32, FLEET STREET.